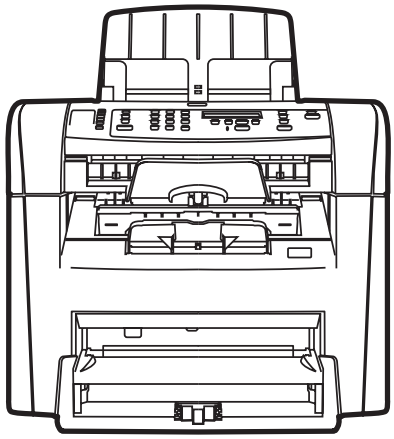
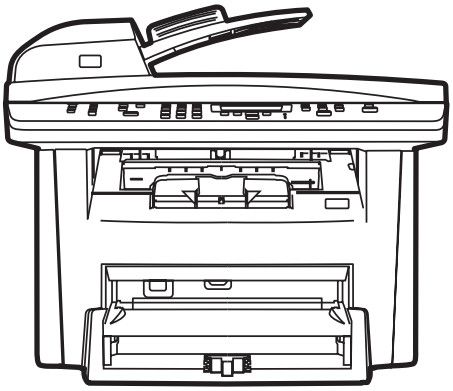
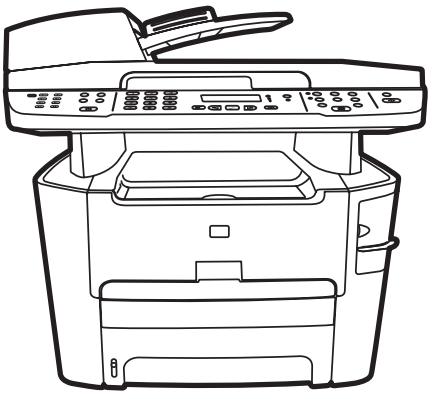
HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392
All-in-One Software Technical Reference







invent

HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one

Software Technical Reference

Copyright

© 2006 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 04/2006

Trademarks

Adobe®, Acrobat®, and PostScript® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries/regions.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

EnergyStar® and the Energy Star logo® are US registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Linux is a U.S. registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows NT® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Pentium® is a US registered trademark of Intel Corporation.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction....1
HP LaserJet all-in-one product comparison....3
Printing-system software availability and fulfillment....7
Documentation availability and localization....9

2 Software description

Operating systems....16
Supported Windows operating systems....16
Fully supported operating systems....16
Print and scan driver supported operating systems....16
Windows system requirements....16
Windows operating system requirements....16
Printing from other operating systems....17
Software component information....19
New HP LaserJet all-in-one software features....19
HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software for Windows....19
Software component comparison....21
Software component availability....22
Software component localization....23
HP Extended Capabilities....30
Scanning software....31
Scanning methods....31
HP LaserJet Scan software....32
E-mail....37
Scan settings....37
Scan drivers....39
TWAIN driver....39
TWAIN compatibility....39
TWAIN-driver user interface....40
WIA driver....41
Fax Setup Wizard....43
HP Send Fax software....51
Faxing to multiple recipients....53
Creating a cover page....54
Faxing without first printing and scanning the document....56
HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)....57
Status....58
Device Status....58

Supplies Status (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only).....59
Device Configuration.....59
Network Configuration.....62
Print Info Pages.....63
Event Log.....64
System.....64
Device Information.....65
Paper Handling.....66
Print Quality.....67
Paper Types.....68
System Setup.....69
Service.....70
Print.....70
Printing.....71
PCL5e.....72
PostScript.....73
Fax.....73
Fax Receive.....74
Fax Phone Book.....75
Networking.....75
IP Configuration.....76
Advanced.....77
Bonjour (Macintosh only).....77
SNMP.....78
Network Configuration.....78
Password.....79
Available product configurations.....80
Software features by connection type.....80
Supported configurations.....81
Direct connection.....81
Network connection options.....81
Local connection that uses Microsoft peer-to-peer networking (Windows only).....81
Networking requirements.....82
Multitasking capabilities.....82
Differences between the network-connected and the direct-connected configurations.....83
Supported third-party software.....84
Text-recognition software.....84
About text-recognition reliability.....84
Other PC fax programs.....84

3 HP traditional print drivers for Windows

HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver and HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver features (for Windows 98 SE and Windows Me).....86
Access to print drivers.....86
Access to print drivers from software programs.....86
Access to print drivers in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me.....86
Help system 87
What's this? Help.....87

Context-sensitive Help....87
Constraint messages....87
Bubble Help....88
Finishing tab features....90
Print Task Quick Sets....91
Default Print Settings....91
User Guide Print Settings....91
Custom Print Task Quick Sets....91
Document Options....91
Correct Order for Straight Paper Path....92
Print on Both Sides (Manually)....92
Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055 all-in-one)....92
Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one)....93
Flip Pages Up....93
Booklet Printing....94
Book and booklet printing....94
Pages per Sheet....95
Document preview image....96
Print Quality....96
Current Setting....97
Output Settings group box....97
Font Settings group box....97
Effects tab features....97
Print Task Quick Sets....98
Document preview image....98
Fit To Page....99
Print Document On....99
Scale to Fit....99
% of Normal Size....99
Watermarks....100
Watermarks drop-down menu....100
First Page Only....100
Edit....101
Current Watermarks....101
Watermark Message....102
Message Angle....102
Document preview image....102
Font Attributes....102
Default settings....103
Paper tab features....103
Print Task Quick Sets....104
Paper Options....104
Size is....105
Source Is....106
Type is....106
Use Different Paper/Covers....107
First Page....108
Front Cover....108

Other Pages....109
Last Page....110
Back Cover....111
Custom....112
Name....113
Save, Delete, or Rename....113
Custom size (width and height controls) 114
Custom width and height control limits....115
Paper and envelope icons....115
Dynamic measurement units 115
Close....115
Document preview image....116
Product image....116
Basics tab features 116
Print Task Quick Sets....117
Copies....117
Orientation....118
Portrait....118
Landscape....118
Rotate by 180 degrees....118
Document preview image 118
About....118
Configure tab features....119
Printer Model....120
Paper Handling Options 121
Duplexing Unit....121
Allow Manual Duplexing....121
Optional Paper Sources 121
Other Options 121
Allow Scaling from Large Paper....122
Fonts 122
Printer Memory 123
Include Types in Application Source List selection....123
Printer image 123
Windows PS Emulation Driver features (for Windows 98 SE and Windows Me) 124
HP postscript level 3 emulation support 124
Access to print-driver settings in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me....124
Paper 124
Paper size....125
Layout....126
Orientation....126
Paper source....126
Copies....126
Custom....126
Unprintable Area....126
More Options....126
About....126
Restore Defaults....126
Graphics....126
Resolution....127

Halftoning....127
Special....127
Scaling....128
Restore Defaults button....128
Device Options....128
Available printer memory (in KB)....128
Printer features....128
Restore Defaults button....129
PostScript....129
PostScript output format....129
PostScript header....130
Print PostScript error information....130
Advanced....130
Restore Defaults....132

4 HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation unidrivers for Windows

Introduction....133
Access to drivers....134
Printing Preferences driver tabs....134
Properties driver tabs....134
Help system....135
What's this? Help....135
Context-sensitive Help....135
Constraint messages....135
HP postscript level 3 emulation support....137
Advanced tab features....138
Paper/Output settings....139
Copy Count setting....140
Graphic settings....140
TrueType Font settings....140
Document Options....140
Advanced Printing Features....141
Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)....141
PostScript Options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)....141
PostScript Output Option....142
TrueType Font Download option....142
PostScript Language Level....143
Send PostScript Error Handler....143
Negative Output....143
Printer Features....143
Print All Text as Black....143
Send TrueType as Bitmap (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)....143
REt (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)....143
Layout Options....144
Page Order....144
Paper/Quality tab features....145
Print Task Quick Sets....146
Default Print Settings....146
User Guide Print Settings....146
Type new Quick Set name here....146

Paper Options group box....147
Size is:....147
Use Different Paper/Covers check box....148
Source Is: drop-down menu....148
Type is: drop-down menu....148
Use Different Paper/Covers options....149
Front Cover and Back Cover options....150
First Page, Other Pages, and Last Page options....151
Document preview image....152
Print Quality group box....152
Effects tab features....153
Print Task Quick Sets....154
Resizing Options group box....154
Actual Size setting....154
Print Document On setting....154
Scale to Fit option....154
% of Normal Size option....155
Document preview image....155
Watermarks group box....156
Current Watermarks....157
Watermark Message....157
Message Angle....157
Font Attributes....157
Name....158
Color....158
Shading....159
Size....159
Style....159
Default settings....160
Finishing tab features....161
Print Task Quick Sets....162
Document Options....162
Correct Order for Straight Paper Path check box....162
Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box....162
Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055 all-in-one)....162
Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one)....163
Flip Pages Up....163
Booklet layout....164
Book and booklet printing....164
Printing a Booklet....164
Printing a book....164
Pages per Sheet....164
Print Page Borders....165
Page Order....165
Document preview image....166
Orientation group box....166
Portrait option button....166
Landscape option button....166

Rotate by 180 degrees check box....166
Device Settings tab features....167
Form to Tray Assignment....168
Font Substitution Table....169
Installable Options....170
Tray 2....170
Allow Manual Duplexing....170
Printer Memory....170
PostScript Passthrough (PS Emulation Unidriver only)....170
Additional Device Settings options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)....170
Available PostScript Memory....171
Output Protocol....171
Send CTRL-D Before Each Job....171
Send CTRL-D After Each Job....172
Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray....172
Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray....172
Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts....172
Job Timeout....172
Wait Timeout....172
Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline....172
Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline....172
About tab features....173

5 The HP ToolboxFX

Overview of the HP ToolboxFX....176
Starting the HP ToolboxFX....176
Structure....177
Key features....178
Receive faxes to this computer....178
Receive Alert messages for device events....179
HP Device pop-up alert messages....180
System-tray icon alert....180
Desktop alert....181
E-mail alert....181
The HP ToolboxFX folders....182
Status folder....182
Device Status....182
Supplies Status (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)....183
Device Configuration....184
Network Configuration....189
Print Info Pages....192
Event Log....193
Alerts folder....194
Set up Status Alerts....194
Set up E-mail Alerts....196
Fax folder....198
Fax Tasks....198
Fax Phone Book....199
Fax Send Log and Fax Receive Log....201
Fax Data Properties....204

Help folder....204
Troubleshooting....205
How do I...?....207
Animated Demonstrations....209
User Guide....210
Readme....211
System Settings folder....211
Device Information....211
Paper Handling....212
Print Quality....216
Paper Types....218
System Setup....220
Service....221
Device Polling....222
Save/Restore Settings....223
Print Settings folder....224
Printing....224
PCL5e....225
PostScript....226
Network Settings folder....227
IP Configuration....228
Advanced....229
SNMP....230
Network Configuration....232
Password....234
Other screens....236
About HP ToolboxFX dialog box....236
HP Instant Support....236
Product Support....237
Product Registration....237
Supplies Ordering....237

6 Installing Windows printing-system components

Installation overview....240
Installation options....242
Windows installation for direct connections....242
Setting up Windows sharing (peer-to-peer networking)....242
Setting up the host computer running Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows 2000....243
Setting up the host computer running Windows XP....243
Setting up client computers running Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows 2000....243
Setting up client computers running Windows XP....244
Windows Installation for computers on a network....244
Network setup....244
Windows installation instructions for networked computers....245
Installing the print driver only....245
Print driver installation for Windows 98 SE or Windows Me....245
Print-driver installation for Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003....246

Hardware-first installation....246
Printing-system software installation....248
USB installation dialog box options for Windows....250
Network installation dialog box options for Windows....266
Uninstall....284
Uninstall instructions for Windows....284
Uninstalling a Typical or Minimum installation....284
Using the HP LaserJet all-in-one software Uninstall component (recommended)....284
Using the Windows Add or Remove Programs component....284
Using the printing-system CD....285
Uninstalling an Add-Printer installation....286
Windows 98 SE or Windows Me....286
Windows 2000 or Windows XP....286
Files and folders not removed and manual uninstall (Windows)....286

7 Macintosh software overview

Supported Macintosh operating systems....290
Supported e-mail programs....291
Software for Macintosh....292
Software components for Macintosh....292
Software features not available on Macintosh operating systems....293
Software component availability for Macintosh....293
Software component localization....294
Ordering software for Macintosh....294
HP EWS Device Configuration....295
Access....295
HP EWS Device Configuration screens....295
Status....296
System....296
Print....297
Fax....297
Networking....297
System requirements for a direct connection (Macintosh)....299
Installation overview....300
Installation options....301
Macintosh installation instructions for direct connections....301
Macintosh installation instructions for networked computers....301
Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh....303
HP LaserJet all-in-one uninstall instructions for Macintosh....314

8 Engineering details

Media attributes....316
Media sources and destinations....316
Source commands....317
Media types and sizes....317
Media features and attributes....317
Custom media sizes....320
Media-type commands....320
HP System Diagnostics....321

System....321
Devices....321
Applications....322
HP Applications....323
Logging....323
Troubleshooting....325
Port communication....325
Overview....325
USB port connections....325
Device conflicts in Windows....325
Opening the Windows Device Manager....326
Check for device conflicts....326
Guidelines for troubleshooting and resolving device conflicts....326
Installed Devices....327
File to E-mail utility....328
Standalone scrubber....329
E-mail....329
HP LaserJet Scan....329
Summary of HP ToolboxFX known issues....330
.NET Framework dependencies....330
Device communication....331
Obtaining debug information from HP ToolboxFX....332
USB drivers are unsigned 333
A need to enable or disable HP ToolboxFX arises....333
Windows Readme....335
Introduction....335
Purpose of this document....335
Who needs this software?....336
Overview of the printing-system components....336
Late-breaking information....339
Known issues and workarounds....339
Issues fixed....342
Installation Instructions....342
Installation options....342
Installing software on Windows 2000 and Windows XP....342
Installing software on Windows 98 SE and Windows Me....343
Uninstaller....343
Technical assistance....343
Customer support....344
Web....344
HP software and support services — additional information....344
Legal statements....344
Trademark notices....344
Warranty and copyright....344

Index....345

List of tables

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview....1
Table 1-2 Features of the HP LaserJet all-in-one products....3
Table 1-3 CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one printing-system software....7
Table 1-4 User documentation availability and localization....9
Table 2-1 Software components for Windows....20
Table 2-2 Software component comparison....21
Table 2-3 Software component availability for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one....22
Table 2-4 Software component localization by language, A-K....23
Table 2-5 Software component localization by language, L-Z....25
Table 2-6 Examples of supported e-mail programs....37
Table 2-7 Available scan settings....37
Table 2-8 Software features by connection type....80
Table 2-9 Multitasking capabilities....82
Table 3-1 Bubble Help messages....88
Table 3-2 Page orientation....94
Table 3-3 Standard paper types and engine speeds....106
Table 3-4 Name drop-down menu text strings....114
Table 3-5 Custom media sizes....115
Table 3-6 Close dialog box text strings....115
Table 4-1 Standard paper types and engine speeds....149
Table 4-2 Watermark color values....158
Table 4-3 Page orientation....163
Table 5-1 Alerts....195
Table 5-2 Paper Handling options and settings....213
Table 5-3 Print Quality options and settings....217
Table 5-4 Print mode settings and default fuser modes....219
Table 5-5 Printing options and settings....225
Table 5-6 Advanced Network Settings options and settings....230
Table 7-1 Software components for Macintosh....292
Table 7-2 Software component availability for Macintosh....294
Table 7-3 CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet all-in-one software....295
Table 8-1 HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one media sources and destinations....316
Table 8-2 HP LaserJet 3052/3055 all-in-one media sources and destinations....316
Table 8-3 HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-oneHP LaserJet 3052/3055 all-in-one media sources and destinations....316
Table 8-4 Media-source commands....317
Table 8-5 Supported features and attributes, by driver....317
Table 8-6 Supported media types....319

Table 8-7 Custom media sizes....320
Table 8-8 Media-type commands....320
Table 8-9 Devices installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows 2000 and Windows XP....327
Table 8-10 Devices installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me....328

List of figures

Figure 2-1 Welcome to the HP Product Survey Program screen....30
Figure 2-2 HP LaserJet Scan dialog box....33
Figure 2-3 HP LaserJet Scan dialog box....33
Figure 2-4 Scan Setup Options dialog box....34
Figure 2-5 HP LaserJet Scan dialog box flowchart – 1 of 2....35
Figure 2-6 HP LaserJet Scan dialog box flowchart – 2 of 2....36
Figure 2-7 TWAIN-driver user interface....40
Figure 2-8 Scan Preferences – Web Page Dialog....41
Figure 2-9 Fax Setup Utility – Welcome screen....43
Figure 2-10 Fax Setup Utility – Fax Setup: Dial prefix screen....44
Figure 2-11 Fax Setup Utility – Fax Setup: Distinctive Ring screen....45
Figure 2-12 Fax Setup Utility – Fax Setup: Fax Line screen....46
Figure 2-13 Fax Setup Utility – Fax Identification: User Information screen....47
Figure 2-14 Fax Setup Utility – Fax identification: Telephone number screen....48
Figure 2-15 Fax Setup Utility – Fax identification: Shared telephone line screen....49
Figure 2-16 Fax Setup Utility – Fax identification: Manual answer mode screen....49
Figure 2-17 HP LaserJet Send Fax dialog box – user interface....51
Figure 2-18 HP LaserJet Send Fax dialog box – multiple recipients – keyboard....53
Figure 2-19 HP LaserJet Send Fax dialog box – multiple recipients – Phone Book....54
Figure 2-20 HP LaserJet Send Fax dialog box – cover page....55
Figure 2-21 Device Status screen....58
Figure 2-22 Supplies Status screen....59
Figure 2-23 Device configuration screen – 1 of 5....59
Figure 2-24 Device configuration screen – 2 of 5....60
Figure 2-25 Device configuration screen – 3 of 5....60
Figure 2-26 Device configuration screen – 4 of 5....61
Figure 2-27 Device configuration screen – 5 of 5....61
Figure 2-28 Network configuration screen – 1 of 2....62
Figure 2-29 Network configuration screen – 2 of 2....62
Figure 2-30 Print Info Pages screen....63
Figure 2-31 Event log screen....64
Figure 2-32 Device Information screen....65
Figure 2-33 Paper Handling screen....66
Figure 2-34 Print Quality screen....67
Figure 2-35 Paper Types screen....68
Figure 2-36 System Setup screen....69
Figure 2-37 Service screen....70
Figure 2-38 Printing screen....71
Figure 2-39 PCL5e screen....72
Figure 2-40 PostScript screen....73

Figure 2-41 Fax Receive screen....74
Figure 2-42 Fax Phone Book screen....75
Figure 2-43 IP Configuration screen....76
Figure 2-44 Advanced screen....77
Figure 2-45 Bonjour screen....77
Figure 2-46 SNMP screen....78
Figure 2-47 Network Configuration screen – 1 of 2....78
Figure 2-48 Network Configuration screen – 2 of 2....79
Figure 2-49 Password screen....79
Figure 3-1 A typical constraint message....87
Figure 3-2 A property page with a Bubble Help icon....88
Figure 3-3 Finishing tab - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver....90
Figure 3-4 Document Options group box....92
Figure 3-5 Page-order preview images....95
Figure 3-6 Print Quality Details dialog box - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver....97
Figure 3-7 Effects tab - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver....98
Figure 3-8 Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)....99
Figure 3-9 Watermark Details dialog box....101
Figure 3-10 Paper tab - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver....104
Figure 3-11 Paper Options group box (default)....105
Figure 3-12 First Page options....108
Figure 3-13 Front Cover options....109
Figure 3-14 Other Pages options....110
Figure 3-15 Last Page options....110
Figure 3-16 Back Cover setting....111
Figure 3-17 Custom Paper Size dialog box....112
Figure 3-18 Basics tab – HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver....117
Figure 3-19 About This Driver dialog box....119
Figure 3-20 Configure tab....120
Figure 3-21 More Configuration Options dialog box....121
Figure 3-22 Configure Font DIMMs dialog box....122
Figure 3-23 Paper tab - HP PS traditional driver....125
Figure 3-24 Graphics tab....127
Figure 3-25 Device Options tab....128
Figure 3-26 PostScript tab....129
Figure 3-27 Advanced PostScript options....131
Figure 4-1 A typical constraint message....135
Figure 4-2 Advanced tab – HP PCL 6 Unidriver....138
Figure 4-3 Advanced tab – PS Emulation Unidriver....139
Figure 4-4 Advanced tab - PS Emulation Unidriver - PostScript Options....142
Figure 4-5 Paper/Quality tab....145
Figure 4-6 Paper Options group box....147
Figure 4-7 Front Cover setting....150
Figure 4-8 First Page, Other Pages, and Last Page options....151
Figure 4-9 Effects tab....153
Figure 4-10 Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)....155
Figure 4-11 Watermark Details dialog box....156
Figure 4-12 Finishing tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver....161
Figure 4-13 Page-order preview images....165
Figure 4-14 Device Settings tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver....167

Figure 4-15 Device Settings tab - PS Emulation Unidriver....168
Figure 4-16 Font Substitution Table....169
Figure 4-17 About tab....173
Figure 5-1 HP ToolboxFX – Windows system tray icon....176
Figure 5-2 HP ToolboxFX – Fax Received pop-up message....179
Figure 5-3 HP Device Alert – CLOSE DOOR pop-up message....180
Figure 5-4 HP Device Alert – CLOSE DOOR System Tray and Desktop pop-up message....181
Figure 5-5 Device Status screen....183
Figure 5-6 Supplies Status screen....184
Figure 5-7 Device Configuration screen – 1 of 5....185
Figure 5-8 Device Configuration screen – 2 of 5....186
Figure 5-9 Device Configuration screen – 3 of 5....187
Figure 5-10 Device Configuration screen – 4 of 5....188
Figure 5-11 Device Configuration screen – 5 of 5....189
Figure 5-12 Network Configuration screen – 1 of 3....190
Figure 5-13 Network Configuration screen – 2 of 3....191
Figure 5-14 Network Configuration screen – 3 of 3....191
Figure 5-15 Print Information Pages screen....193
Figure 5-16 Event Log screen....194
Figure 5-17 Set up Status Alerts screen....195
Figure 5-18 Set up E-mail Alerts screen – 1 of 3....196
Figure 5-19 Set up E-mail Alerts screen – 2 of 3....197
Figure 5-20 Set up E-mail Alerts screen – 3 of 3....197
Figure 5-21 Fax Tasks screen....199
Figure 5-22 Fax Phone Book screen....200
Figure 5-23 Fax Send Log screen....202
Figure 5-24 Fax Receive log screen....203
Figure 5-25 Fax Data Properties screen....204
Figure 5-26 Troubleshooting sub-folder....205
Figure 5-27 Troubleshooting – HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide....206
Figure 5-28 How do I...? sub-folder....207
Figure 5-29 How do I... ? – HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide....208
Figure 5-30 Animated Demonstrations screen....209
Figure 5-31 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide....210
Figure 5-32 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 Readme....211
Figure 5-33 Device Information screen....212
Figure 5-34 Paper Handling screen....213
Figure 5-35 Print Quality screen....217
Figure 5-36 Paper Types screen....218
Figure 5-37 System Setup screen....220
Figure 5-38 Service screen....222
Figure 5-39 Device Polling Settings screen....223
Figure 5-40 Save / Restore Settings screen....224
Figure 5-41 Printing screen....225
Figure 5-42 PCL5e screen....226
Figure 5-43 PostScript screen....227
Figure 5-44 IP Configuration screen....228
Figure 5-45 Advanced Network Settings screen....229
Figure 5-46 SNMP screen....231
Figure 5-47 Network Configuration screen – 1 of 3....232

Figure 5-48 Network Configuration screen – 2 of 3....233
Figure 5-49 Network Configuration screen – 3 of 3....233
Figure 5-50 Password screen....234
Figure 5-51 About HP ToolboxFX dialog box....236
Figure 5-52 Product Registration screen....237
Figure 6-1 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one CD Browser screen....248
Figure 6-2 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one documentation....249
Figure 6-3 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one Online Support....250
Figure 6-4 USB install – Welcome to the Install Wizard dialog box....251
Figure 6-5 USB install – Sample screen showing current progress....252
Figure 6-6 USB install – Check for recommended installation updates (optional) dialog box....252
Figure 6-7 USB install – Installation Options dialog box....253
Figure 6-8 USB Install – sample System Requirements Results dialog box....254
Figure 6-9 USB install – License Agreement dialog box....255
Figure 6-10 USB install – HP Extended Capabilities dialog box....255
Figure 6-11 USB install – Destination Folder dialog box....256
Figure 6-12 USB install – Ready to Install dialog box....257
Figure 6-13 Model Selection dialog box....257
Figure 6-14 USB install – Connection Type dialog box....258
Figure 6-15 USB install – Connect Your Device Now dialog box....259
Figure 6-16 USB install – Device has been detected dialog box....260
Figure 6-17 USB install – Time Remaining dialog box....261
Figure 6-18 USB install – Restart your computer dialog box....262
Figure 6-19 USB install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box....263
Figure 6-20 USB install – Test Page dialog box....264
Figure 6-21 Sign up now screen....265
Figure 6-22 HP Registration screen....266
Figure 6-23 Network install — Welcome dialog box....267
Figure 6-24 Network install – Sample screen showing current progress....267
Figure 6-25 Newtwork install – Check for recommended installation updates (optional) dialog box....268
Figure 6-26 Network install – Installation Options dialog box....269
Figure 6-27 Network Install – sample System Requirements Results dialog box....269
Figure 6-28 Network install – Licence Agreement dialog box....270
Figure 6-29 Network install – HP Extended Capabilities dialog box....271
Figure 6-30 Network install – Destination Folder dialog box....271
Figure 6-31 Network install – Ready to Install dialog box....272
Figure 6-32 Model Selection dialog box....273
Figure 6-33 Network install – Connection Type dialog box....274
Figure 6-34 Network install – Identify Printer dialog boxIdentify Printer....274
Figure 6-35 Network install – Searching dialog box....275
Figure 6-36 Network install – Specify Printer dialog box....275
Figure 6-37 Network install – Printer Found dialog box....276
Figure 6-38 Network install – Confirm Settings dialog box....277
Figure 6-39 Network install – Confirm Changing Setting dialog box....277
Figure 6-40 Network install – Set Network Protocol dialog box....278
Figure 6-41 Network install – Time Remaining dialog box....279
Figure 6-42 Network install – Restart your computer dialog box....280
Figure 6-43 Network install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box....281
Figure 6-44 Network install – Test Page dialog box....282
Figure 6-45 Sign up now screen....282

Figure 6-46 HP Registration screen....283
Figure 6-47 Uninstall – Software Has Already Been Successfully Installed dialog box....285
Figure 7-1 HP Director....295
Figure 7-2 HP EWS Device Configuration – Status tab....296
Figure 7-3 HP EWS Device Configuration – System tab....297
Figure 7-4 HP EWS Device Configuration – Print tab....297
Figure 7-5 HP EWS Device Configuration – Fax tab....297
Figure 7-6 HP EWS Device Configuration – Networking tab....298
Figure 7-7 HP LaserJet all-in-one Installer icon....301
Figure 7-8 Authenticate dialog box....303
Figure 7-9 License dialog box – HP Software License Agreement....304
Figure 7-10 Installing dialog box – progress indicator....304
Figure 7-11 If you are using a USB cable... dialog box....305
Figure 7-12 Restart alert....305
Figure 7-13 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Introduction....306
Figure 7-14 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Select Device....306
Figure 7-15 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – User Identification....307
Figure 7-16 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Phone Line....308
Figure 7-17 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Outside Line....309
Figure 7-18 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Distinctive Ring....310
Figure 7-19 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Answering Machine....311
Figure 7-20 hp All-in-One Setup Assist – Finish....312
Figure 7-21 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Congratulations....313
Figure 8-1 HP System Diagnostics – System tab....321
Figure 8-2 HP System Diagnostics – Devices tab....322
Figure 8-3 HP System Diagnostics – Applications tab....322
Figure 8-4 HP System Diagnostics – HP Applications tab....323
Figure 8-5 HP System Diagnostics – Logging tab....324
Figure 8-6 Sample Device Manager screen – Windows XP....327
Figure 8-7 HP ToolboxFX – sample error dialog....331
Figure 8-8 HP ToolboxFX – sample error dialog....332

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one printing-system software.

This STR is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, management information systems (MIS) personnel, and HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one end users, as appropriate.

The following information is included in this STR:

- Descriptions of drivers and platforms, with system modifications
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- Descriptions of various topics that are associated with the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, including engineering details

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview

Chapter	Content

Chapter 1, Purpose and scope	This chapter provides basic information about the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one and its software:
	• Overview of the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one
	• Printing-system software overview, including the following topics:
	  ◦ System requirements
	  ◦ Supported operating systems
	  ◦ Availability
	• HP LaserJet software documentation

Chapter 2, Software description	This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers. This chapter also contains general information about other software features, including the following topics: • Driver configuration for Windows® • HP Extended Capabilities

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview (continued)

Chapter	Content
	• HP LaserJet Scan software • HP LaserJet Fax Setup Utility • HP LaserJet Send Fax software • HP Embedded Web Server • Supported third-party software
Chapter 3, HP traditional print drivers for Windows	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP traditional PCL 6, PCL 5, and postscript emulation print drivers for Windows 98 and Windows Millennium Edition (Windows Me).
Chapter 4, HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation unidrivers for Windows	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP traditional PCL 6, PCL 5, and postscript emulation print unidrivers for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.
Chapter 5, The HP ToolboxFX	This chapter provides information about the HP ToolboxFX software.
Chapter 6, Installing Windows printing-system components	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one in Windows operating systems by using various installation methods.
Chapter 7, Macintosh software overview	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one in Macintosh operating systems.
Chapter 8, Engineering details	This chapter provides information about the following special topics: • Media attributes • Troubleshooting • Summary of HPToolboxFX known issues

For additional information about the location of information within these chapters, see the table of contents. An index is also provided in this STR.

Additional detailed information about the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available only in the addendum:

- Lists of installed files
- System-modification information, such as changes to the registry and registry keys
- Descriptions of known software issues and solutions

HP LaserJet all-in-one product comparison

The following table contains feature comparisons of the five HP LaserJet all-in-one products that are described in this STR.

Table 1-2 Features of the HP LaserJet all-in-one products

Feature	HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one
HP product number	Q6504A	Q6502A	Q6503A	Q6500A	Q6501A
Memory	• 64 megabytes (MB) of random-access memory (RAM) • 2 MB of flash fax-storage memory	• 64 MB of RAM	• 64 MB of RAM • 2 MB of flash fax-storage memory	• 64 MB of RAM, expandable to 192 MB • 4 MB of flash fax-storage memory	• 128 MB of RAM, expandable to 192 MB • 4 MB of flash fax-storage memory
Speed	• Prints and copies up to 19 pages per minute (ppm) for Letter-size paper • Prints and copies up to 18 ppm for A4-size paper	• Prints and copies up to 19 ppm for Letter-size paper • Prints and copies up to 18 ppm for A4-size paper	• Prints and copies up to 19 ppm for Letter-size paper • Prints and copies up to 18 ppm for A4-size paper	• Prints and copies up to 22 ppm for Letter-size paper • Prints and copies up to 21 ppm for A4-size paper	• Prints and copies up to 22 ppm for Letter-size paper • Prints and copies up to 21 ppm for A4-size paper
Connectivity	• A high-speed USB port • Fax port • JetDirect-EX en3700 (part number: J7942A) • JetDirect-EX en2400 (part number: J7951A) **NOTE** These network solutions do *not* come standard on the HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one. They are available at: www.hp.com/support	• A high-speed USB port • 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port	• A high-speed USB port • Fax port • 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port	• A high-speed USB port • Fax port • 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port	• A high-speed USB port • Fax port • 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port

Table 1-2 Features of the HP LaserJet all-in-one products (continued)

Feature	HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one
HP product number	Q6504A	Q6502A	Q6503A	Q6500A	Q6501A
Media handling	• One 30-sheet automatic document feeder (ADF); maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • One 10-page priority input slot • One 250-sheet or 10-envelope media input tray (tray 1); maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches)	• One 50-sheet automatic document feeder (ADF); maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • One 10-page priority input slot • One 250-sheet or 10-envelope media input tray (tray 1); maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • A Letter/A4-size flatbed scanner	• One 50-sheet ADF; maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • One 10-page priority input slot • One 250-sheet or 10-envelope media input tray (tray 1); maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • A Letter/A4-size flatbed scanner	• One 50-sheet ADF; maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • One single-sheet priority input slot (tray 1) for sheet-fed printing • One 250-sheet media input tray (tray 2) for standard Letter/A4 sizes. • One 250-sheet media input tray (tray 3) for standard Letter/A4 sizes. (optional) • A Letter/A4-size flatbed scanner • Automatic 2-sided (duplex) printing, receiving faxes, and copying	• One 50-sheet ADF; maximum media size, 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) • One single-sheet priority input slot (tray 1) for sheet-fed printing • One 250-sheet media input tray (tray 2) for standard Letter/A4 sizes. • One 250-sheet media input tray (tray 3) for standard Letter/A4 sizes. • A Letter/A4-size flatbed scanner • Automatic 2-sided (duplex) printing, receiving faxes, and copying • Integrated convenience stapler
Control panel	2 x 16 character, GREEN backlit	2 x 16 character, GREEN backlit	2 x 16 character, GREEN backlit	2 x 16 character, GREEN backlit	2 x 16 character, GREEN backlit

Table 1-2 Features of the HP LaserJet all-in-one products (continued)

Feature	HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one
HP product number	Q6504A	Q6502A	Q6503A	Q6500A	Q6501A
Print	• 1200 dots per inch (dpi) effective output quality (600 x 600 x 2 dpi using HP Resolution Enhancement Technology [REt] 2400) • Printer command language (PCL) Level 6 • Adobe® PostScript® (PS) Level 3 emulation • PCL Level 5e	• 1200 dots per inch (dpi) effective output quality (600 x 600 x 2 dpi using HP Resolution Enhancement Technology [REt] 2400) • PCL Level 6 • Adobe® PostScript® (PS) Level 3 emulation • PCL Level 5e	• 1200 dots per inch (dpi) effective output quality (600 x 600 x 2 dpi using HP Resolution Enhancement Technology [REt] 2400) • PCL Level 6 • Adobe® PostScript® (PS) Level 3 emulation • PCL Level 5e	• 1200 dots per inch (dpi) effective output quality (600 x 600 x 2 dpi using HP Resolution Enhancement Technology [REt] 2400) • PCL Level 6 • Adobe® PostScript® (PS) Level 3 emulation • PCL Level 5e	• 1200 dots per inch (dpi) effective output quality (600 x 600 x 2 dpi using HP Resolution Enhancement Technology [REt] 2400) • PCL Level 6 • Adobe® PostScript® (PS) Level 3 emulation • PCL Level 5e
Fax	• Full-functionality fax capabilities with a V.34 fax, including a phone book; fax from ADF or computer; and delayed-fax features • 2 MB of flash memory for storing faxes and phone-book entries		• Full-functionality fax capabilities with a V.34 fax, including a phone book; fax from ADF, flatbed, or computer; and delayed-fax features • 2 MB of flash memory for storing faxes and phone-book entries	• Full-functionality fax capabilities with a V.34 fax, including a phone book; fax from ADF, flatbed, or computer; and delayed-fax features • 4 MB of flash memory for storing faxes and phone-book entries	• Full-functionality fax capabilities with a V.34 fax, including a phone book; fax from ADF, flatbed, or computer; and delayed-fax features • 4 MB of flash memory for storing faxes and phone-book entries
Copy	• Reduce/ enlarge feature • Up to 19-ppm automatic collation for black and white and 18-ppm for Letter/A4-size paper.	• Reduce/ enlarge feature • Up to 19-ppm automatic collation for black and white and 18-ppm for Letter/ A4-size paper.	• Reduce/ enlarge feature • Up to 19-ppm automatic collation for black and white and 18-ppm for Letter/ A4-size paper.	• Reduce/ enlarge feature • Up to 22-ppm automatic collation for black and white and 21-ppm for Letter/ A4-size paper.	• Reduce/ enlarge feature • Up to 22-ppm automatic collation for black and white and 21-ppm for Letter/ A4-size paper.

Table 1-2 Features of the HP LaserJet all-in-one products (continued)

Feature	HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one	HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one
HP product number	Q6504A	Q6502A	Q6503A	Q6500A	Q6501A
Scan	• 24-bit • 600 pixels per inch (ppi) color scanning (optimal); up to 19,200 ppi (interpolated)	• 24-bit • 1,200 pixels per inch (ppi) color scanning (optimal); up to 19,200 ppi (interpolated)	• 24-bit • 1,200 ppi color scanning (optimal); up to 19,200 ppi (interpolated)	• 24-bit • 1,200 ppi color scanning (optimal); up to 19,200 ppi (interpolated)	• 24-bit • 1,200 pixels per inch (ppi) color scanning (optimal); up to 19,200 ppi (interpolated)
Energy savings	The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one automatically conserves electricity by substantially reducing power consumption when it is not in use. As an ENERGY STAR® partner, Hewlett-Packard Company has determined that this product meets ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency. ENERGY STAR® is a U.S. registered service mark of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.				

Printing-system software availability and fulfillment

To order the printing-system software if the CD is damaged or missing, contact HP Support at the corresponding HP Support Web site for your product:

- www.hp.com/support/lj3050
- www.hp.com/support/lj3052
- www.hp.com/support/lj3055
- www.hp.com/support/lj3390
- www.hp.com/support/lj3392

To request the printing-system software CD by phone, go to the following Web site for the correct contact number for your country/region:

welcome.hp.com/country/us/en/wwcontact.html

The following table presents the part numbers and language groups on the software CDs for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

Table 1-3 CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one printing-system software

Part number	Description	Languages included on CD
Q6500–60121	Windows software CD for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one	• Danish • Dutch • English • Finnish • French • German • Italian • Norwegian • Portuguese • Spanish • Swedish
Q6500–60122	Windows software CD for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one	• Czech • English • Hungarian • Polish • Russian • Turkish
Q6500–60123	Windows software CD for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one	• English • Korean

Table 1-3 CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one printing-system software (continued)

Part number	Description	Languages included on CD
		• Simplified Chinese • Thai • Traditional Chinese
Q6500–60125	Readiris V10.0 software CD for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one **NOTE** The Readiris CD is not set up at fulfillment. The CD will be available from the Global Support Organization (GSO) or HP Parts because of contractual and licensing agreements.	The Readiris user interface is available in the following languages: • Dutch • English • French • German • Italian • Spanish • Portuguese-Brazilian **NOTE** Readiris can perform text recognition (also known as optical character recognition, or OCR) in 124 languages. See Table 2-4 Software component localization by language, A-K and Table 2-5 Software component localization by language, L-Z for a list of these languages.

Documentation availability and localization

The documentation in the following tables is available for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

Table 1-4 User documentation availability and localization

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide	• Czech • Dutch • English • French • German • Hungarian • Italian • Korean • Polish • Portugese • Russian • Simplified Chinese • Spanish • Swedish • Thai • Traditional Chinese • Turkish	Q6500-90909 (EN)	The *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide* is available in electronic format on the HP LaserJet all-in-one software CD.
HP LaserJet 3050 Getting Started Guide	• English	Q6504-90901	The *HP LaserJet 3050 Getting Started Guide* is available in hard copy and comes in the box with the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
	• Dutch • English • French • German • Italian • Portuguese (Brazilian) • Spanish	Q6504-90902	
	• Danish • English • Finnish • Greek	Q6504–90903	

Table 1-4 User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
	• Hebrew • Norwegian • Swedish		
	• Arabic • English • Estonian • Kazakh • Latvian • Lithuanian • Russian	Q6504-90904	
	• Bulgarian • Croatian • English • Romanian • Slovenian • Turkish	Q6504–90905	
	• Czech • English • Hungarian • Polish • Slovak	Q6504–90906	
	• English • Indonesian • Korean • Simplified Chinese • Thai • Traditional Chinese • Vietnamese	Q6504–90907	
HP LaserJet 3052/3055 Getting Started Guide	• English	Q6502–90902	The *HP LaserJet 3052/3055 Getting Started Guide* is available in hard copy and comes in the box with the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
	• Dutch	Q6502–90903	
	• English • French • German		

Table 1-4 User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
	• Italian • Portuguese (Brazilian) • Spanish		
	• Danish • English • Finnish • Greek • Hebrew • Norwegian • Swedish	Q6502–90904	
	• Arabic • English • Estonian • Kazakh • Latvian • Lithuanian • Russian	Q6502–90905	
	• Czech • English • Hungarian • Polish • Slovak	Q6502–90906	
	• Bulgarian • Croatian • English • Romanian • Slovenian • Turkish	Q6502–90907	
	• English • Indonesian • Korean • Simplified Chinese • Thai	Q6502–90908	

Table 1-4 User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
	• Traditional Chinese		
	• Vietnamese		
HP LaserJet 3390/3392 Getting Started Guide	• English	Q6500–90902	The *HP LaserJet 3390/3392 Getting Started Guide* is available in hard copy and comes in the box with the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
	• Dutch	Q6500–90903	
	• English		
	• French		
	• German		
	• Italian		
	• Portuguese (Brazilian)		
	• Spanish		
	• Danish	Q6500–90904	
	• English		
	• Finnish		
	• Greek		
	• Hebrew		
	• Norwegian		
	• Swedish		
	• Arabic	Q6500–90905	
	• English		
	• Estonian		
	• Kazakh		
	• Latvian		
	• Lithuanian		
	• Russian		
	• Czech	Q6500–90906	
	• English		
	• Hungarian		
	• Polish		
	• Slovak		
	• Bulgarian	Q6500–90907	
	• Croatian		
	• English		
	• Romanian		

Table 1-4 User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Part number	Location
	• Slovenian		
	• Turkish		
	• English	Q6500–90908	
	• Indonesian		
	• Korean		
	• Simplified Chinese		
	• Thai		
	• Traditional Chinese		
	• Vietnamese		

A printed copy of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide* is available in the following languages.

Language	Part number
Czech (CS)	Q6500-90910
Dutch (NL)	Q6500-90911
English (EN)	Q6500-90909
French (FR)	Q6500-90912
German (DE)	Q6500-90913
Hungarian (HU)	Q6500-90914
Italian (IT)	Q6500-90915
Korean (KO)	Q6500-90916
Polish (PL)	Q6500-90917
Russian (RU)	Q6500-90918
Simplified Chinese (ZHCN)	Q6500-90919
Spanish (ES)	Q6500-90920
Swedish (SV)	Q6500-90921
Thai (TH)	Q6500-90923
Traditional Chinese (ZHTW)	Q6500-90922
Turkish (TR)	Q6500-90924

2 Software description

This chapter provides information about the following topics:

- Operating systems
- Software component information
- HP Extended Capabilities
- Scanning software
- Fax Setup Wizard
- HP Send Fax software
- HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)
- Available product configurations
- Supported third-party software

NOTE For information about the HP LaserJet all-in-one software for Macintosh operating systems, see Macintosh software overview.

Operating systems

This section contains information about the following topics:

- Supported Windows operating systems
- Windows system requirements
- Printing from other operating systems

Supported Windows operating systems

The print-system software for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one is supported in the following operating systems.

Fully supported operating systems

The following Windows operating systems fully support the HP LaserJet all-in-one through the software installer, and drivers for these operating systems are available on the software CD that comes with the product.

- Microsoft® Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows XP® (32-bit)

Print and scan driver supported operating systems

The following Windows operating systems have print and scan driver support for the HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software.

- Windows Server 2003
- Microsoft Windows 98 Second Edition (Windows 98 SE)
- Windows Millennium Edition (Windows Me)

NOTE Microsoft Windows 98 First Edition does not support the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Windows system requirements

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products can function as standalone copiers and standalone fax machines (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one) without installing the software, but certain functions are not available unless the full HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software is installed. If you have a computer, HP strongly recommends installing the HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software. This provides full functionality and is the easiest method for setting required features.

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software has the following minimum system requirements.

Windows operating system requirements

- Minimum installation (all operating systems)
  - A Pentium® II (233 MHz) processor or greater
  - 64 MB of RAM

- 200 MB of available hard-disk space
- Super Video Graphics Array (SVGA) 800 x 600 16-bit color display

- Typical installation (Windows 2000 and Windows XP)
  - A Pentium II (233 MHz) processor or greater
  - 128 MB of RAM
  - 350 MB of available hard-disk space
  - SVGA 800 x 600 16-bit color display
- Recommended installation (Windows 2000 and Windows XP)
  - A Pentium 4 processor
  - 256 MB of RAM
  - 500 MB of available hard-disk space
  - 1024 x 768 24-bit color display
- A 2x or faster CD-ROM drive (required for installation)
- A direct connection to a computer and full product functionality requires a USB port.

NOTE If the USB port has another device attached to it, such as an external storage device, the device must be disconnected or you must add an additional USB port. You can add an additional USB port by using a USB hub or by installing an additional USB card.

Printing from other operating systems

NOTE For information about the HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software for Macintosh operating systems, see Macintosh software overview.

You can also print to the HP LaserJet all-in-one from any operating system that complies with the PCL command language, such as OS/2, UNIX®, or Linux systems. The OS/2 drivers will be available, shortly after the product release, from the HP support Web site.

UNIX systems require a Model Script to set up the UNIX environment for printing. The HP LaserJet III model script, or any generic HP LaserJet printer Model Script, should work. These files are written and provided by the individual UNIX vendor. Users of HP-UX can check for availability of the Model Script and the support model at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/net_printing

Click the **Support & Drivers** link.

Linux users should check for the availability of drivers at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

NOTE The Linux drivers are supported through the Linux community.

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one print drivers have been tested and have print-only support with Windows Terminal Server or Citrix Metaframe.

Software component information

This section contains information about the following topics:

- New HP LaserJet all-in-one software features
- HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software for Windows
- Software component comparison
- Software component availability
- Software component localization

New HP LaserJet all-in-one software features

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software includes new features since the release of the HP LaserJet 3015, 3020, 3030, and 3380 all-in-one products. The following are new features for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products:

- **New installer**. The HP LaserJet all-in-one products include a new installer that improves the print-system software installation process and supports a software-first installation.
  - Software-first is the recommended installation method.
  - You have the option to perform a Minimum installation, which consists of print and scan drivers, and the HP LaserJet Scan software.
- **New HP LaserJet Scan software**

  The HP LaserJet Scan software has been redesigned to consolidate all scanning user interfaces.
  - HP LaserJet Scan provides easy, 2-step scanning from either your computer or from the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel.
  - HP LaserJet Scan uses a wizard-based interface that guides you through creating, changing, or deleting destinations with setting that you use most often. All destinations that you create are available when scanning from your computer, and you can specify the destinations that are available when you press the Scan to button on the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel by using the **Setup...** option.
  - When selected, a new default destination (**Prompt me for settings first and then scan**) launches a wizard that guides you through specifying settings for a one-time scan job.
- **Improved network scanning**
- **New HP ToolboxFX software**. For Windows 2000 and Windows XP, the printing-system software includes HP ToolboxFX. Use HP ToolboxFX to view product status information such as toner and media levels, consumable and supplies re-order information, and pop-up alert messages when the product needs attention. HP ToolboxFX is also used for receiving faxes on your computer, setting up the fax speed-dial buttons and fax phonebook entries, and configuring product settings. For more information, go to the The HP ToolboxFX chapter.

HP LaserJet all-in-one print-system software for Windows

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products include the following software components and programs for Microsoft Windows operating systems.

Table 2-1 Software components for Windows

Components	Description
HP installer	Installs the HP LaserJet all-in-one software based on the hardware it detects from the host computer.
Uninstaller	Removes files and folders that were installed when the HP LaserJet all-in-one software was originally installed on the computer.
Scrubber utility	After running the uninstaller, removes files and folders that were installed when the HP LaserJet all-in-one software was originally installed on the computer.
HP LaserJet Scan software	Provides access to the scan functions on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.
HP LaserJet Fax software[1]	Provides the ability to send faxes from your computer.
HP ToolboxFX	Provides an interface to manage the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Use the HP ToolboxFX to perform the following tasks: • Monitor the status of the product. • Change the print, phone book, and limited fax settings for the product. • Find troubleshooting information and instructions for performing basic tasks. • Receive Status Alerts when certain events occur or conditions exist on the product.

Driver software	Use the driver software to print, fax, and scan with the computer and the HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one, the HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one, the HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one. and the HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one. Use the driver software to print and scan with the computer and the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one.
	This software includes the following drivers:
	• The HP PCL 6 Unidriver and HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver. The HP PCL 6 Unidriver is installed by default in Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003. The HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver is installed by default in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me.
	• The HP PCL 5e Unidriver and HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver. These drivers are *not* installed by default. To install the HP PCL 5e Unidriver and HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver, use the Add Printer wizard.
	• The PS print driver and PostScript printer description (PPD) file for printing with PS level 3 emulation. This driver is *not* installed by default. To install the PS Emulation Unidriver or PS Emulation Driver, use the Add Printer wizard.
	• The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one Fax (computer fax) driver
	• Scan drivers
	  • **TWAIN driver**. TWAIN is an industry-standard scanning protocol. Scanning from the HP LaserJet all-in-one can be initiated from any TWAIN-compliant software program.
	  • **Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver**. WIA scanning (Windows XP only) can be started from a WIA-compliant program or from the computer. WIA has its own user interface that is relatively simple and does not contain the wide range of image-quality options that are available in the TWAIN driver user interface.

Readiris Professional V10.0 text-recognition software by IRIS	Converts scanned images into text that can be edited in word-processing programs. The user interface is localized into six languages. However, the software supports text-recognition in 124 languages.

Table 2-1 Software components for Windows (continued)

Components	Description
	Readiris Pro V10.0 supports text recognition in 2-byte Asian characters. You must have your operating system set up to display 2-byte characters in order to see the text. **NOTE** For better text-recognition scanning results, start Readiris and scan directly into the program. Readiris V10.0 automatically starts a wizard to help you through this process. When Readiris is installed on the computer, it appears as an option in the destination drop-down box in the HP Scan software. If you select Readiris as the destination, your image is scanned into .TIFF format and Readiris starts automatically to begin the text-recognition process. The Readiris software uses a separate installer that comes on a separate CD. The initial release of the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one includes Readiris Professional V10.0 software.
Online Help	Provides help for using the software for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one. The user documentation for these products is included on the installation CD as both .CHM (online help) files and Adobe Acrobat® .PDF files. The software CD uses a version of Adobe Acrobat Reader that remains on the CD and does not need to be installed on the computer. However, you need a Web browser installed on the computer in order to view the contents from any .CHM file.

[1] The HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one does not support faxing.

Software component comparison

The following table lists the differences between the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software feature set compared to the software for the HP LaserJet 3015, 3020, 3030, and 3380 all-in-one products.

Table 2-2 Software component comparison

Windows software components	HP LaserJet 3015, HP LaserJet 3020 and 3030, and HP LaserJet 3380 all-in-one products	HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390 /3392 all-in-one products
HP installer	X	X[1]
Uninstaller	X	X
Driver software	X	X
HP LaserJet Send Fax/Fax Driver	X	X[2]
Network Receive to PC fax functionality		x[3]
HP LaserJet Scan software	X	X[4]
Readiris Professional text-recognition software by IRIS	V8.0	V10.0
Online Help	X	X
HP ToolboxFX and Fax Management	X	X (in Windows 2000 and Windows XP only)
TWAIN drivers	X	X
WIA drivers	X	X
Scrubber utility	X	X

Table 2-2 Software component comparison (continued)

Windows software components	HP LaserJet 3015, HP LaserJet 3020 and 3030, and HP LaserJet 3380 all-in-one products	HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390 /3392 all-in-one products
Online user guide	X	X
Web registration	X	X

1 Two installers run in sequence.
2 This feature is *not* supported on the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one.
3 This feature is disabled.
4 Includes **Scan to** configuration.

Software component availability

The following table lists the availability of the HP LaserJet all-in-one software components by operating system.

Table 2-3 Software component availability for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one

Component	Windows 98 SE and Windows Me	Windows 2000 and Windows XP	UNIX	Linux
Drivers				
HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver	X			
HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver	X			
PS Emulation Driver	X			
HP PCL 6 Unidriver		X		
HP PCL 5e Unidriver		X		
PS Emulation Unidriver		X[1]		
HP traditional Postscript Printer Description (PPD)	X			
UNIX Model Script			X[2]	
Linux print drivers and model script				X[3]
Fax driver		X		
Fax software		X		
TWAIN scan driver	X	X		
WIA scan driver		X[4]		
HP LaserJet Scan software		X		
Installers				
Common Windows Installer	X	X		
CD Browser	X	X		
Fonts		X[5]		
.INF file (Add Printer)	X	X		
Bidirectional communication				

Table 2-3 Software component availability for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one (continued)

Component	Windows 98 SE and Windows Me	Windows 2000 and Windows XP	UNIX	Linux
Direct Connect Bidirectional Communications	X	X		
Remote management and status				
HP Web Jetadmin[6]	X	X		
Applet for HP Web Jetadmin[6]	X	X		
HP ToolboxFX		X		
Online Documentation				
HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide	X	X		
Hewlett-Packard LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One Install Notes[7]	X	X		
Help systems	X	X		
Other				
PS Fonts	X	X		

1 This driver is installed by using the **Add Printer Wizard** only.
2 This component is available at the following Web site: www.hp.com/support/net_printing
3 This component is available at the following Web site: www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting
4 This driver is available for Windows XP only.
5 Fonts are installed only during a Typical Installation, *not* a Minimum Installation.
6 This component is available at the following Web site: www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin
7 This document is also available at the following Web site: www.hp.com/support

Software component localization

The following table provides localization information about the print-system software components for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products.

NOTE A language key follows each table.

Table 2-4 Software component localization by language, A-K

Component [1]	Operating system	AR	BG	CS	DE	DN	EL	EN	ES	ET	FI	FR	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	KK	KO
HP ToolboxFX	2000, XP			X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X
HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver, HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver, and PS Emulation Driver	98 SE, Me			X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X
HP PCL 6 Unidriver, HP PCL 5e Unidriver, and	2000, XP, 2003 Server			X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X

Table 2-4 Software component localization by language, A-K (continued)

Component [1]	Operating system	AR	BG	CS	DE	DN	EL	EN	ES	ET	FI	FR	HE	HR	HU	ID	IT	KK	KO
PS Emulation Unidriver																			
Common Windows Installer	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP			X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X
Online manuals (.PDF)	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP			X	X			X	X			X			X	X[2]	X		X
Scan drivers	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP			X	X	X		X	X		X	X			X		X		X
Readiris text recognition	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
Readiris UI	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP				X			X	X			X					X		

[1] Components that are not available in a specific language are supported in English.

[2] *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide* only.

Language key for Table 2-4 Software component localization by language, A-K:

- AR = Arabic
- BG = Bulgarian
- CS = Czech
- DE = German
- DN = Danish
- EL = Greek
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish
- ET = Estonian
- FI = Finnish
- FR = French
- HE = Hebrew
- HR = Croatian
- HU = Hungarian
- ID = Indonesian
- IT = Italian
- KK = Kazakh
- KO = Korean

Table 2-5 Software component localization by language, L-Z

Component [1]	Operating system	LT	LV	NL	NO	PL	PT	RO	RU	SK	SL	SV	TH	TR	VI	ZHCN	ZHTW
HP ToolboxFX	2000, XP			X	X	X	X		X			X	X	X		X	X
HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver, HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver, and PS Emulation Driver	98 SE, Me			X	X	X	X		X			X	X	X		X	X
HP PCL 6 Unidriver, HP PCL 5e Unidriver, and PS Emulation Unidriver	2000, XP, 2003 Server			X	X	X	X		X			X	X	X		X	X
Common Windows Installer	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP			X	X	X	X		X			X		X		X	X
Online manuals (.PDF)	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP			X		X	X		X			X	X	X		X	X
Scan drivers	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X
Readiris text recognition	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X		X	X
Readiris UI	98 SE, Me, 2000, XP			X			X										

[1] Components that are not available in a specific language are supported in English.

Language key for Table 2-5 Software component localization by language, L-Z:

- LT = Lithuanian
- LV = Latvian
- NL = Dutch
- NO = Norwegian
- PL = Polish
- PT = Portuguese
- RO = Romanian
- RU = Russian
- SK = Slovak
- SL = Slovenian
- SV = Swedish
- TH = Thai

- TR = Turkish
- VI = Vietnamese
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese

The Readiris text-recognition software component is also available in the following languages:

- Afaan Oromo
- American English
- Afrikaans
- Albanian
- Arabic
- Aymara
- Asturian
- Azeri Latin
- Balinese
- Basque
- Bemba
- Bikol
- Bislama
- Brazilian
- Breton
- British English
- Bulgarian - English
- Byelorussian
- Byelorussian - English
- Catalan
- Cebuano
- Chamorro
- Corsican
- Esperanto
- Faroese
- Fijian

- Frisian
- Friulian
- Galician
- Ganda
- Greek - English
- Greenlandic
- Haitian (Creole)
- Hani
- Hebrew
- Hiligaynon
- Icelandic
- Ido
- Ilocano
- Interlingua
- Irish (Gaelic)
- Japanese
- Javanese
- Kapampangan
- Kicongo
- Kinyarwanda
- Kurdish
- Latin
- Luba
- Luxemburgh
- Macedonian
- Macedonian-English
- Madurese
- Malagasy
- Malay
- Maltese
- Manx (Gaelic)

- Maori
- Mayan
- Minangkabau
- Nahuatl
- Numeric
- Nyanja
- Nynorsk
- Occitan
- Papiamento
- Pidgin English
- Quechua
- Rhaeto-Roman
- Rundi
- Russian - English
- Samoan
- Sardinian
- Scottish (Gaelic)
- Serbian
- Serbian - English
- Serbian (Latin)
- Shona
- Somali
- Sotho
- Sudanese
- Swahili
- Tagalog
- Tahitian
- Tatar
- Tok Pisin
- Tonga
- Tswana

- Turkmen
- Ukrainian
- Ukrainian-English
- Waray
- Welsh
- Wolof
- Xhosa
- Zapotec
- Zulu

HP Extended Capabilities

When you install your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product, you have the option of participating in HP's voluntary program for communication between your system and HP. This feature, available through software that is included on your printing-system software CD, helps HP monitor toner usage.

At the time of the invitation (about two weeks after installation), full disclosure of the information to be communicated is provided. Participation is entirely voluntary, and the impact on your processing and connecting speed is negligible. Personal information is never sent to HP unless you give permission. TCP/IP addresses are used only to enable the connection and for security purposes.

Figure 2-1 **Welcome to the HP Product Survey Program** screen

If you decline the invitation, the dialog box does not appear again and no data will be gathered.

Scanning software

This section contains information about the following topics:

- Scanning methods
- HP LaserJet Scan software
- Scan drivers

Scanning methods

You can scan from your HP LaserJet all-in-one by using any of the following methods:

- **From the HP LaserJet all-in-one product control panel.** On the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel, press the Scan To button. Use the < or > buttons to make a selection from the following list, and then press the Start Scan or the Enter button.

  NOTE Scanning from the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel is possible *only* after the option has been configured in the HP LaserJet Scan software.

  The following options are configured by default for a USB connection:

  - If you select **File**, the scanned photo will be saved to a directory that you specify.
  - If you select **OCR**, the scanned document will be opened in the Readiris software to convert into an editable text document.

    NOTE This option *only* appears if Readiris text-recognition software is installed on the computer. For more information, see the help on the Readiris CD.

  - If you select **EMAIL PIC**, the scanned photo will be attached to a new e-mail message. You can then add an e-mail address, add notes, and send the message.
  - If you select **EMAIL DOC**, the scanned document will be attached to a new e-mail message. You can then add an e-mail address, add notes, and send the message.
  - If you select **SETUP**, the HP LaserJet Scan software opens the **Scan Setup Options** dialog box, where you can create, change, or delete the destination options that are available when you press the Start Scan button on the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel.

    NOTE Photos are scanned at 150 dpi and documents are scanned at 300 dpi.

- **From your computer by using HP LaserJet Scan (Windows).** Click **Start**, select **Programs** or **All Programs**, select **HP**, select the name of your HP LaserJet all-in-one, and then click **Scan**. For more information, see HP LaserJet Scan software.
- **From a TWAIN- or WIA-compliant software program.** Check the Help system in the software program to learn how to scan by using a TWAIN- or WIA-compliant scanner from within that program. For more information, see Scan drivers.

HP LaserJet Scan software

Use the HP LaserJet Scan software to scan from the HP LaserJet all-in-one and then complete any of the following tasks with the data:

- Save the scanned item to a file.
- Attach the scanned item to an e-mail.
- Perform text recognition on the scanned item through Readiris, if Readiris text-recognition software is installed on the computer.
- Open the scanned item with any third-party software program that supports the drag-and-drop function.

To use the HP LaserJet Scan software, click **Start**, select **Programs** or **All Programs**, select **HP**, select the name of your HP LaserJet all-in-one, and then click **Scan**.

The HP LaserJet Scan software saves the scan as any of the following image file types:

- .BMP
- .GIF
- .JPG
- .PDF
- .TIFF (both regular and compressed)

You can also convert a scanned document into editable text by using the Readiris software. The following editable text file types are supported in Readiris:

- .BMP
- .DCA
- .DOC
- .DW
- .HTM
- .MM
- .PDF
- .RTF
- .TXT
- .WP
- .WPS
- .WS
- .WS2

The HP LaserJet Scan software contains a simple user interface that provides a **What would you like to do?** drop-down menu, a **Setup...** button, and a **Scan** button.

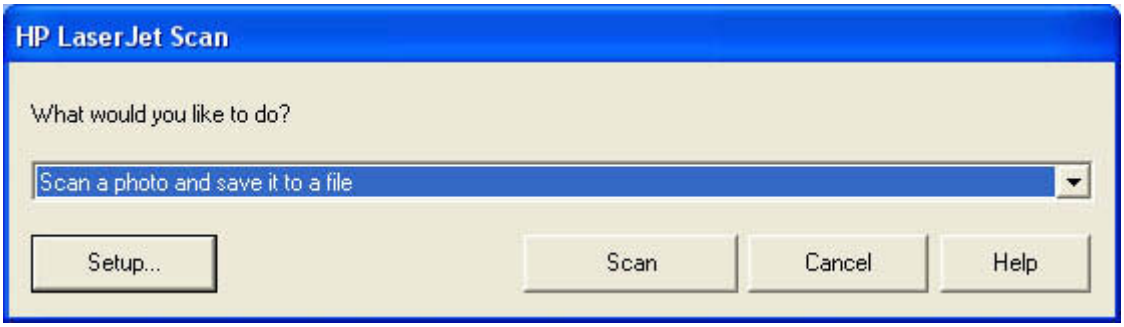


Figure 2-2 **HP LaserJet Scan** dialog box

The **What would you like to do?** drop-down menu contains any user-defined destinations and the following default destination options:

- **Scan a document and attach it to an e-mail**
- **Scan a photo and attach it to an e-mail**
- **Scan a photo and save it to a file**
- **Prompt me for settings first and then scan**
- **Scan a document into editable text** (if Readiris software is installed)

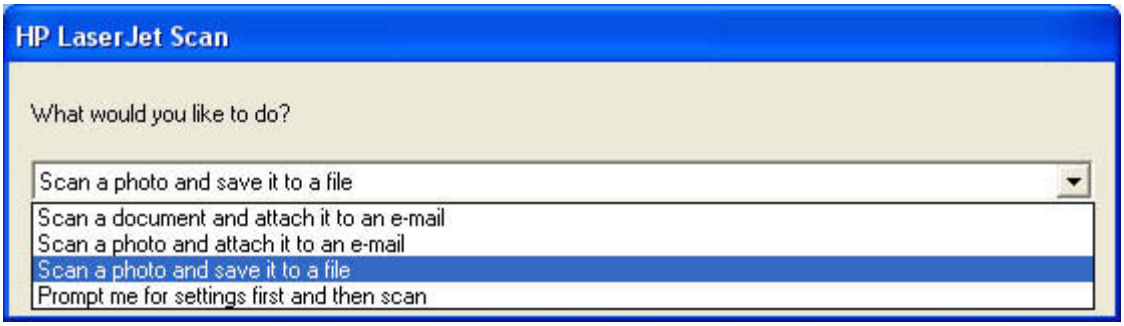


Figure 2-3 **HP LaserJet Scan** dialog box

After you have selected a destination, click **Scan** to start the scan.

Click **Setup...** to open the **Scan Setup Options** dialog box, where you can create, change, or delete the destination options that are available in the **What would you like to do?** drop-down menu and specify the destination options that are available when you press the Scan to button on the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel. Each destination has a unique name and scan settings associated with it.

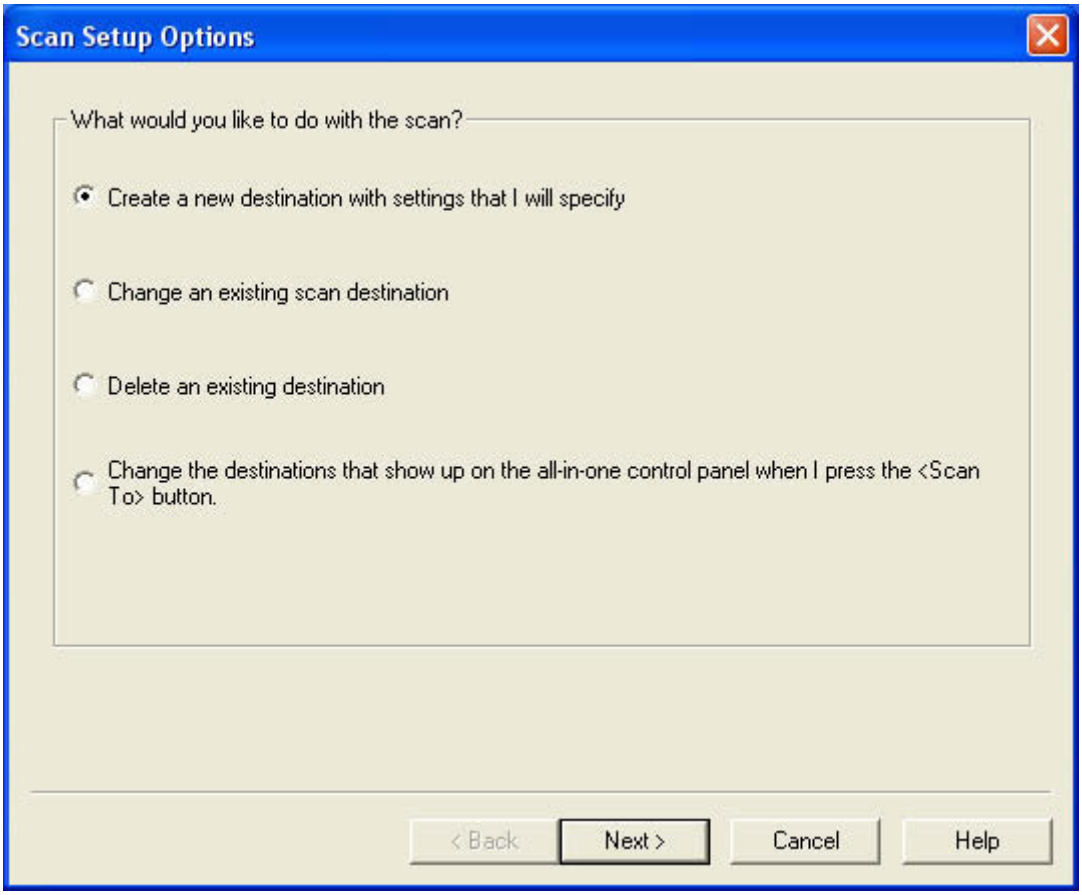


Figure 2-4 **Scan Setup Options** dialog box

NOTE The **Change the destinations that show up on the all-in-one control panel when I press the <Scan To> button.** option appears *only* if HP ToolboxFX is running.

Many of the dialog boxes in the HP LaserJet Scan software contain the following four common buttons:

- Click **Back** to return to the previous dialog box.
- Click **Next** to go to the next dialog box.
- Click **Cancel** to cancel the creation or deletion of a scan destination.
- Click **Help** to gain access to context-sensitive help for the dialog box.

The HP LaserJet Scan software presents a series of dialog boxes that depend on the selections that you make in the HP LaserJet Scan software dialog boxes. The following flowcharts show the sequence of HP LaserJet Scan software dialog boxes.

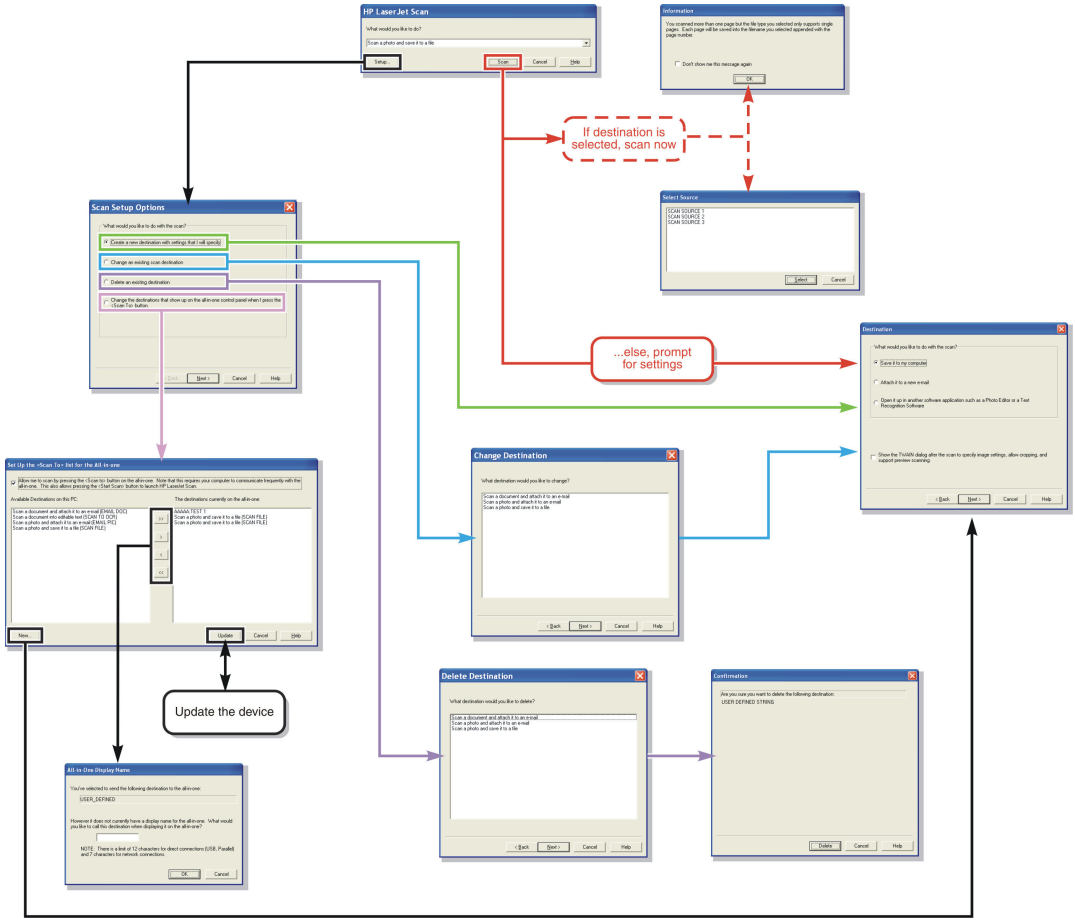


Figure 2-5 **HP LaserJet Scan** dialog box flowchart – 1 of 2

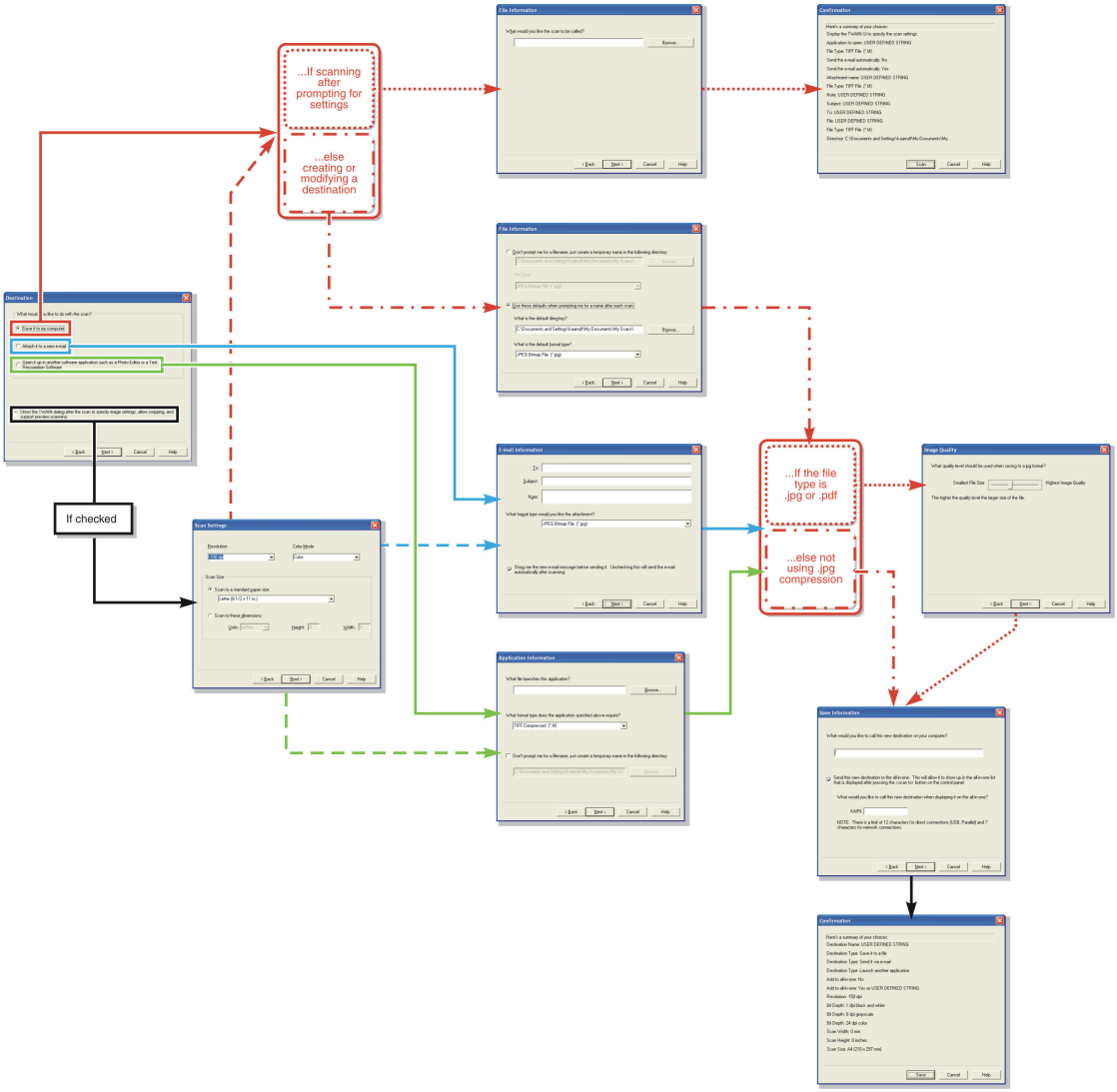


Figure 2-6 HP LaserJet Scan dialog box flowchart – 2 of 2

Every time the HP LaserJet Scan software is used, an HPPSCAN3.LOG file is generated within the current user's temporary directory. The HPPSCAN3.LOG file develops a log of operations and aids in troubleshooting problems. To gain access to the log file, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start** and then click **Run...**.
2. Type `%TEMP%` in the **Open:** field and then click **OK**.
3. Double-click the hppscan3.log file in the window that opens.

Selecting the third-party destination option saves the scanned image in a file of the specified file type. The HP LaserJet Scan software then starts the specified software program by appending the filename after the software filename. Because the HP LaserJet Scan software does not support automatic discovery of software programs, you must specify the correct software program and specify a file type that your program supports.

E-mail

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software for Windows supports only 32-bit, messaging application programming interface (MAPI)-compliant e-mail programs, and does *not* support Internet-based e-mail programs such as Hotmail, Yahoo, or MSN. The following table lists examples of supported e-mail programs.

Table 2-6 Examples of supported e-mail programs

Program Name	Windows OS
Microsoft Outlook	Yes: Outlook 97, Outlook 98, Outlook 2003, Outlook XP
Microsoft Outlook Express	Yes
Lotus Notes	Yes: V3.0 and later

E-mail is always sent through your default e-mail client. To see your default e-mail client in Windows XP (the path varies for other Windows operating system), click **Start**, click **Settings**, click **Control Panel**, click **Network and Internet Options**, click **Internet Options**, click the **Programs** tab, and review the **E-mail** setting.

Scan settings

The following table shows the available scan settings.

Table 2-7 Available scan settings

Option	Scan settings
Resolution	• 75 dpi • 100 dpi • 150 dpi • 200 dpi • 300 dpi • 600 dpi • 1200 dpi
Image type (bit depth)	• Black and White (1 bit) • Grayscale (8 bit) • Color (24 bit)

Table 2-7 Available scan settings (continued)

Option	Scan settings
File type	• Adobe PDF (*.pdf) • JPEG (*.jpg, *.jpeg) • GIF (*.gif) • Windows Bitmap (*.bmp) • TIFF (*.tiff, *.tif) • TIFF – compressed (*.tiff, *.tif)
Size to scan	• Letter • Legal • Executive • A6 • A5 • A4 • Envelope #10 • Envelope DL • Envelope C5 • Envelope B5 • Envelope Monarch • B5 (ISO) • B5 (JIS) • Double Postcard (JIS) • Postcard • Postcard Std #10 • 8.5x13 • 16K • Business Card • Photo: 3.5x5 in (9x13 cm) • Photo: 5x3.5 in (13x9 cm) • Photo: 4x6 in (10x15 cm) • Photo: 6x4 in (15x10 cm) • Photo: 5x7 in (13x18 cm) • Photo: 7x5 in (18x13 cm) • Photo: 6x8 in (15x24 cm)

Table 2-7 Available scan settings (continued)

Option	Scan settings
	• Photo: 8x6 in (24x15 cm) • Photo: 8x10 in (20x25 cm)

Scan drivers

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product software includes the following integrated scan drivers:

- TWAIN driver
- WIA driver

TWAIN driver

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product software includes a TWAIN-driver user interface that provides great flexibility and a wide range of image-quality options. TWAIN is an industry-standard scanning protocol, and you can initiate scans from the HP LaserJet all-in-one product by using any TWAIN-compliant program.

Peripheral management language (PML) is the supported scan language.

NOTE The TWAIN driver does not support duplex scanning.

TWAIN compatibility

TWAIN-compliant programs can scan documents directly from the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Programs that follow the TWAIN standards should typically work because the HP LaserJet all-in-one products support the required core functions for TWAIN version 1.9 compliance. However, these programs have only limited support for extended TWAIN options, and software that expects full support, such as Adobe and Core, might not function as expected.

For programs that are not TWAIN-compliant, use the following process as a workaround:

1. Use the HP LaserJet Scan software to scan the document into a folder in .TIFF format (or any other file type that the software supports).
2. Import the .TIFF file into the program.

For more information about TWAIN, visit the following Web site:

www.twain.org

TWAIN-driver user interface

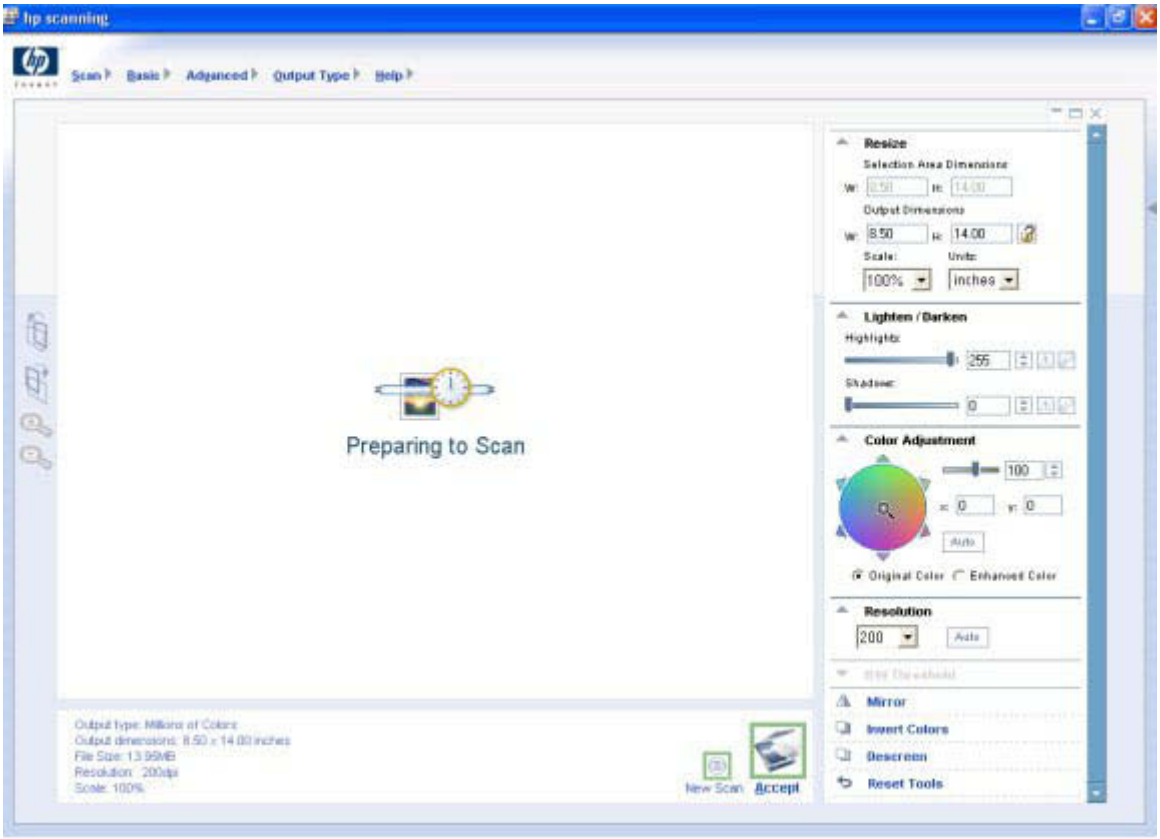


Figure 2-7 TWAIN-driver user interface

The TWAIN user interface contains the following options:

- **New Scan.** Use this control to rescan the image. Flatbed scanner previews always appear at 75 dpi and in color.
- **Accept.** Use this control to rescan the image if the original is on the flatbed scanner and to then send the image back to the program with the specified settings.
- **Resize.** Use this control to change the selection area for the final scan.
- **Lighten/Darken.** Use this control to lighten or darken the scanned image.
- **Color Adjustment.** Use this control to adjust the color on the scanned image.
- **Resolution.** Use this option to designate the final resolution for the image. The software interpolates non-native resolutions that are higher than 1200 dpi.
- **Mirror.** Use this option to flip the scanned image horizontally.
- **Invert Colors.** Use this control to invert the colors in the scanned image.
- **Descreen.** Use this control to apply a special algorithm that detects and removes undesirable patterns from the scanned image. Selecting this option automatically triggers a rescan because the descreen operation must take place as the image data is flowing in from the scanner.
- **Rotate.** Use this control to rotate the scanned image 90°.

- **Zoom.** Use this control to zoom in on the selected area of the scan. This automatically starts a rescan if one is needed to obtain a clear image.
- **Reset Tools.** Use this option to reset all the controls to their default values.

To set additional scan settings, on the **Scan** menu, click **Scan Preferences**.

Figure 2-8 Scan Preferences – Web Page Dialog

The **Scan Preferences** dialog box contains two tabs: **Automatic** and **Quality vs. Speed**. However, the HP LaserJet Scan software supports only the options on the **Automatic** tab. The following options are available on the **Automatic** tab.

- **Automatically straighten scanned images**
- **Automatically adjust exposure**
- **Automatically adjust color**
- **Use enhanced color**
- **Prompt for additional scans from glass/TMA.**
- **Restore Defaults**

WIA driver

NOTE The WIA driver does not support duplex scanning.

Use any of the following methods to open the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) scanning feature for Windows XP:

- Start WIA scanning through a WIA-compliant software program.
- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **My Computer** folder, and then click **Scan**.
- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **My Computer** folder, and then click **Scanner Wizard**.

- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **Scanners and Cameras** folder in the **Control Panel**, and then click **Scan**.
- Right-click on the scanner icon in the **Scanners and Cameras** folder in the **Control Panel**, and then click **Scanner Wizard**.

WIA has its own user interface. It is relatively simple and does not contain the wide range of image-quality options that are available in the TWAIN-driver user interface.

When you use the WIA scan driver, you must modify the brightness and contrast after you perform the scan. Contrast or brightness modifications cannot be set on the device. Only native device resolutions are supported, and no software interpolation is performed. The WIA scan driver supports **ADF** or **Flatbed** scan types, but does not support duplex scanning. The WIA scan driver supports the following file types:

- .BMP
- .JPG
- .GIF
- .TIFF
- .FPX
- .PNG

Fax Setup Wizard

The **HP LaserJet Fax Setup Utility** appears after you install the software and restart your computer. HP recommends that you run the Wizard to configure your fax settings for both the software and the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

You can also start **HP LaserJet Fax Setup Utility** by clicking **Start**, selecting **Programs** or **All Programs**, selecting **HP**, selecting the name of your HP LaserJet all-in-one, and then clicking **HP Fax Setup Wizard**.

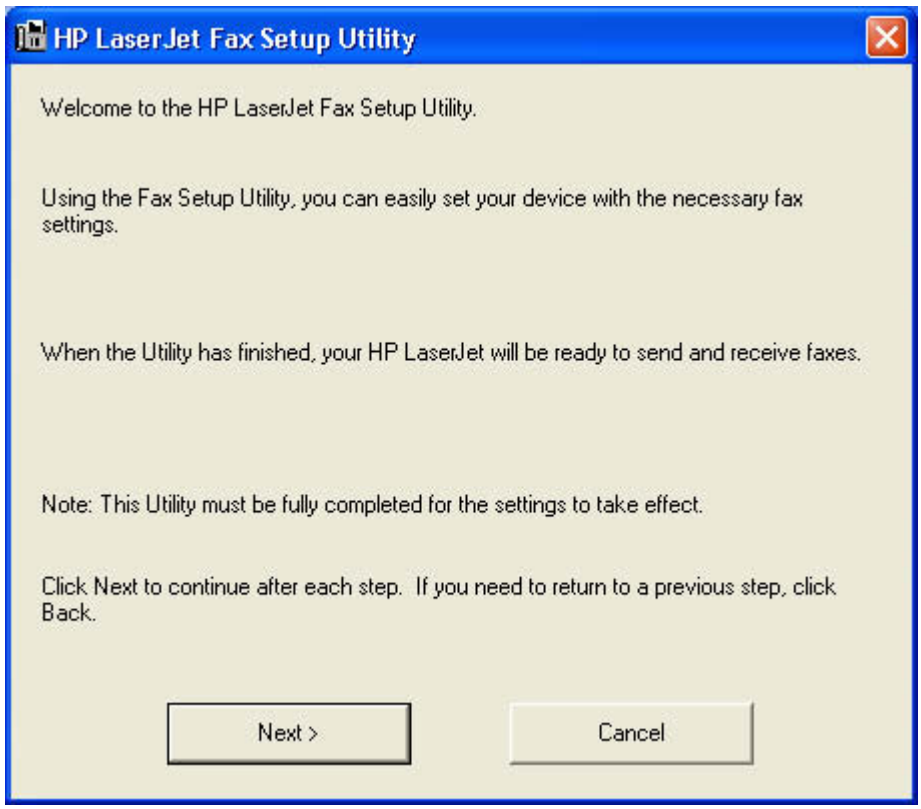


Figure 2-9 Fax Setup Utility – **Welcome** screen

NOTE After you install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software, the Fax Setup Wizard opens automatically. Run the Wizard even if you have already configured your HP LaserJet all-in-one fax parameters. The HP ToolboxFX settings that you provide in the Fax Setup Wizard are used to run other faxing features, such as the fax cover page.

Click **Next** to continue. The **Fax Setup Dial prefix** screen appears.

NOTE In all following Fax Setup Wizard screens, click **Back** to return to the previous screen or **Cancel** to stop the Fax Setup Wizard.

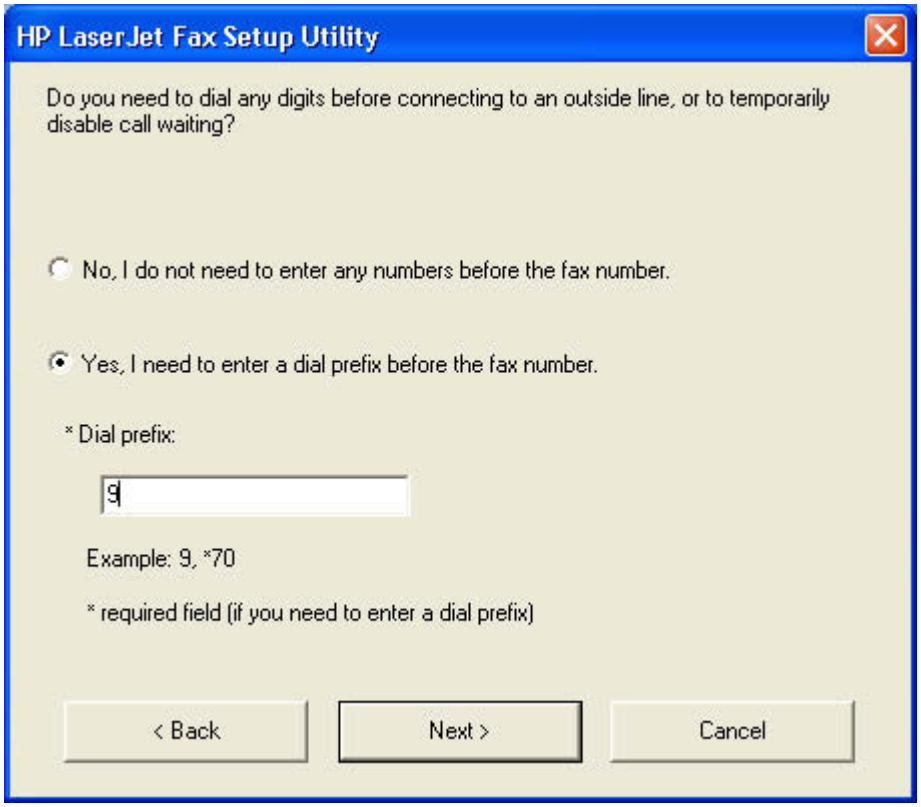


Figure 2-10 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax Setup: Dial prefix** screen

If you do not need to dial a prefix number in order to send a fax, select **No, I do not need to enter any numbers before the fax number**.

If you need to dial a prefix number in order to send a fax, select **Yes, I need to enter a dial prefix before the fax number**, and type the number in the **Dial prefix** field.

Click **Next** to continue. The **Fax Setup: Distinctive Ring** screen appears.

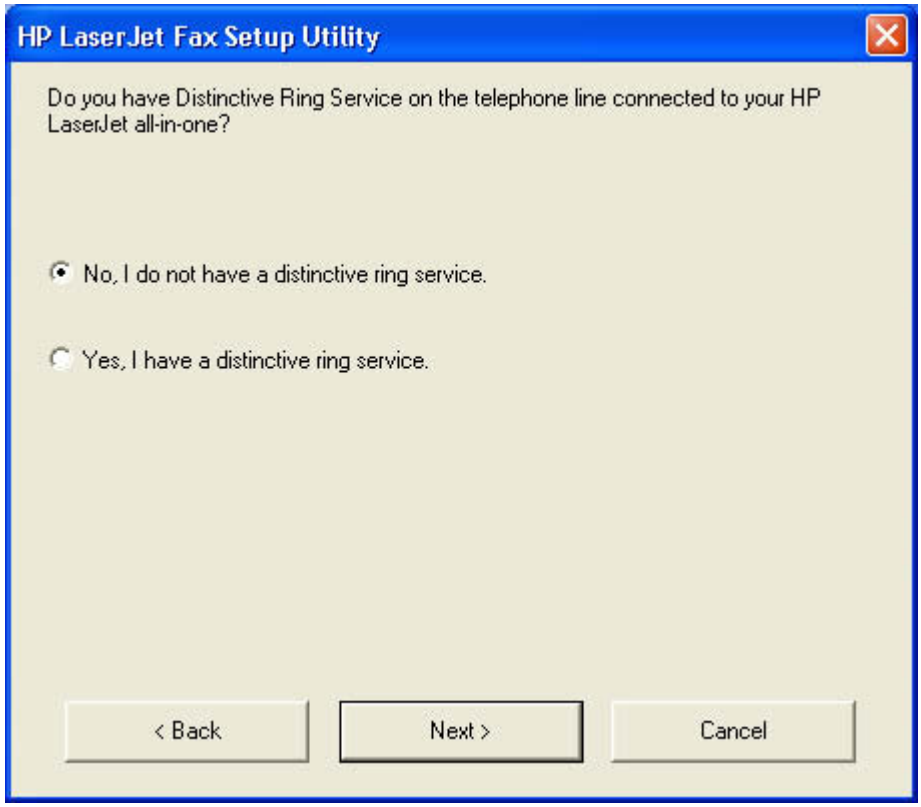


Figure 2-11 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax Setup: Distinctive Ring** screen

If you have a distinctive-ring service, select **Yes, I have a distinctive ring service**. If you do not, select **No, I do not have a distinctive ring service**. Click **Next** to continue. The **Fax Setup: Fax Line** screen appears.

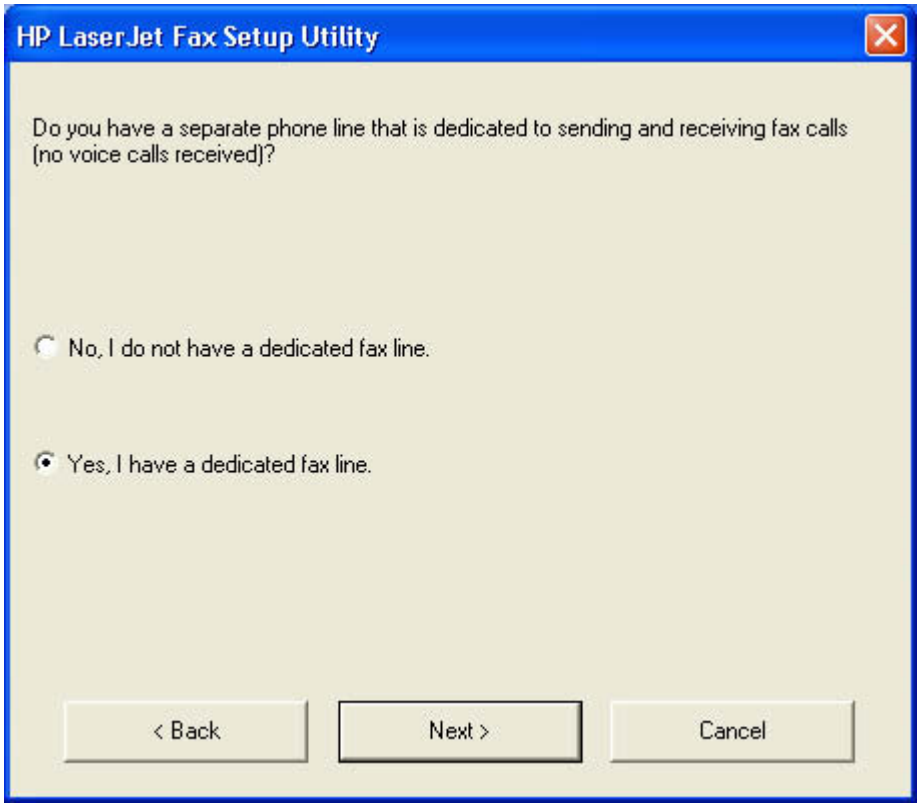


Figure 2-12 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax Setup: Fax Line** screen

If you have a dedicated fax line, select **Yes, I have a dedicated fax line**. If you do not, select **No, I do not have a dedicated fax line**. Click **Next** to continue. The **Fax Identification: User Information** screen appears.

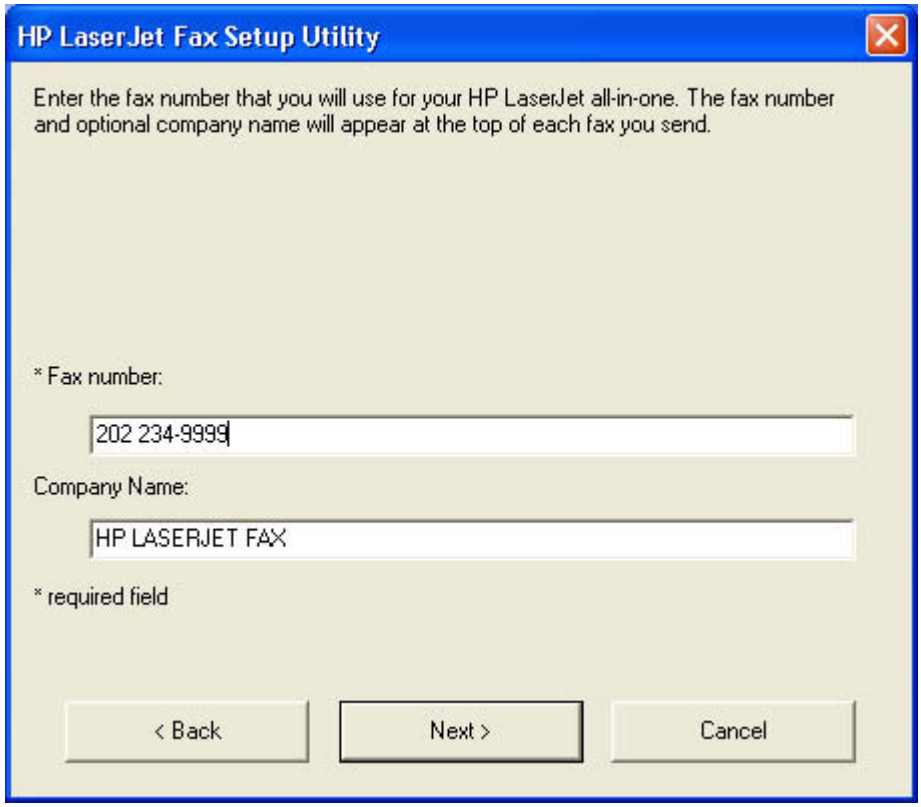


Figure 2-13 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax Identification: User Information** screen

Type your name and, if you want it, your company name in the appropriate fields.

Click **Next** to continue. The **Fax Identification: Telephone answering machine** screen appears.

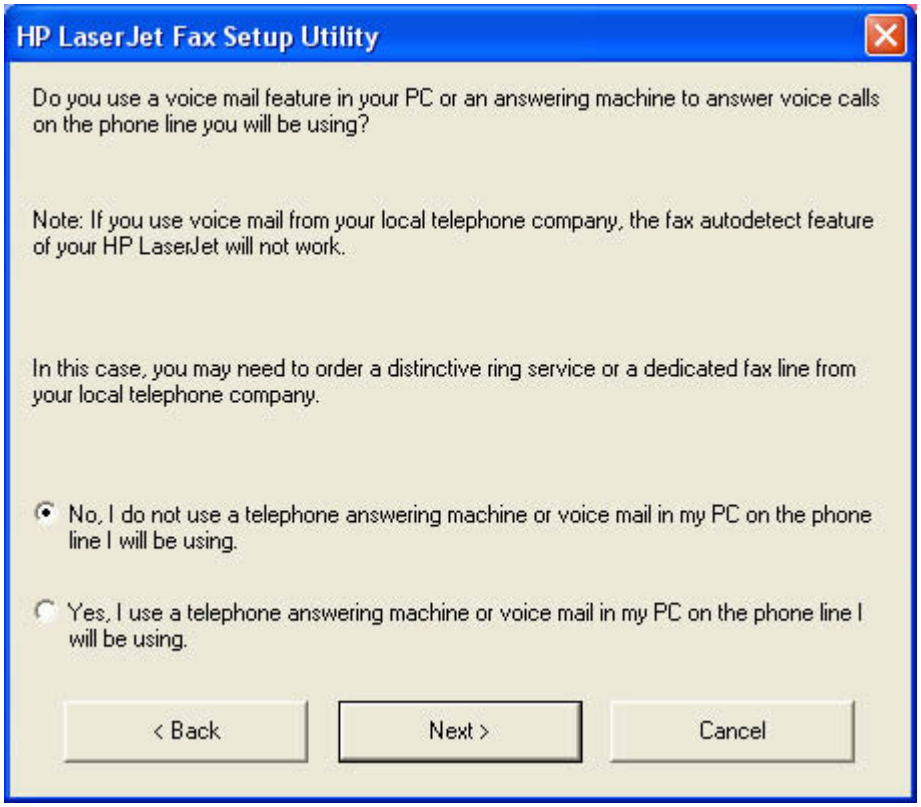


Figure 2-14 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax identification: Telephone number** screen

Select the appropriate response, and then click **Next** to continue. Depending on your response, one of the following two screens appears.

NOTE This screen appears *only* if you have a dedicated fax line.

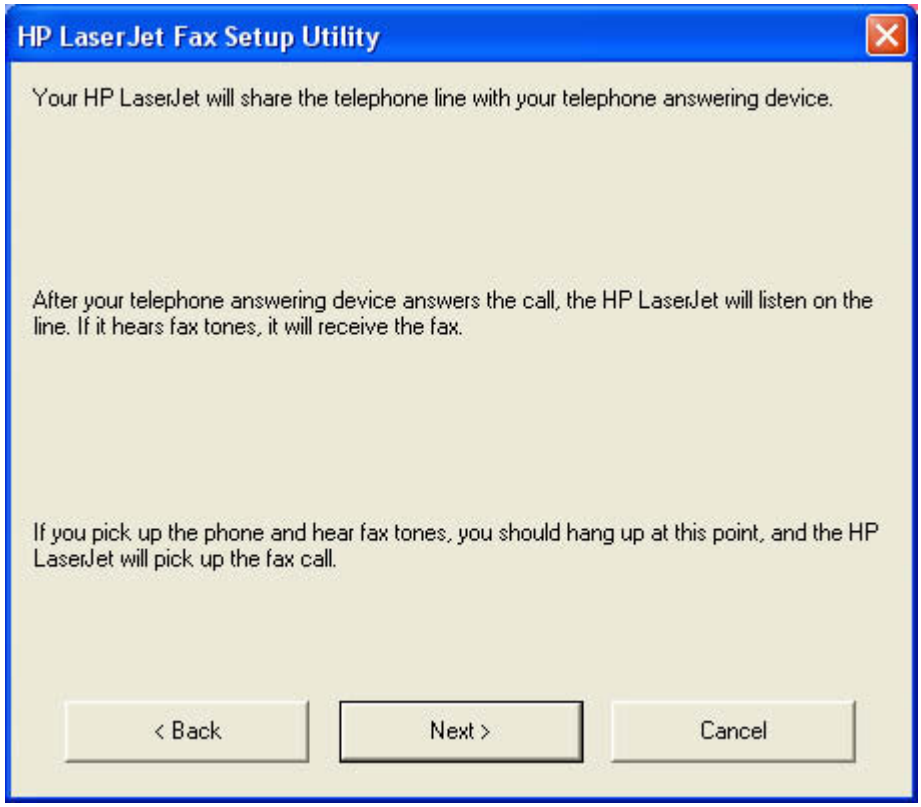


Figure 2-15 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax identification: Shared telephone line** screen

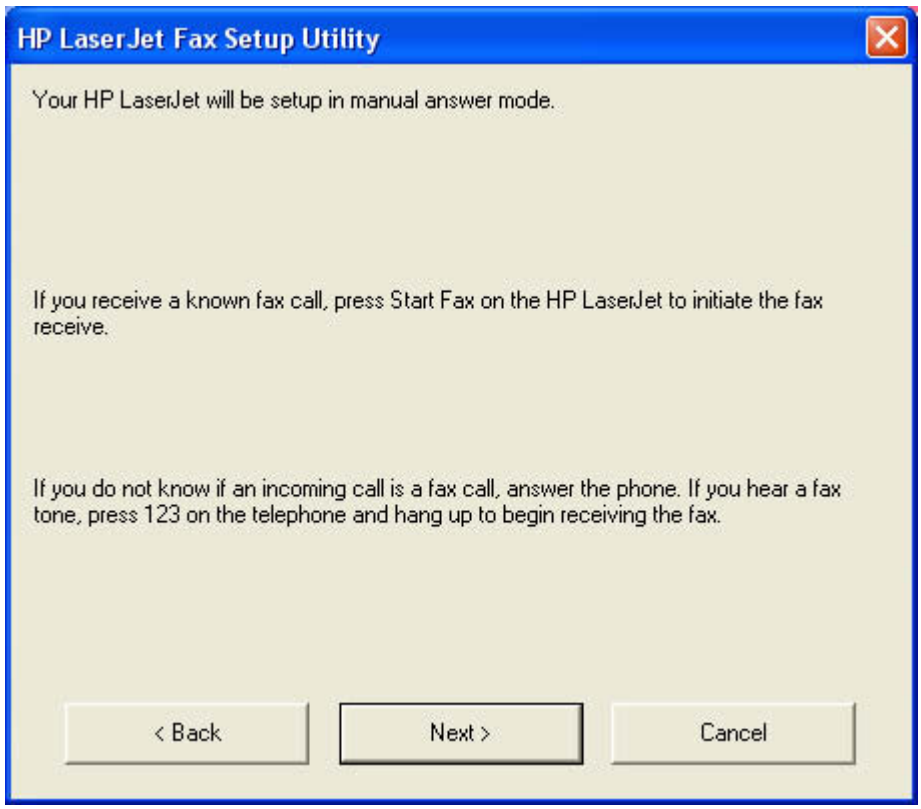


Figure 2-16 Fax Setup Utility – **Fax identification: Manual answer mode** screen

Click **Next** to complete the fax setup process.

HP Send Fax software

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one does *not* support faxing.

Use the HP Send Fax software to send faxes from your computer. To use the HP Send Fax software, click **Start**, select **Programs** or **All Programs**, select **HP**, select the name of your HP LaserJet all-in-one, and then click **Send Fax**.

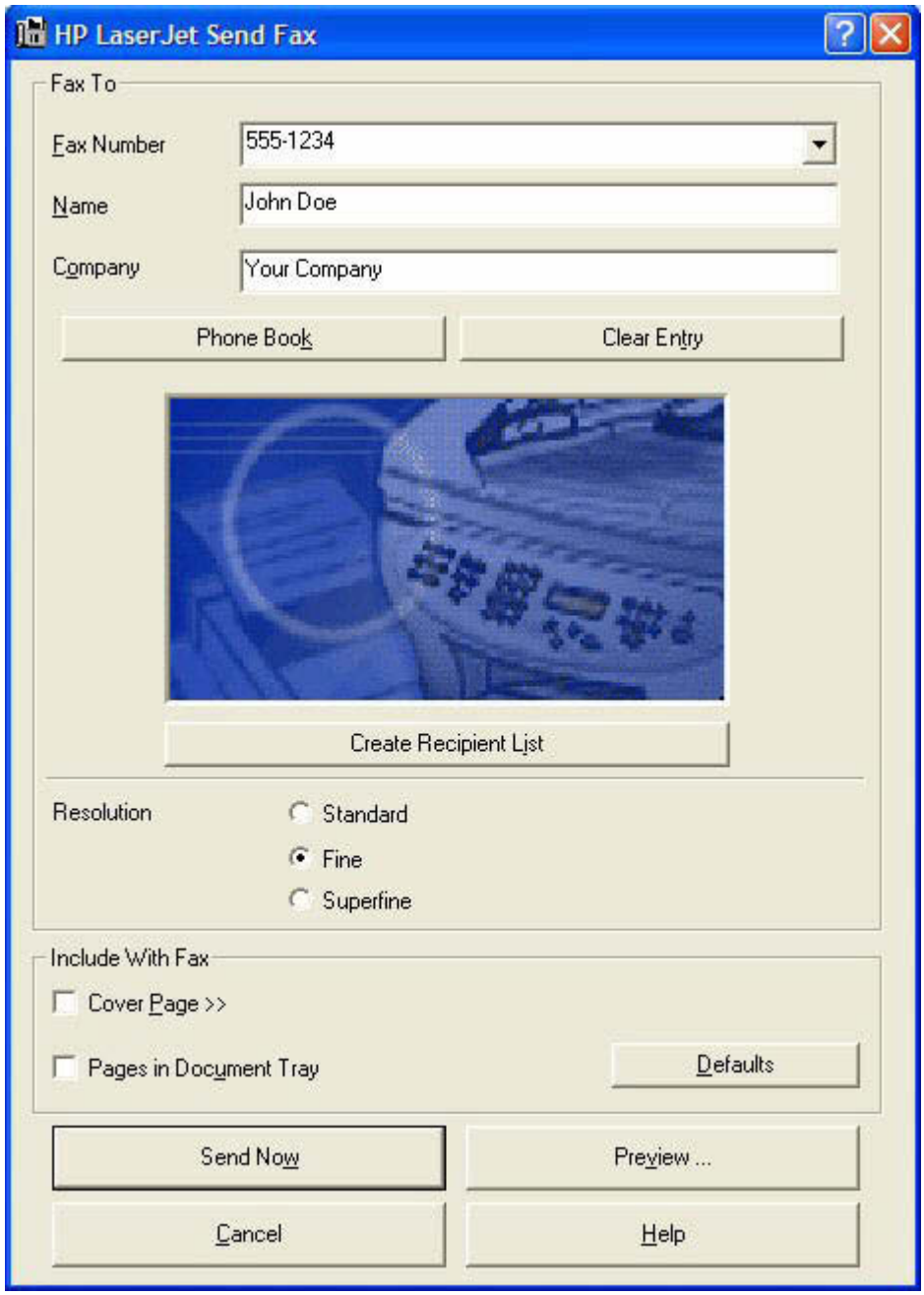


Figure 2-17 **HP LaserJet Send Fax** dialog box – user interface

NOTE The HP Send Fax software works with HP ToolboxFX. If you turn off HP ToolboxFX, you cannot use some of the HP Send Fax software features, such as the fax phone book. However, you can still preview and send faxes.

In some cases, faxing from the computer is more convenient than faxing from the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel, such as in the following examples:

- Faxing to multiple recipients
- Creating a cover page
- Faxing without first printing and scanning the document

Faxing to multiple recipients

To send a fax to multiple recipients, use the HP Send Fax software to create a recipient list by using one of the following methods:

- Click **Create Recipient List** on the **HP LaserJet Send Fax** dialog box. For each recipient, type in the information at your keyboard and then click **Add to list**.

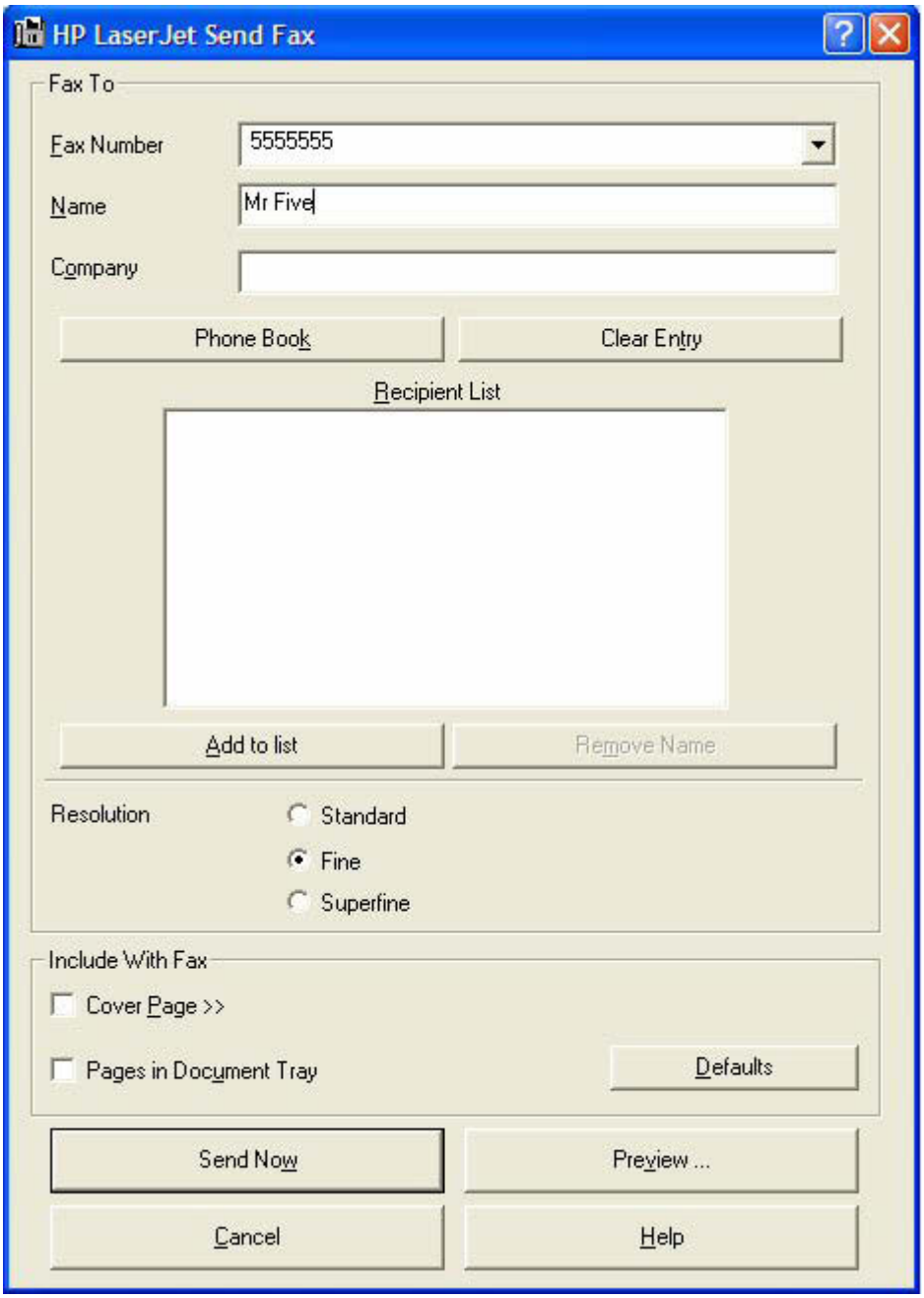


Figure 2-18 **HP LaserJet Send Fax** dialog box – multiple recipients – keyboard

- If you have stored entries in the fax phone book in the HP ToolboxFX software, click **Phone Book** on the **HP LaserJet Send Fax** dialog box, click **Create Recipient List**, and then drag-and-drop recipient names from the **Phone Book** field to the **Recipient List** field. To add new entries to the fax phone book in the HP ToolboxFX, click **Edit** to open the HP ToolboxFX.

NOTE If you add new entries in the HP ToolboxFX, click **Refresh** on the **HP LaserJet Send Fax** dialog box to see the new entries in the **Phone Book** field.

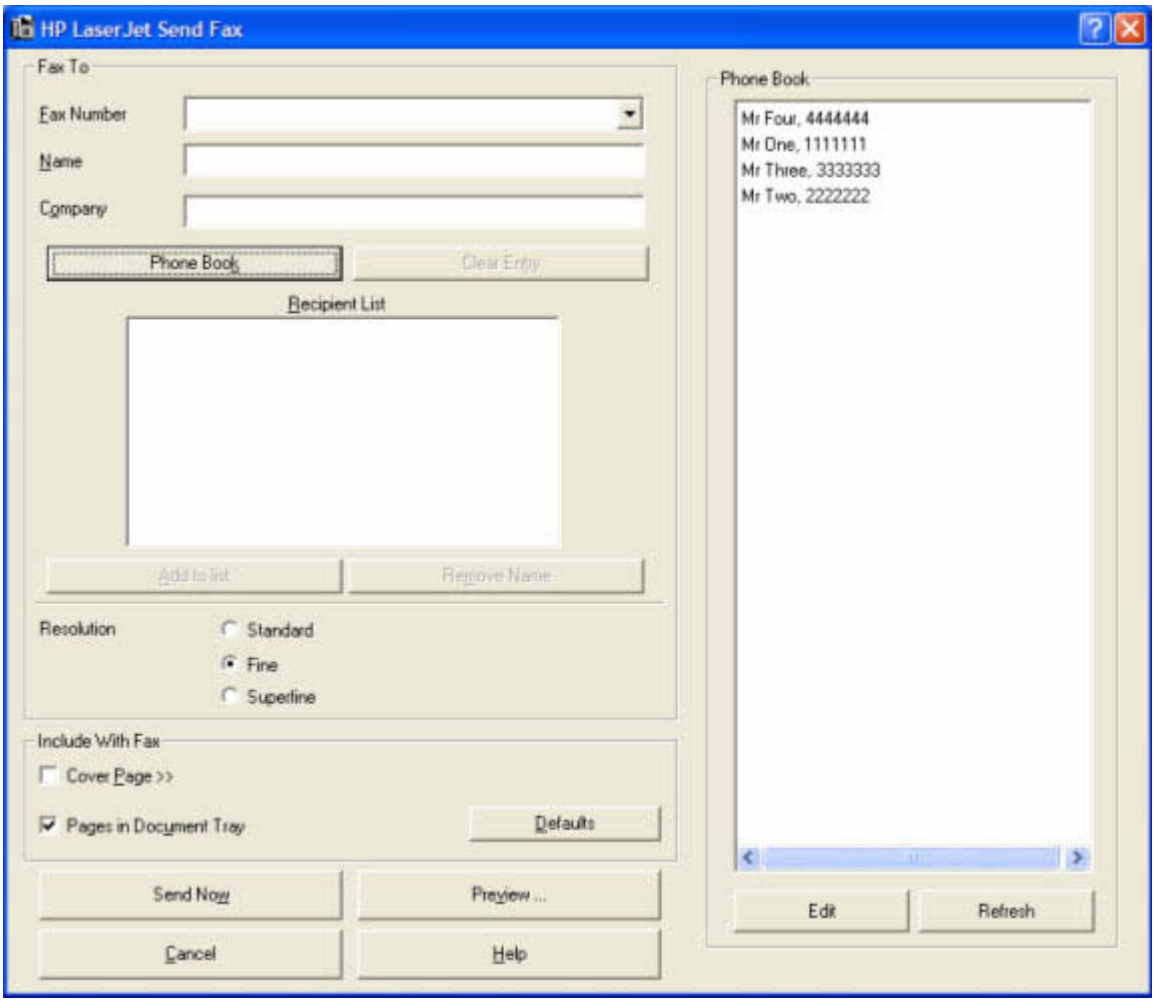


Figure 2-19 HP LaserJet Send Fax dialog box – multiple recipients – Phone Book

Creating a cover page

If you want a cover page to accompany your fax, select **Cover Page** in the **Include With Fax** options.

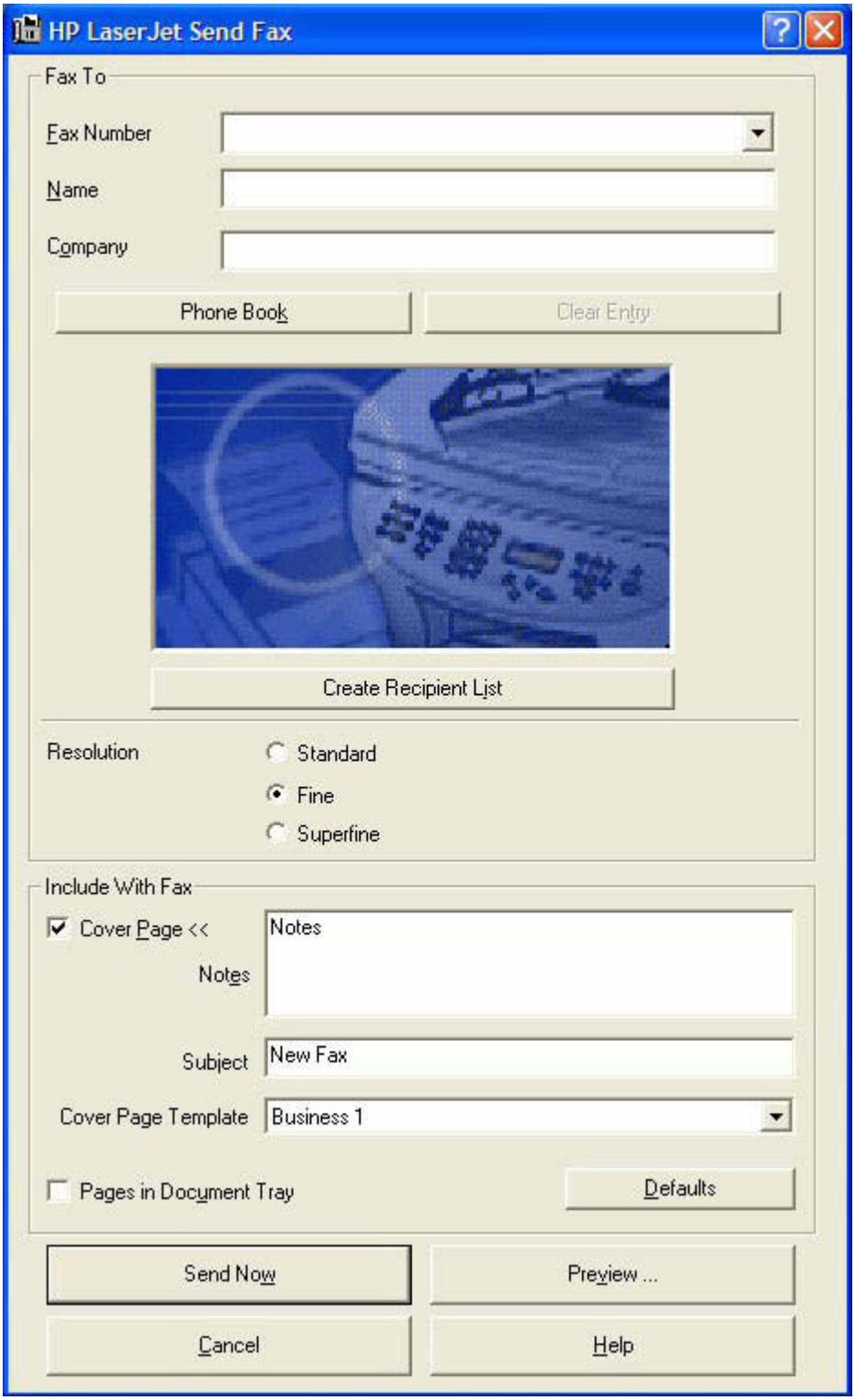


Figure 2-20 **HP LaserJet Send Fax** dialog box – cover page

Your name, company name, phone number, and fax number are entered automatically into the cover-page template. Edit your data for the cover-page template by using one of the following methods:

- Enter your data for the cover-page in the HP Fax Setup Wizard
- Enter your data for the cover-page on the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel
- Enter your data for the cover-page by clicking **Defaults** and then clicking **Edit**

When you select **Cover Page**, the **Notes** section appears. To view a completed cover page template, select one from the drop-down menu and then click **Preview**.

Faxing without first printing and scanning the document

One of the most useful features of the HP Send Fax software is the ability to fax documents without first printing and scanning them. For example, if you want to send a Microsoft Word document, open the document, click **File**, click **Print**, and then select **HP LaserJet 3050_3055_3390_3392 Fax** from the drop-down menu.

The HP Send Fax software starts with the document attached. If you want to view the fax, click **Preview...**. Append scanned documents by selecting **Pages in Document Tray**. Add a cover page by selecting **Cover Page**.

HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

The embedded Web server (EWS) is a Web-based interface that provides access to the HP LaserJet all-in-one status and configurations, including network configurations and Smart Printing Supplies (SPS) functionality.

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one does *not* support the EWS.

You can gain access to the EWS through the network connection to the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Type the HP LaserJet all-in-one IP address in a Web browser to open the HP LaserJet all-in-one EWS homepage. From the homepage, use the tabs and left navigation menu to check the status of the HP LaserJet all-in-one, configure the HP LaserJet all-in-one, or check the status of supplies.

Supported browsers include:

- Konqueror 3.2 or later
- Firefox 1.0 or later
- Internet Explorer 6.0 or later
- Mozilla 1.6 or later
- Netscape Navigator 7.0 or later
- Opera 7.0 or later

The HP EWS contains the following tabs:

- Status
- System
- Print
- Fax
- Networking

The following links are available on all EWS screens:

- Click **Order Supplies** to order supplies by using a Web interface.
- Click **Support** to open a window with the following links to remote support tools that are available for the product:
    - Click **HP Instant Support** to access self-help based on information that the product sent to the HP Web site, such as recommendations for troubleshooting, firmware upgrades, and reference documentation that is customized to address the most recent events on your product.
    - Click **Product Registration** to link to the HP Web site to register the product and begin the warranty period.
    - Click **Product Support** to link to the HP Web site to navigate through the available support links, such as drivers and software downloads.

NOTE The HP EWS provides settings that are also available by using HP ToolboxFX in Windows 2000 and Windows XP. For detailed descriptions of the settings that are available on the HP EWS pages, see The HP ToolboxFX.

Status

The **Status** tab contains the following pages:

- Device Status
- Supplies Status (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)
- Device Configuration
- Network Configuration
- Print Info Pages
- Event Log

Device Status

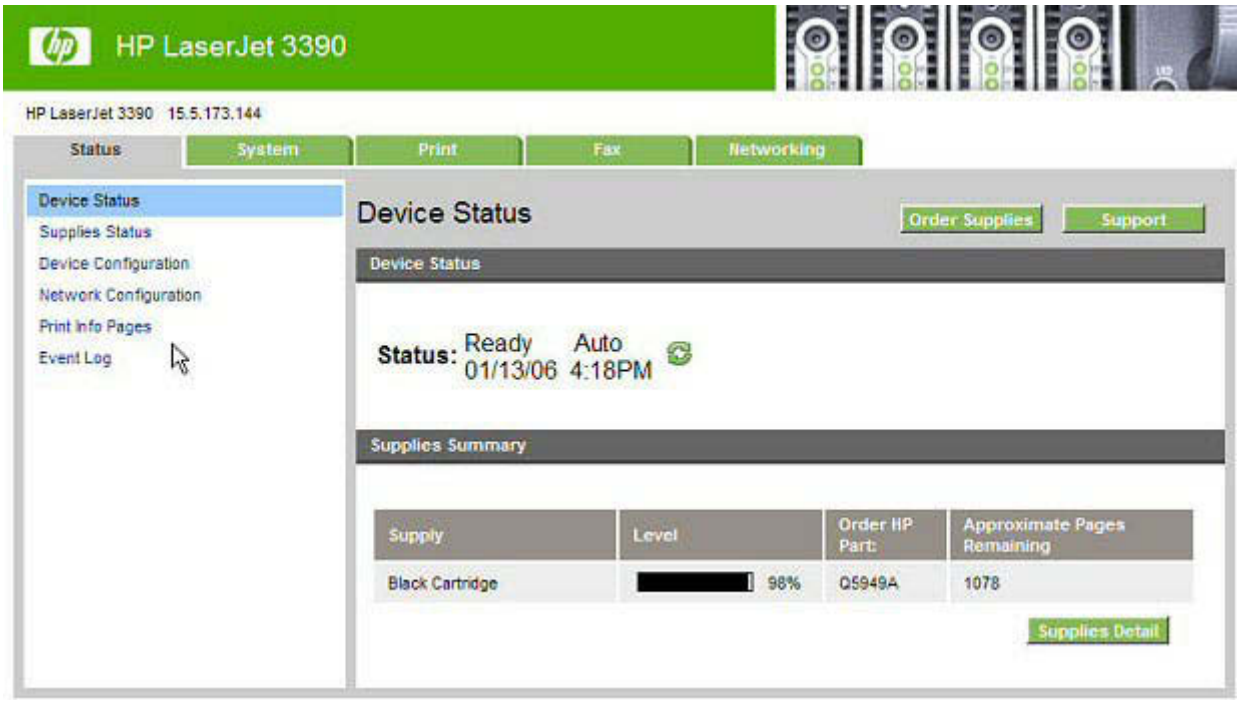


Figure 2-21 Device Status screen

The **Device Status** screen shows device-status messages from the product.

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one products include a Supplies Summary section on the **Device Status** screen which provides information about the estimated toner level, the approximate pages remaining based on the estimated toner level, and the HP part number for easy reference when ordering new consumables. This section is not available for the HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one or the HP LaserJet 3052/3055 all-in-one products.

Supplies Status (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)

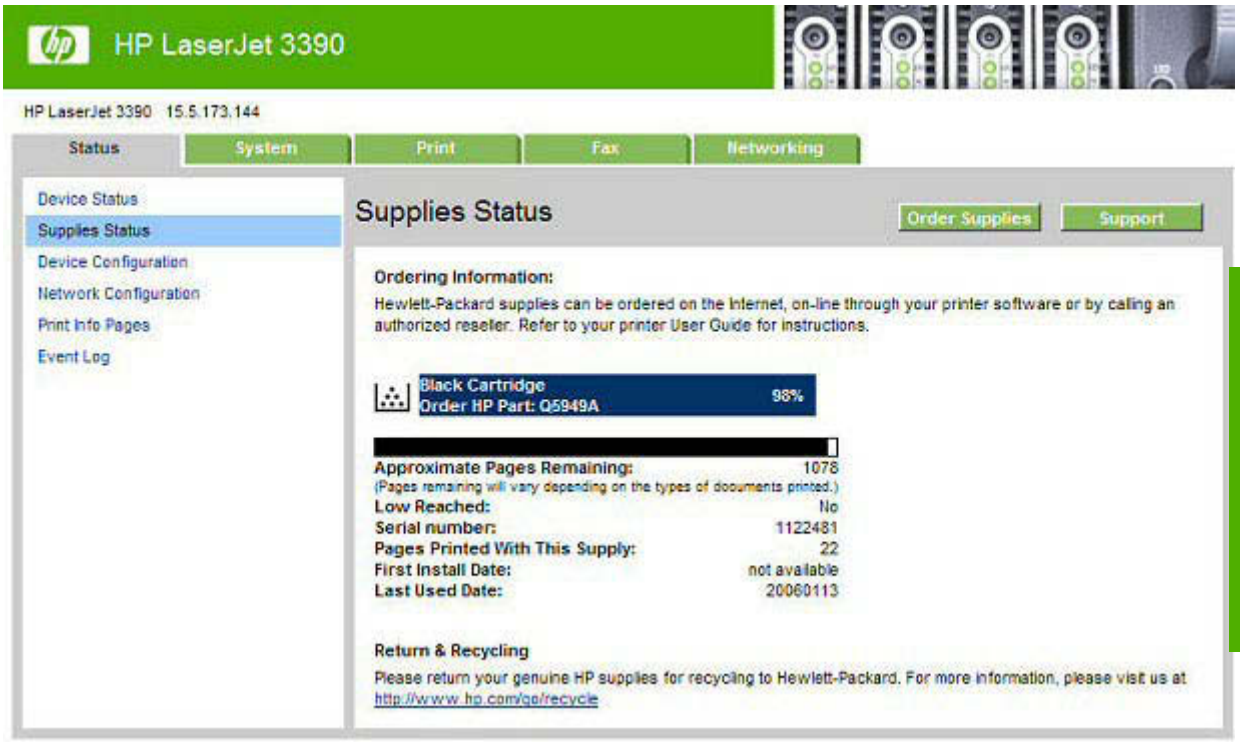


Figure 2-22 **Supplies Status** screen

The **Supplies Status** screen provides detailed information about the black print cartridge. This information is not available if a non-HP cartridge is installed in the product.

Device Configuration

Figure 2-23 **Device configuration** screen – 1 of 5

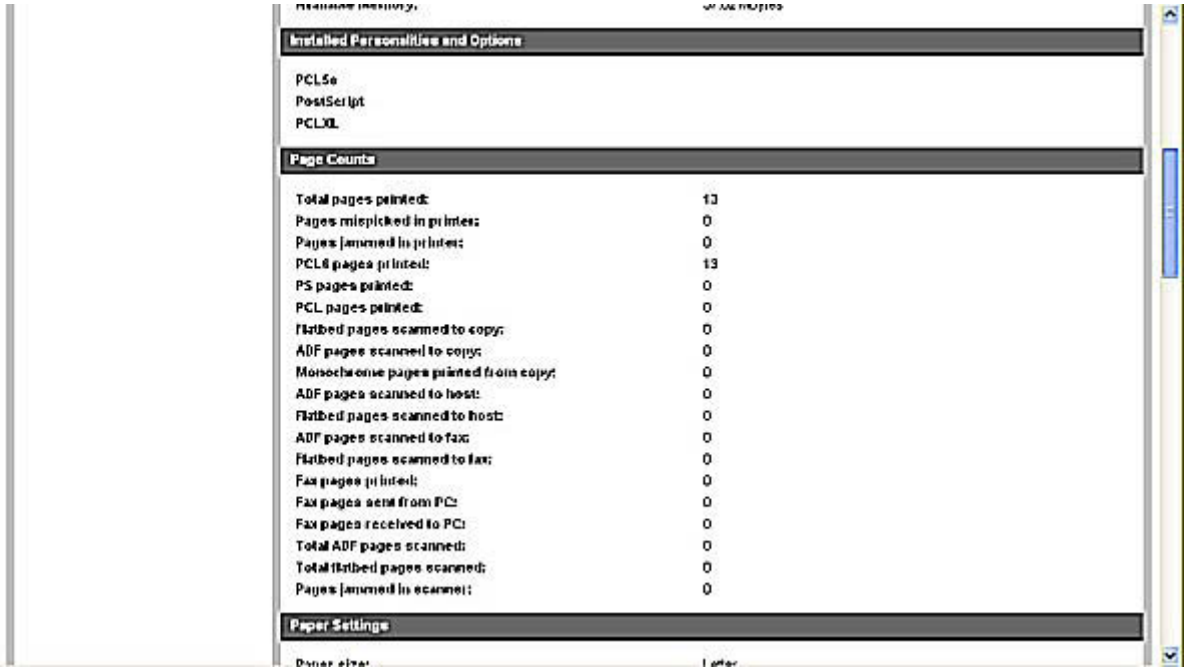


Figure 2-24 **Device configuration** screen – 2 of 5

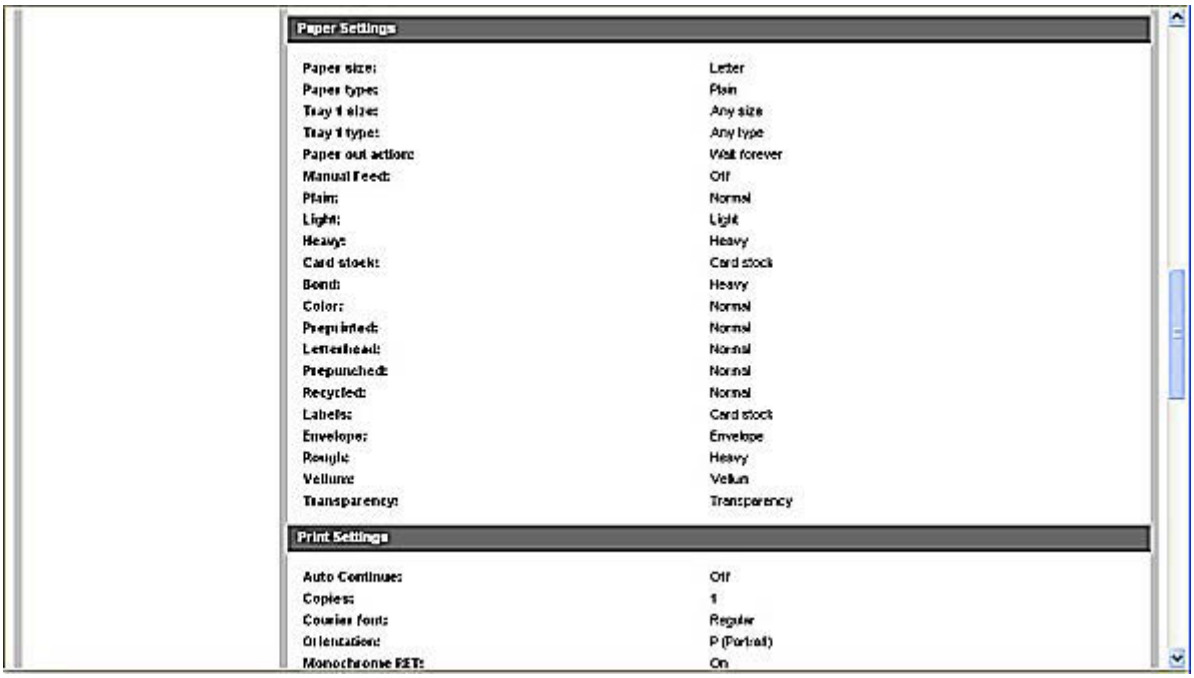


Figure 2-25 **Device configuration** screen – 3 of 5

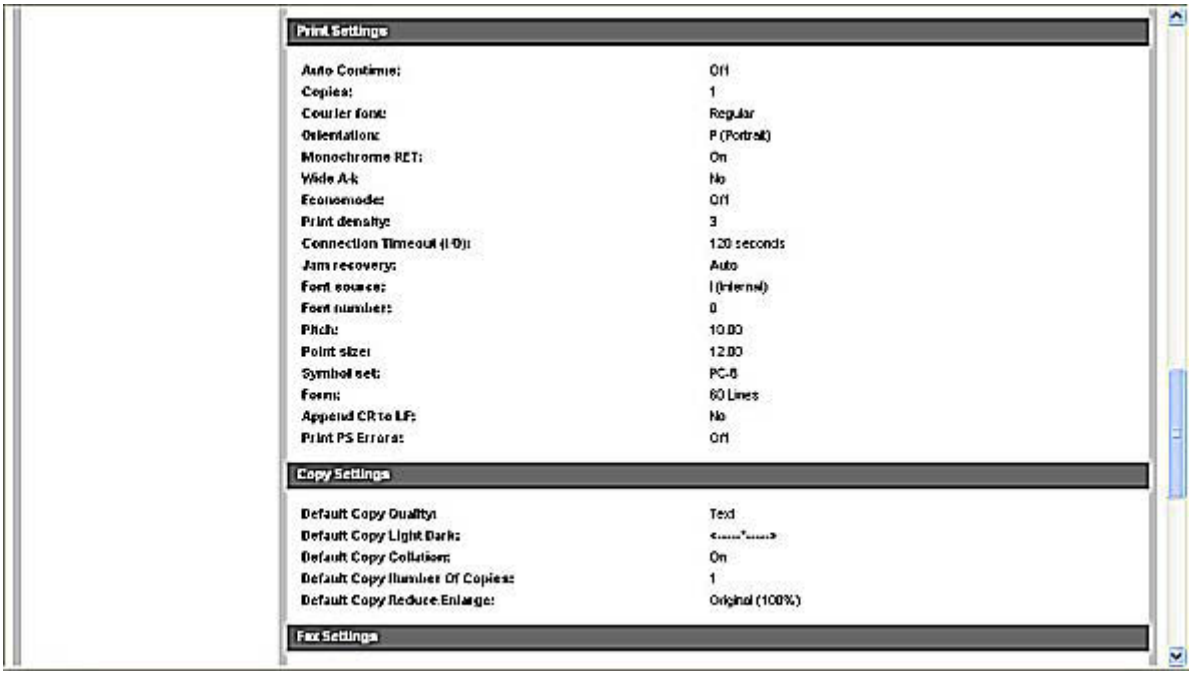


Figure 2-26 Device configuration screen – 4 of 5

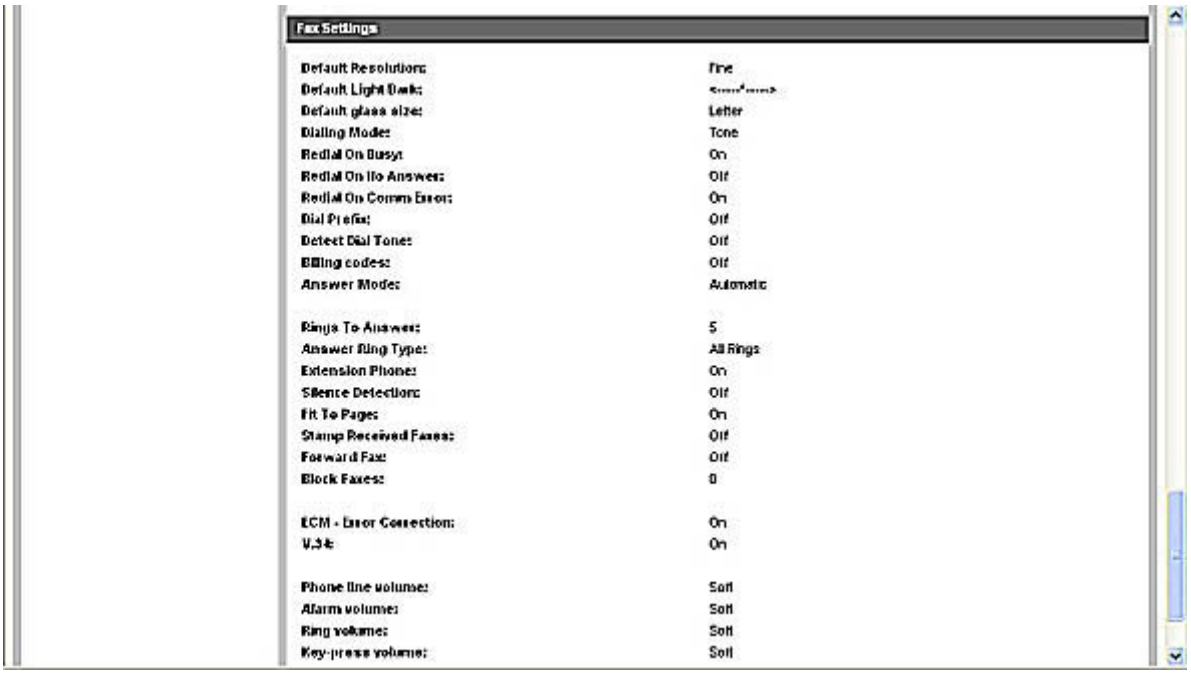


Figure 2-27 Device configuration screen – 5 of 5

The **Device Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the settings that are available for the product and shows other configuration items such as installed DIMMs, personalities, and page counts. The contents of this screen should be consistent with the product configuration page.

Network Configuration

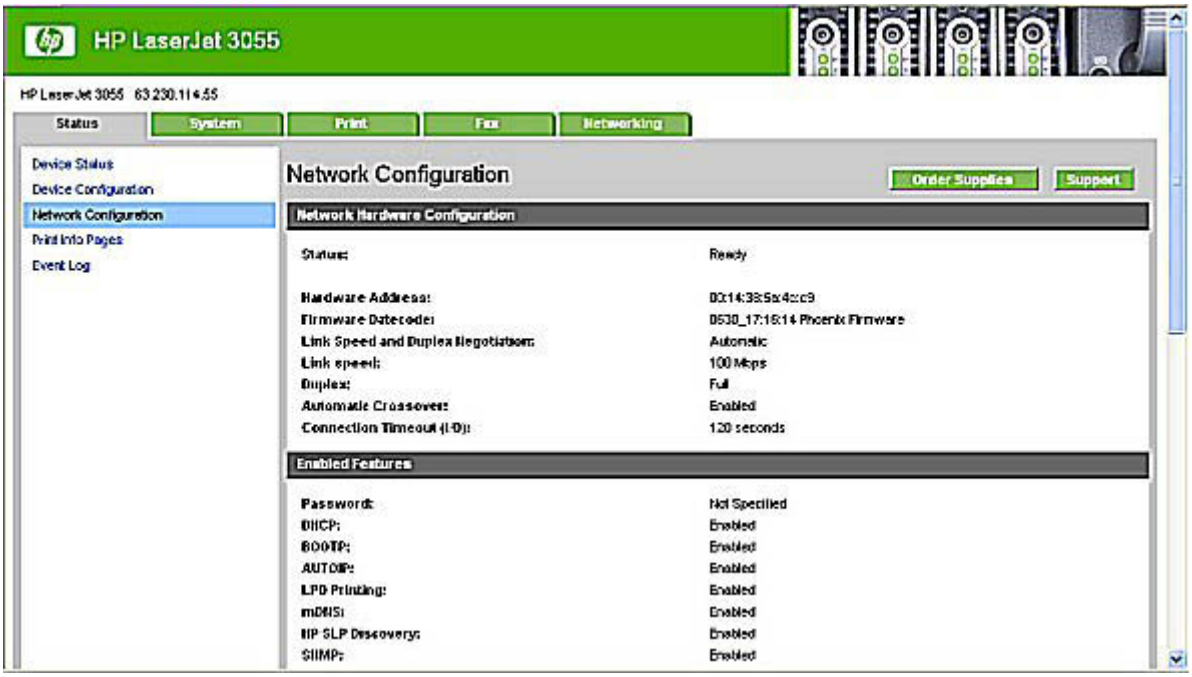


Figure 2-28 **Network configuration** screen – 1 of 2

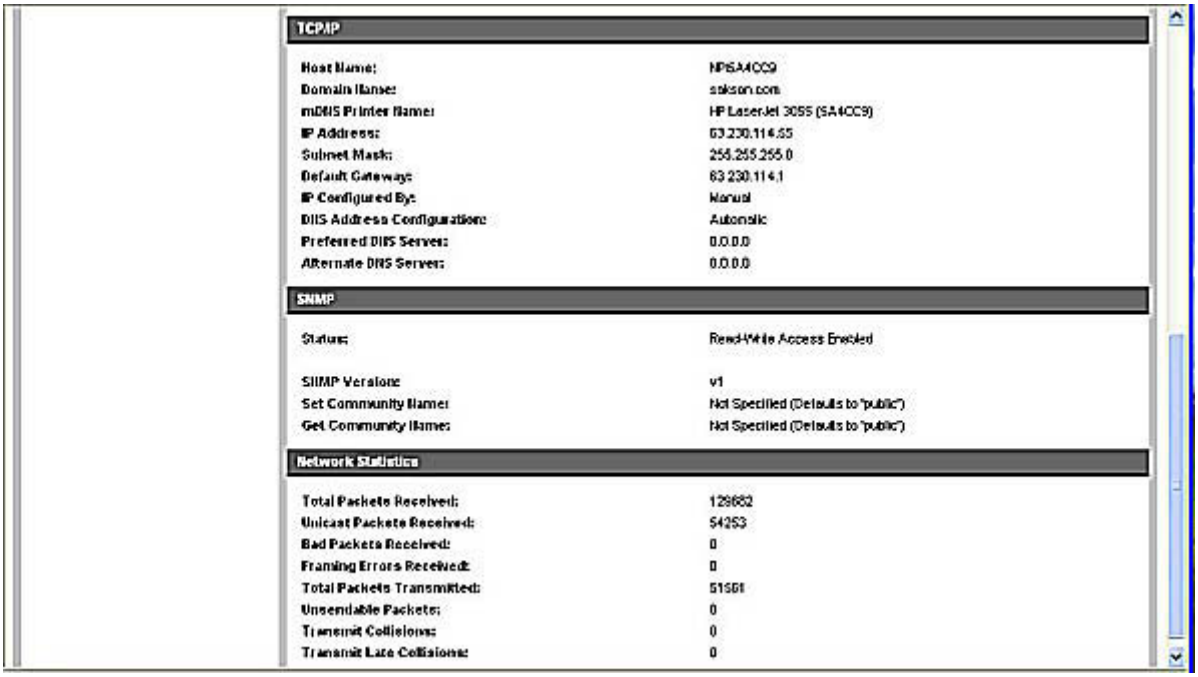


Figure 2-29 **Network configuration** screen – 2 of 2

The **Network Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the network settings that are available for the product. The contents of this screen should be consistent with the product configuration page.

Print Info Pages

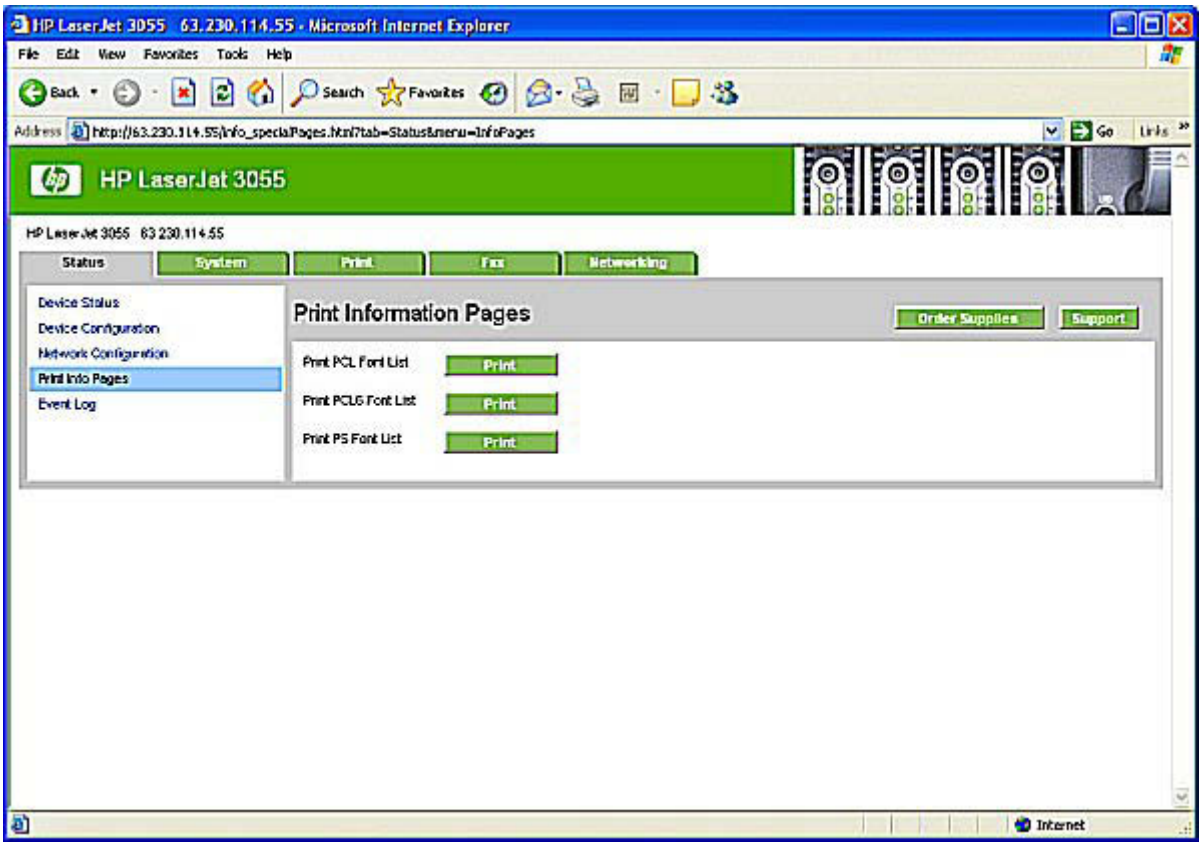


Figure 2-30 Print Info Pages screen

Use the **Print Info Pages** screen to print the PCL, PCL6, and PS Font Lists that the product generatest. Click **Print** next to the name of the font list that you want to print.

Event Log

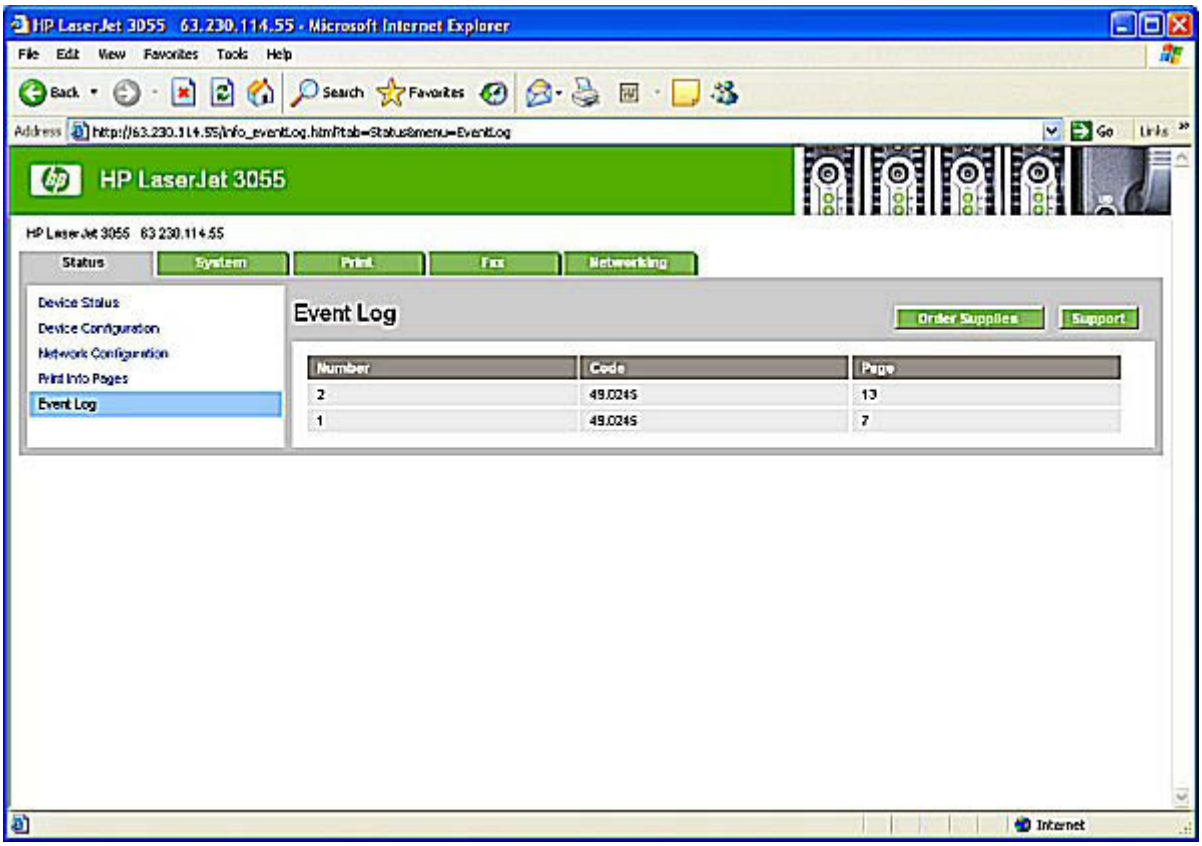


Figure 2-31 Event log screen

Use the **Event Log** screen to monitor events on your product. Up to ten events can appear on this screen. If this screen is empty, no events have occurred on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

System

The **System** tab contains the following pages:

- Device Information
- Paper Handling
- Print Quality
- Paper Types
- System Setup
- Service

Device Information

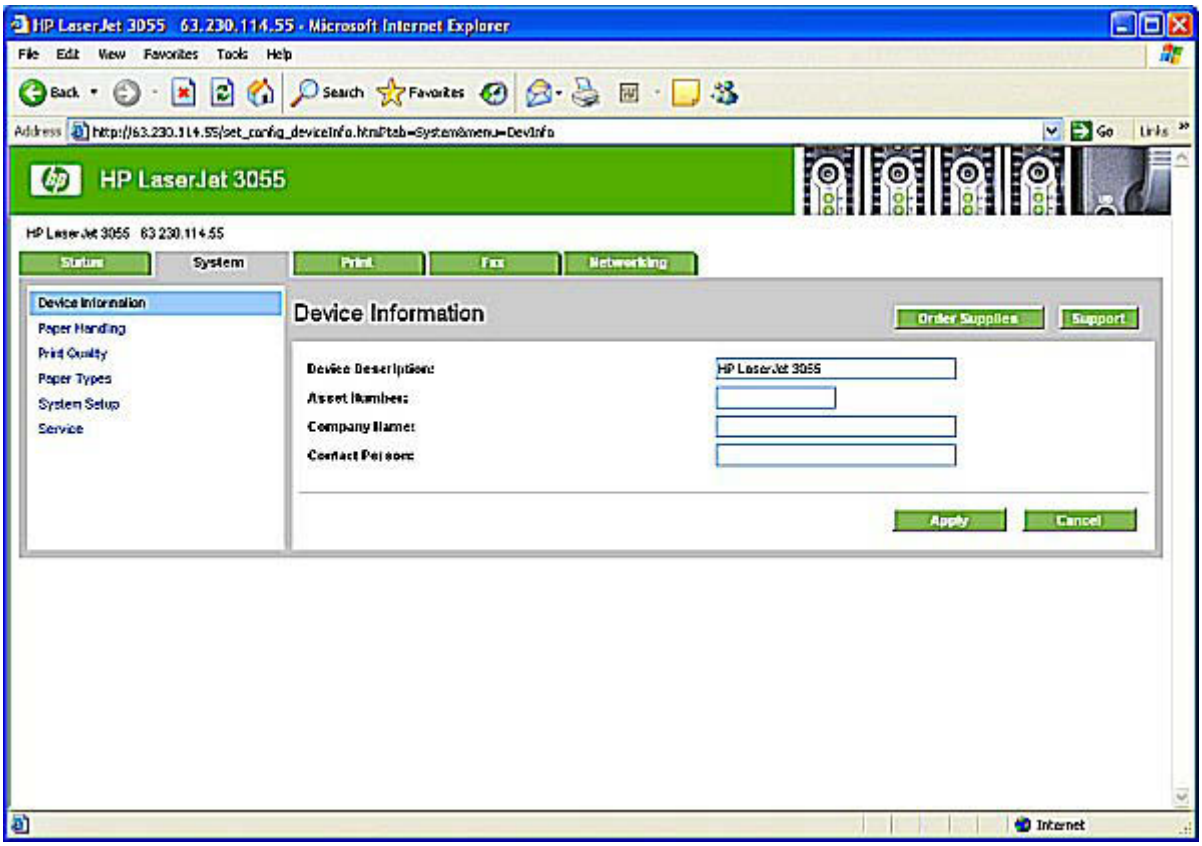


Figure 2-32 Device Information screen

Use the **Device Information** screen to add or change information about your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Paper Handling

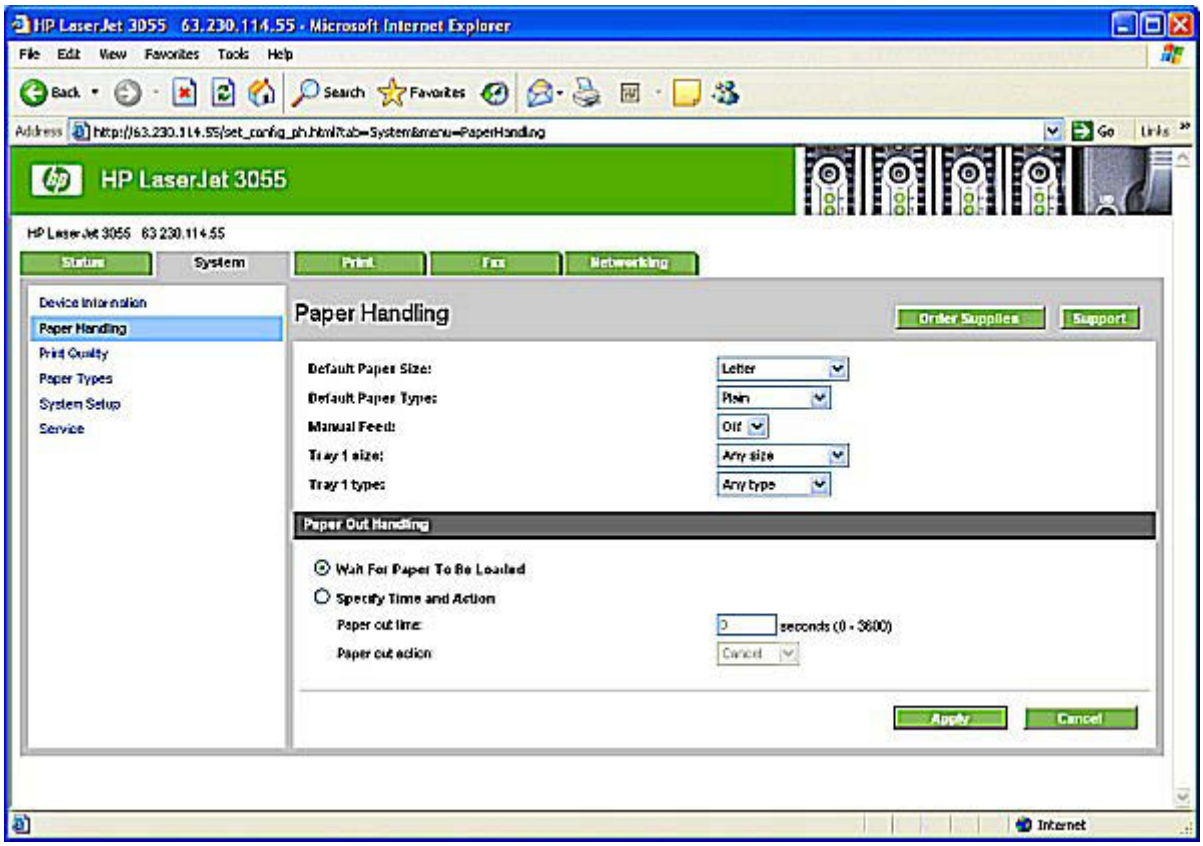


Figure 2-33 Paper Handling screen

Use the **Paper Handling** screen to change the paper-handling defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Print Quality

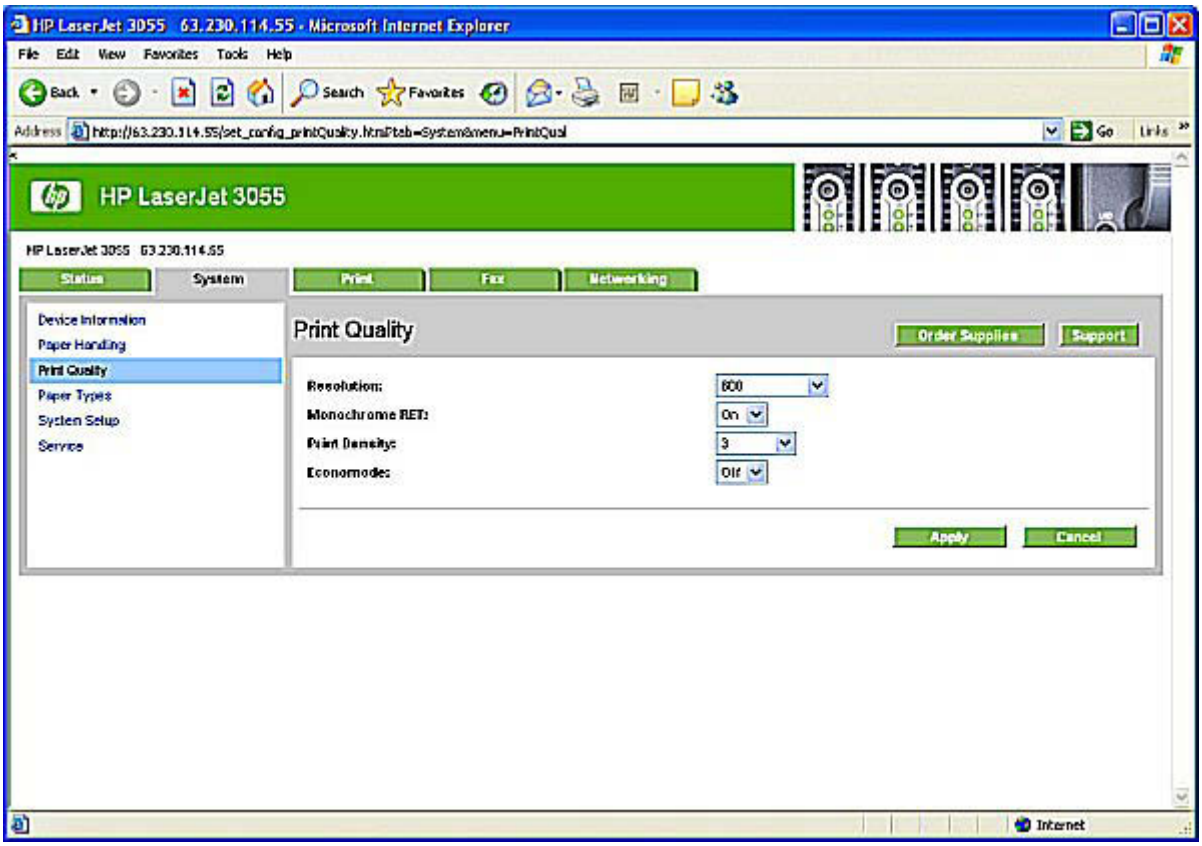


Figure 2-34 Print Quality screen

Use the **Print Quality** screen to change the print quality defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Paper Types

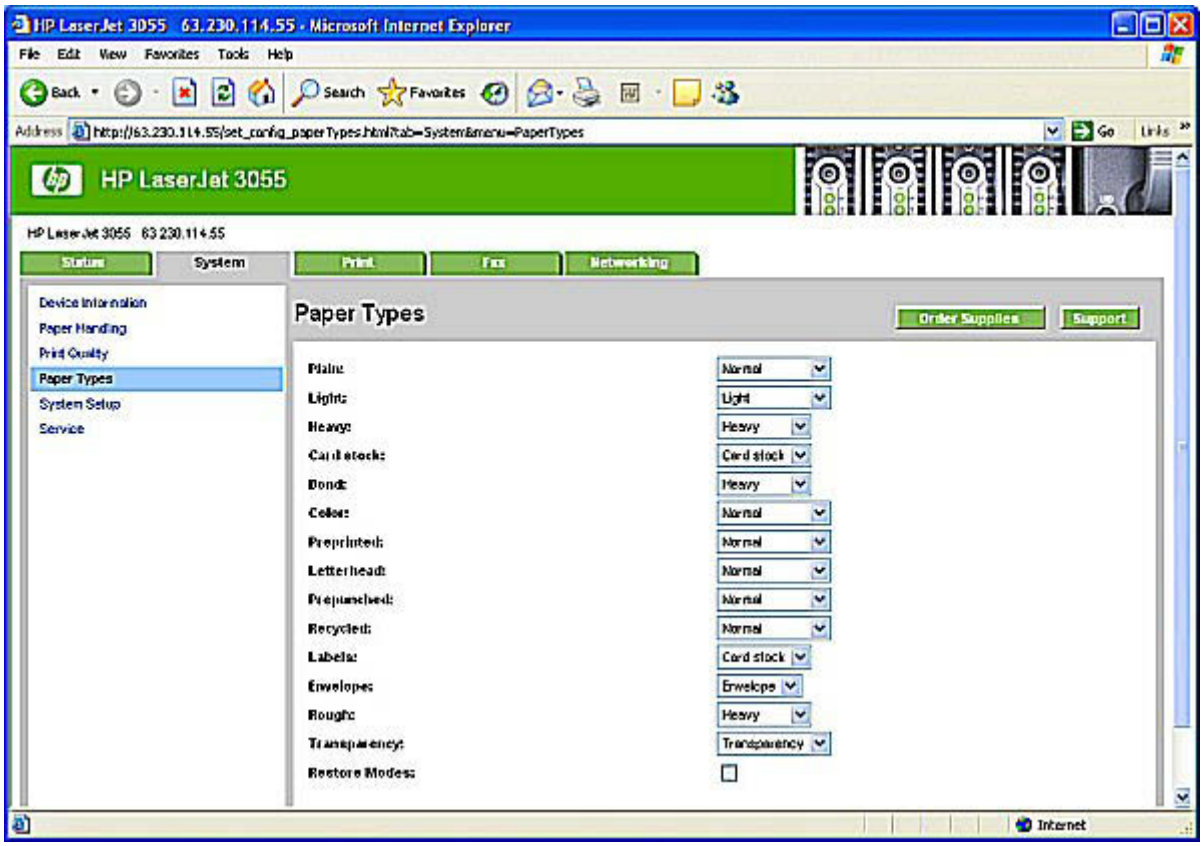


Figure 2-35 Paper Types screen

Use the **Paper Types** screen to configure print modes that correspond to the various media types that the HP LaserJet all-in-one accepts.

System Setup

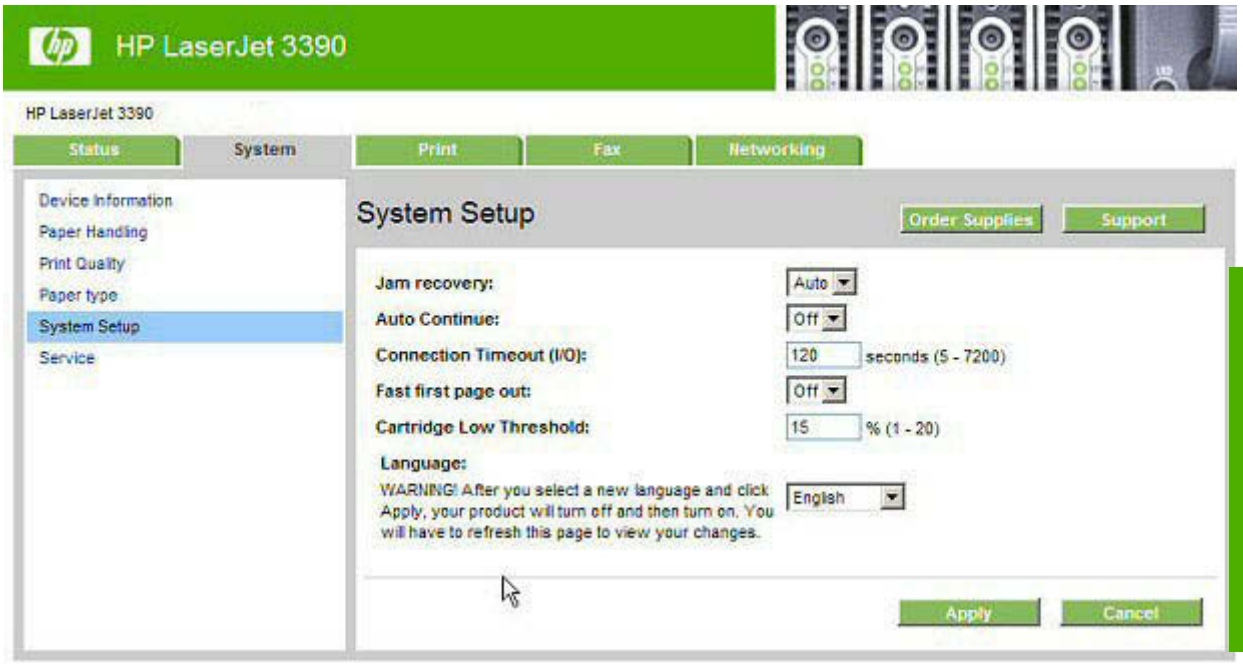


Figure 2-36 System Setup screen

Use the **System Setup** screen to change the system defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Service

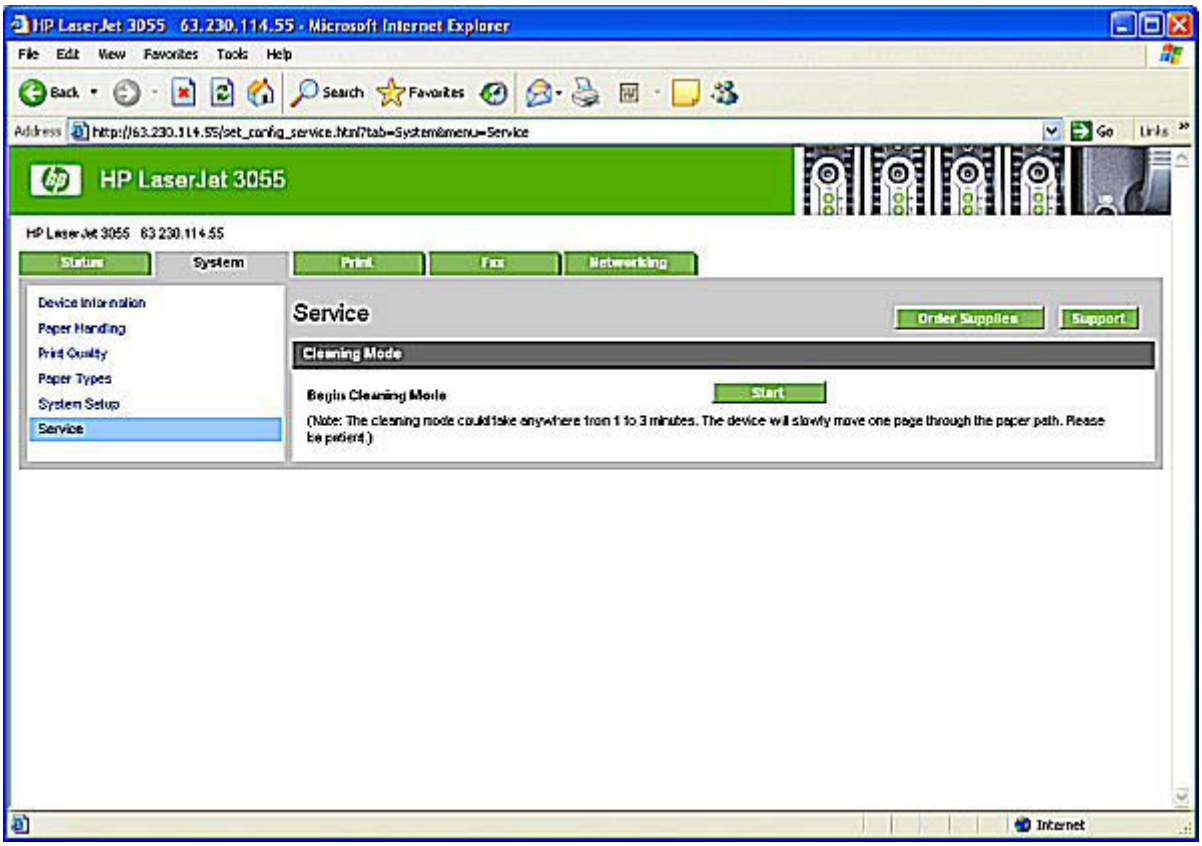


Figure 2-37 Service screen

Use the **Service** screen to start the cleaning mode procedure on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Print

The **Print** tab contains the following pages

- Printing
- PCL5e
- PostScript

Printing

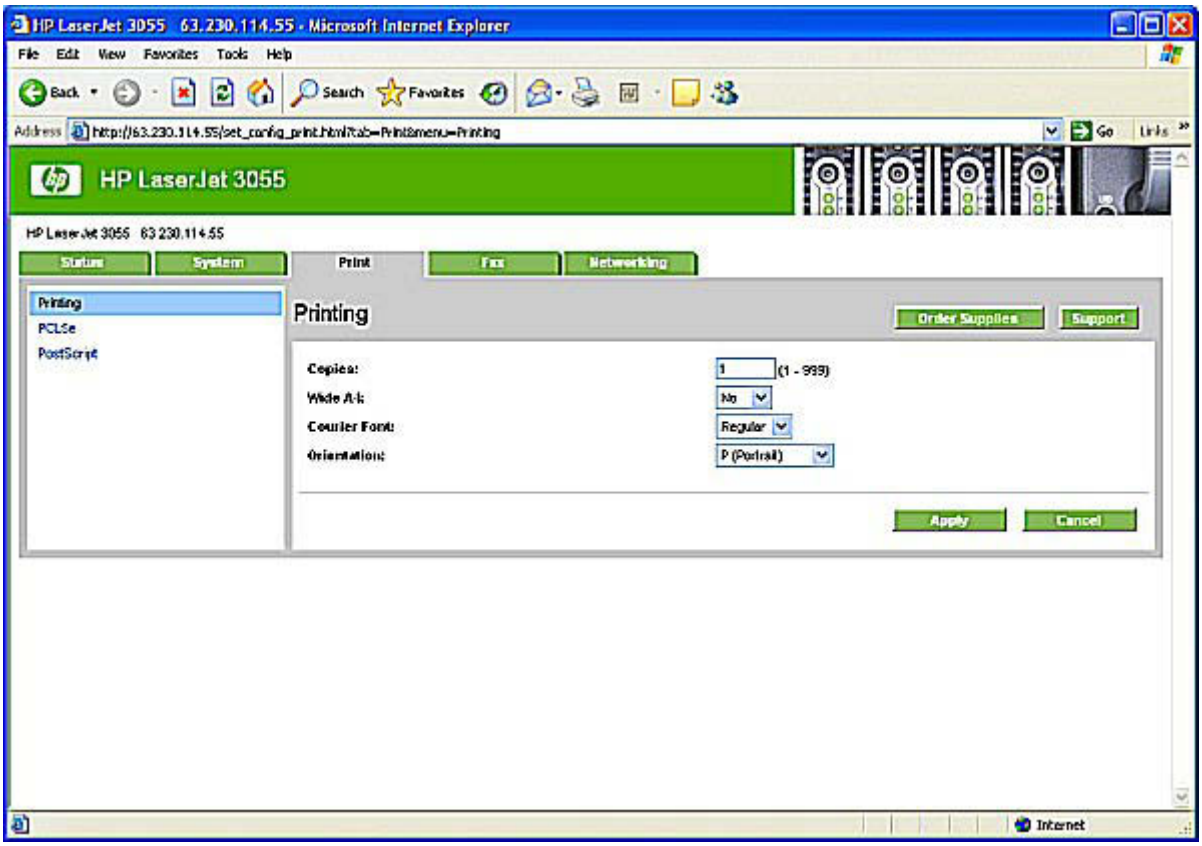


Figure 2-38 Printing screen

Use the **Printing** screen to change the printing defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

PCL5e

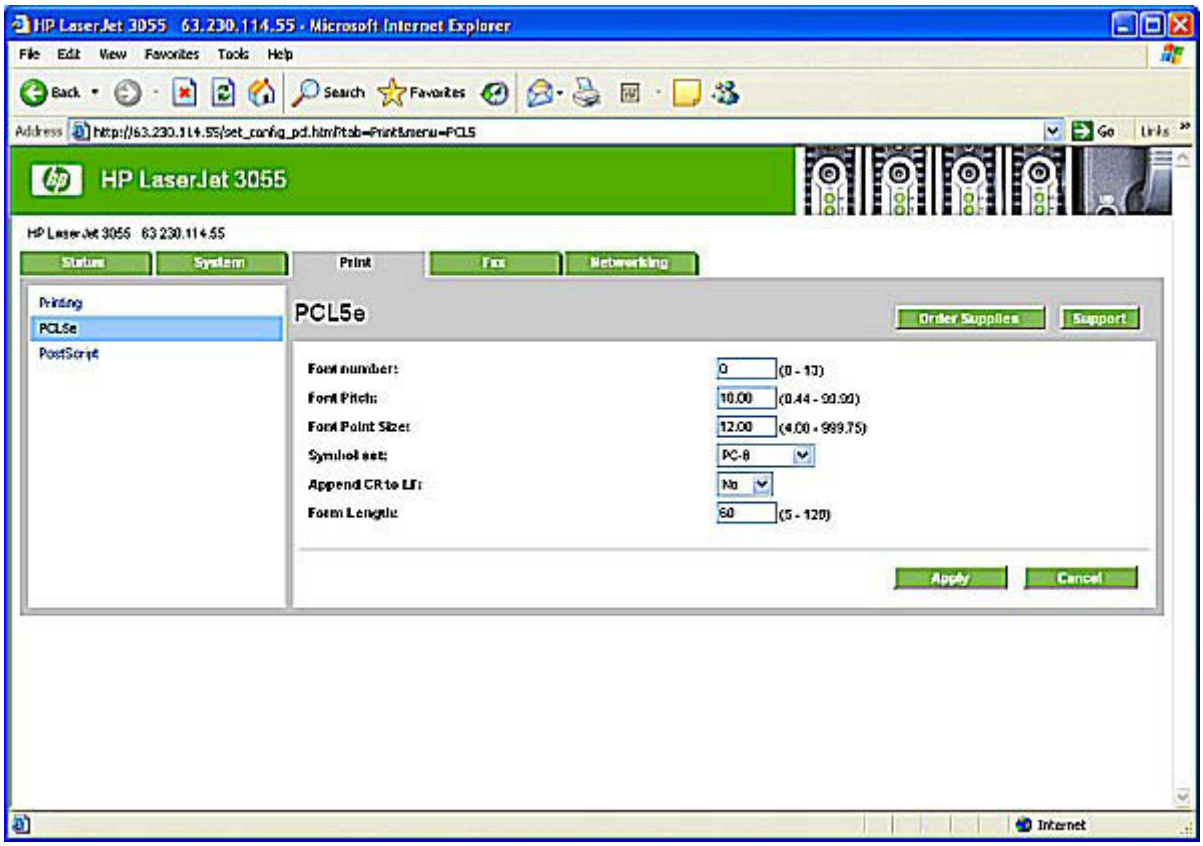


Figure 2-39 PCL5e screen

Use the **PCL5e** screen to change the PCL 5e defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

PostScript

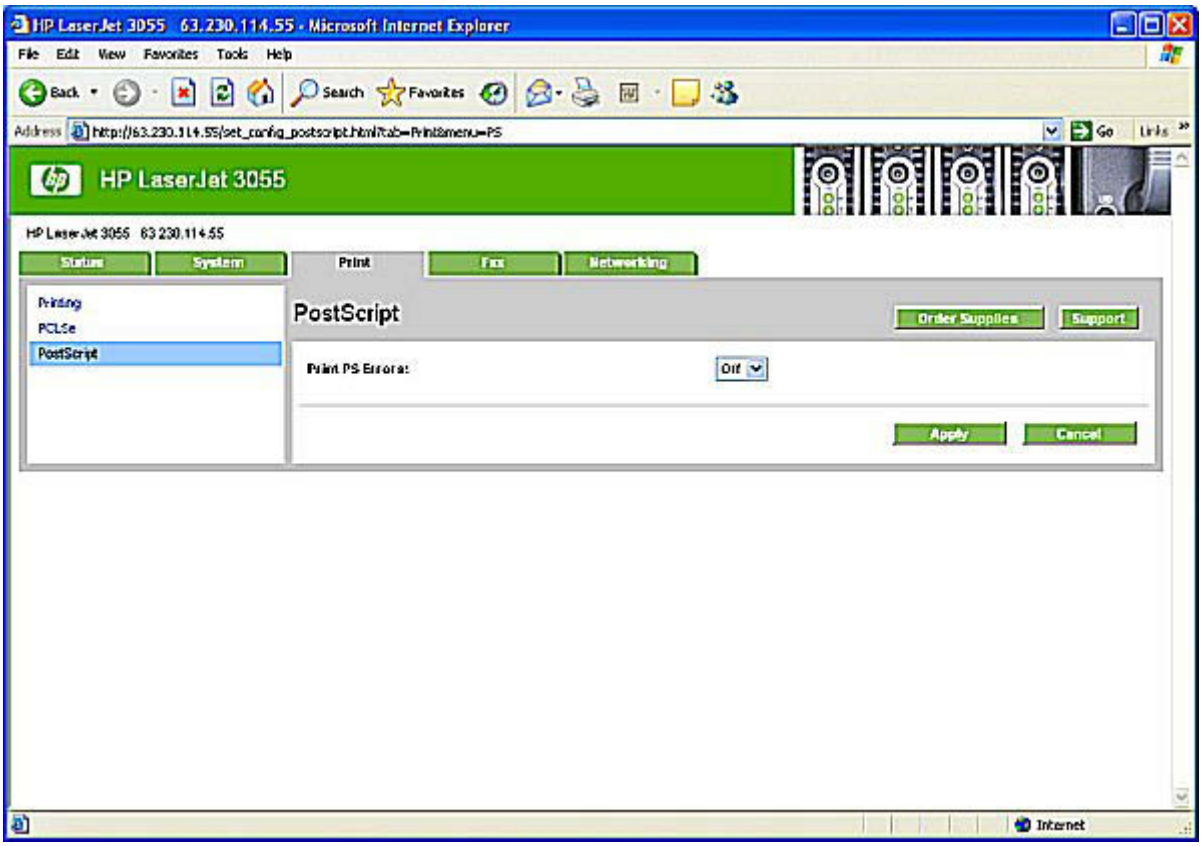


Figure 2-40 PostScript screen

Use the **PostScript** screen to change the PostScript defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Fax

The **Fax** tab contains the following pages:

- Fax Receive
- Fax Phone Book

Fax Receive

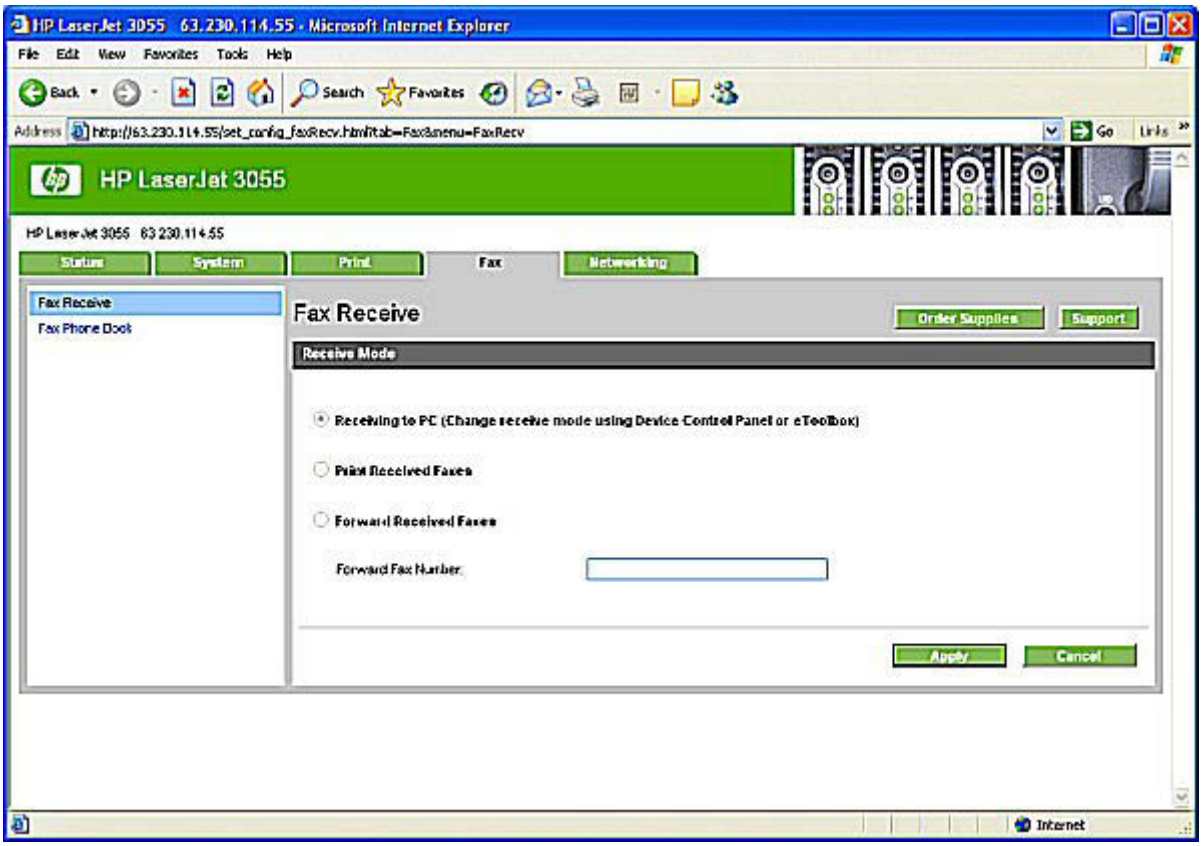


Figure 2-41 **Fax Receive** screen

The **Fax Receive** screen lists options for receiving faxes:

- **Receiving to PC (Change receive mode using Device Control Panel or eToolbox)**. If you select this option, you can also receive a notification (pop-up) message when a fax is received.

  NOTE The **Receiving to PC (Change receive mode using Device Control Panel or eToolbox)** option can only be set for one computer at a time. If a computer has enabled the **Receiving to PC (Change receive mode using Device Control Panel or eToolbox)** option, then that option is *not* available for any other computers.

- **Print Received Faxes**. If you select this option, you can also receive a notification (pop-up) message when a fax is printed.

- **Forward Received Faxes**. If you select this option, you also must type the forwarding fax number in the **Forward Fax Number** box.

Fax Phone Book

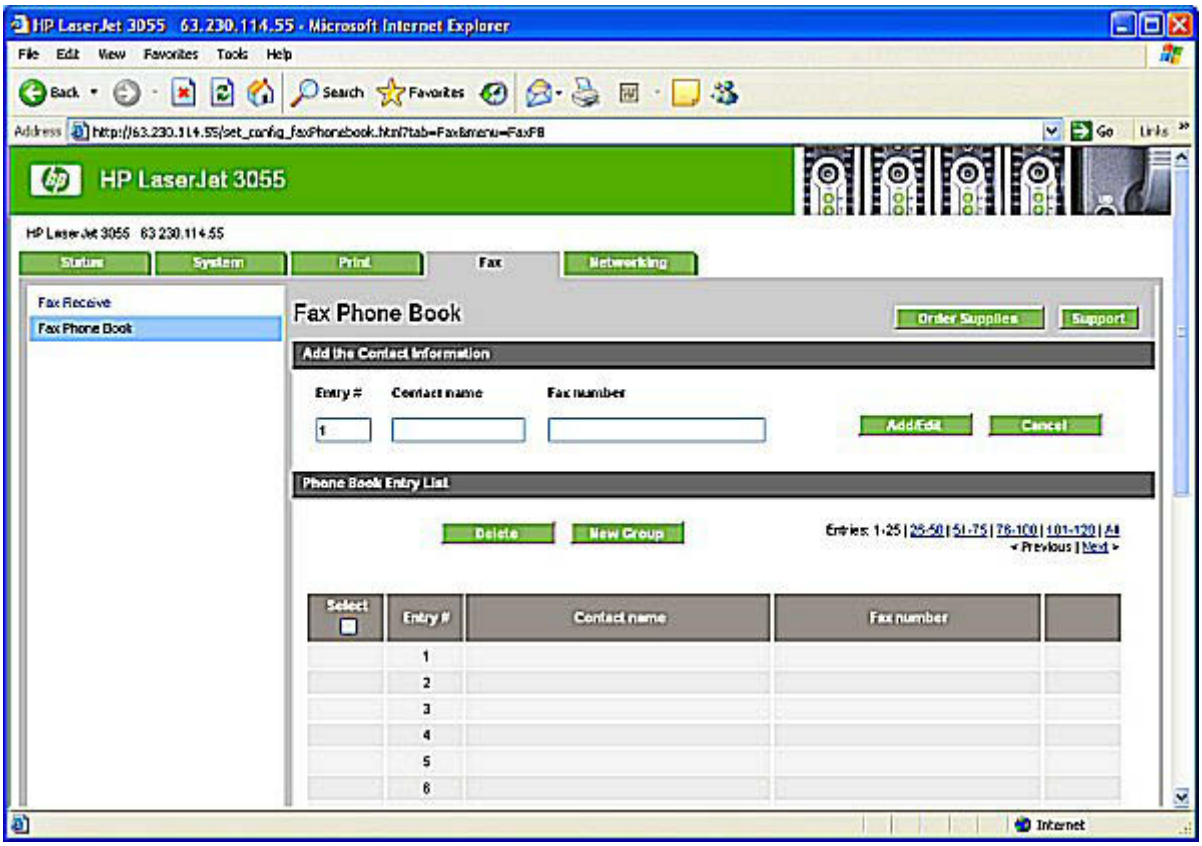


Figure 2-42 Fax Phone Book screen

Use the **Fax Phone Book** screen to add and remove individuals or groups on your speed-dial list, import phone books from a variety of sources, and update and maintain your contact list.

Networking

The **Networking** tab contains the following pages:

- IP Configuration
- Advanced
- Bonjour (Macintosh only)
- SNMP
- Network Configuration
- Password

IP Configuration

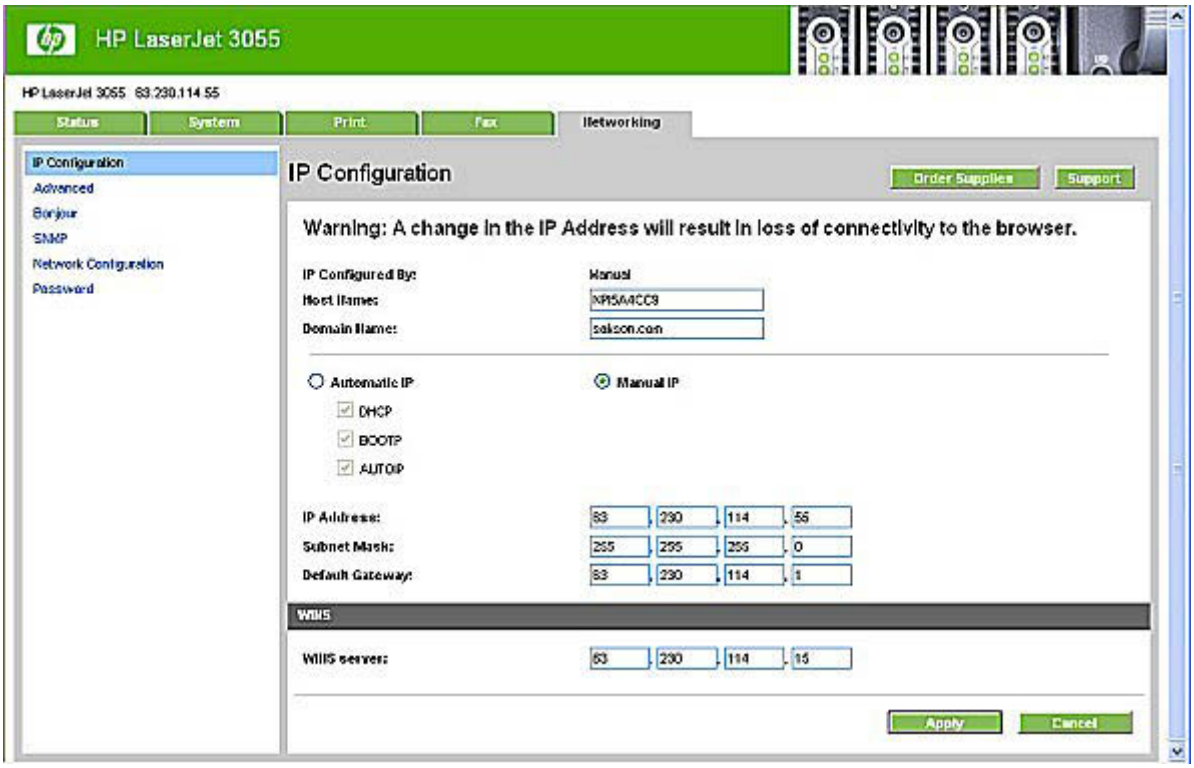


Figure 2-43 IP Configuration screen

The **IP Configuration** screen shows the HP LaserJet all-in-one host name and domain. By default, the HP LaserJet all-in-one uses automatic IP configuration and DNS Server. Use this screen to configure the TCP/IP address and DNS Server manually.

Advanced

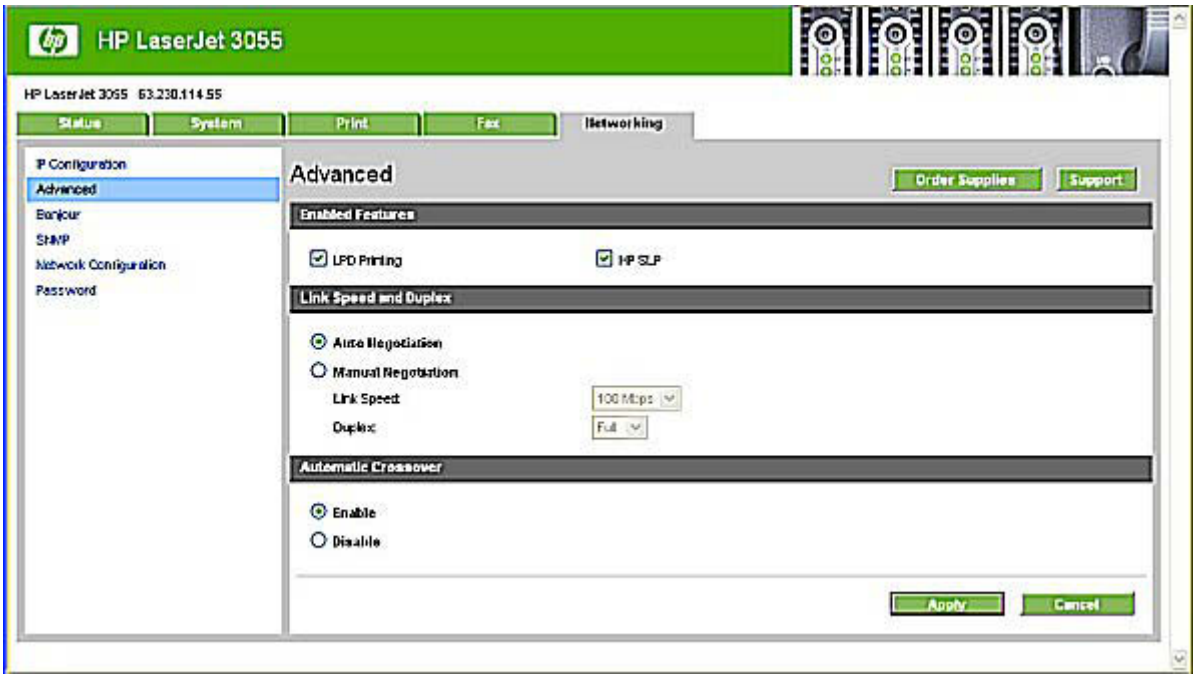


Figure 2-44 Advanced screen

Use the **Advanced** screen to set advanced networking features for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Bonjour (Macintosh only)

Figure 2-45 Bonjour screen

Use the **Bonjour** screen to set Bonjour networking features for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

NOTE Bonjour network settings are used with Macintosh operating systems.

SNMP

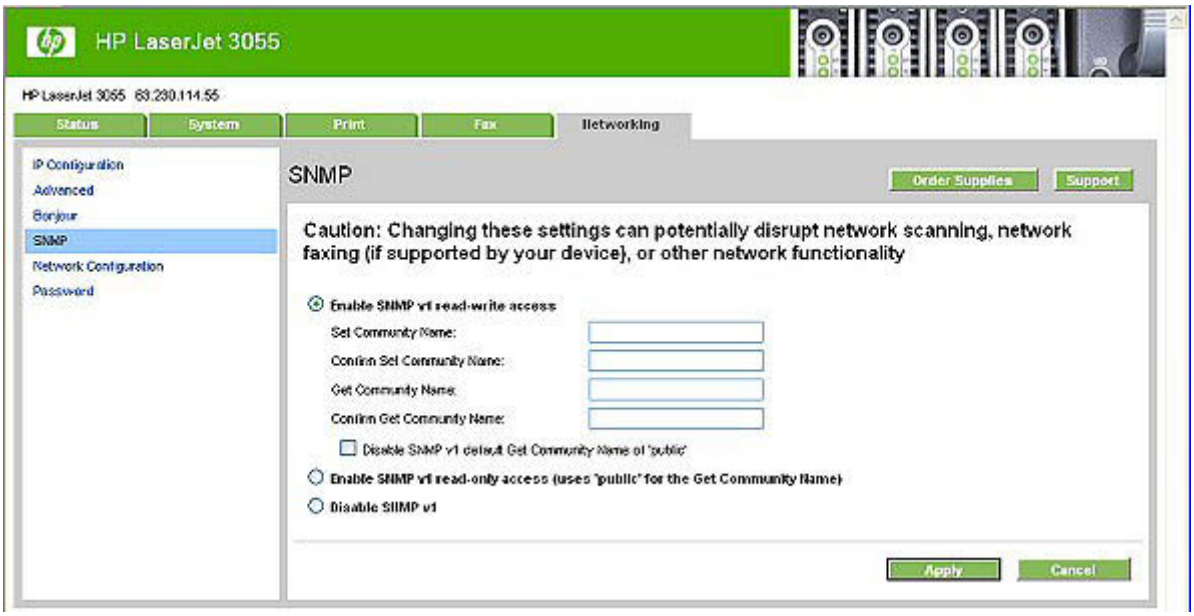


Figure 2-46 **SNMP** screen

Use the **SNMP** screen to set SNMP networking features for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

CAUTION If you set a community name that is anything other than “public”, scanning will not function on your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

Network Configuration

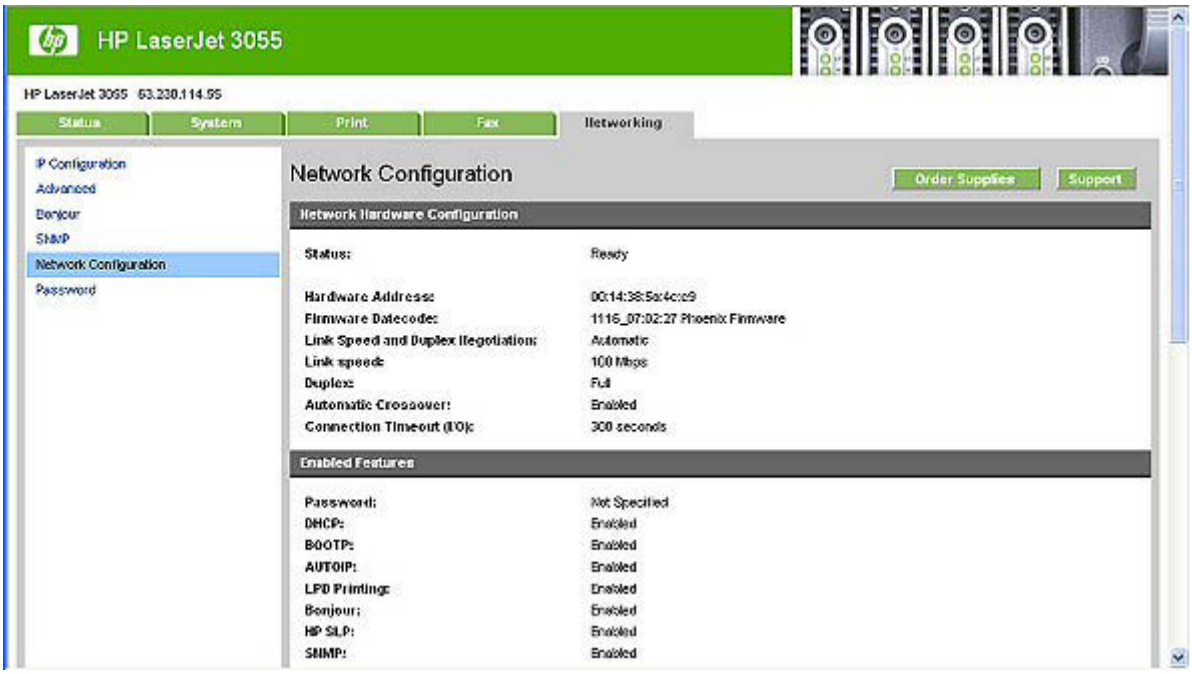


Figure 2-47 **Network Configuration** screen – 1 of 2

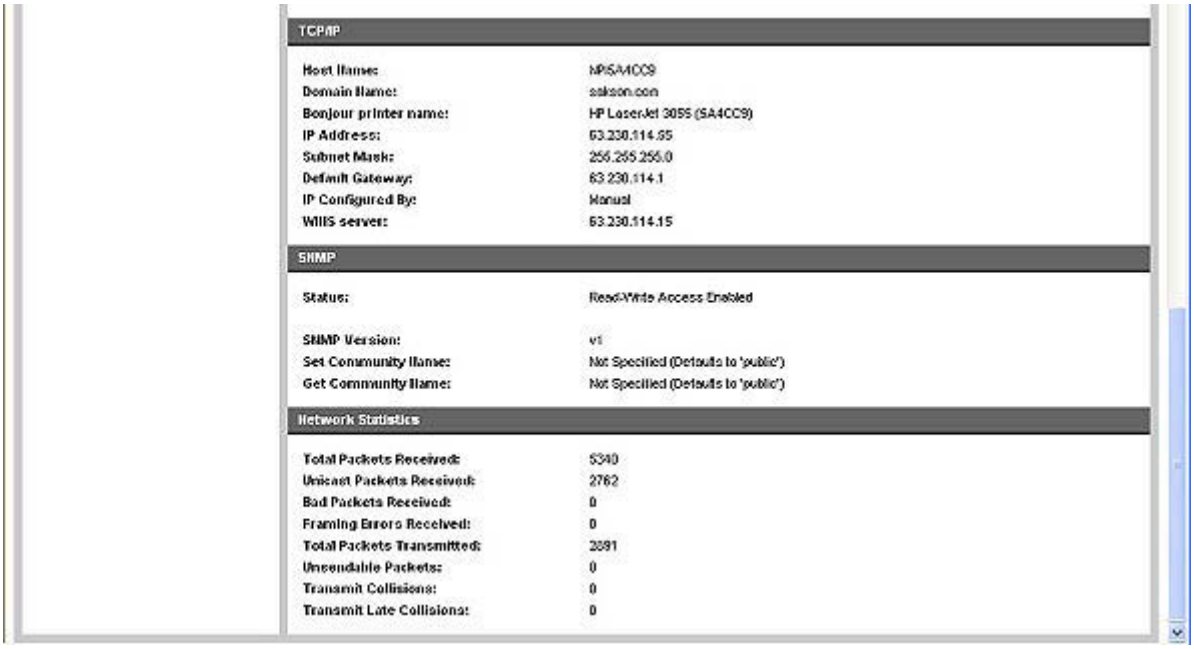


Figure 2-48 **Network Configuration** screen – 2 of 2

The **Network Configuration** screen provides an overview of the network settings that have been enabled for the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Password

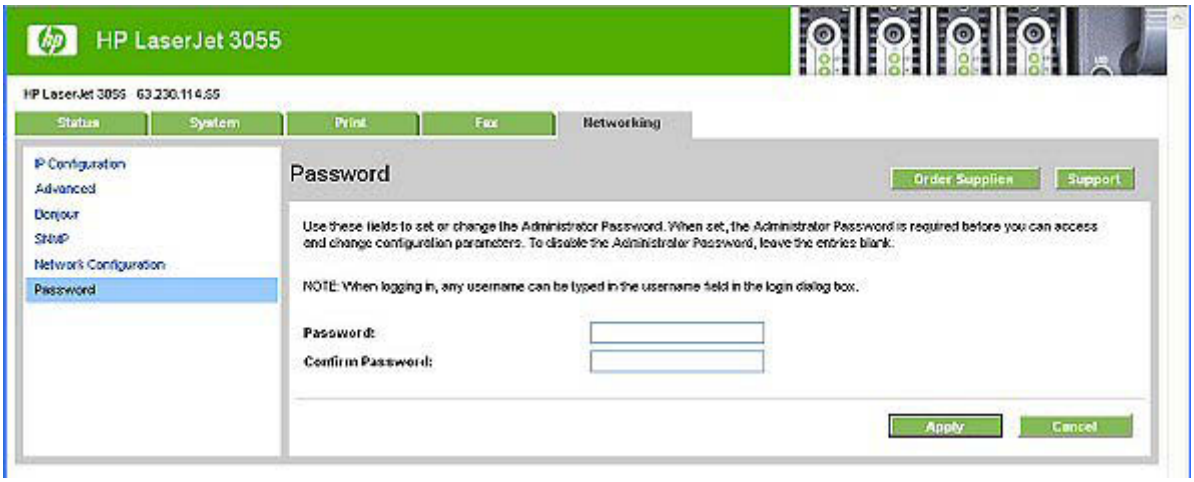


Figure 2-49 **Password** screen

Network administrators can set user passwords to protect network settings. After a password is set, only users who know the password have access to the **Networking** tab. If a password has been set, users are prompted for the password. Only users who type the correct password within three attempts can navigate through the **Networking** screens and change the settings.

NOTE If the password is lost or forgotten, the factory settings for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products must be restored and a new password must be assigned.

Available product configurations

This section contains information about the following topics:

- Software features by connection type
- Supported configurations
- Multitasking capabilities
- Differences between the network-connected and the direct-connected configurations

Software features by connection type

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one can function in one of three installations:

- As a standalone fax and copier that is not connected to a computer (The HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one does not offer fax capability.)
- Directly connected to a computer (If the product is connected to a computer running Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000, or Windows XP, you can share the product with other network users for printing.)
- Connected to a network (The HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one does not come with networking capabilities)

Although the product works in any of these connection configurations, some features are not available in certain configurations. The following table shows which features are available, depending on how you connect the product.

Table 2-8 Software features by connection type

Feature or Function	Connected directly to computer (local user)[1]	Connected directly to computer, but shared with other users[2]	Connected to a network
Printing from the computer to the product	X	X	X
Faxing electronic documents from the computer (PC faxing)	X		X
Combining paper and PC-fax documents in a fax	X		X
Initiating a scan from the HP LaserJet all-in-one	X		X
OCR software for converting scanned images to text documents that can be edited	X		X
Access through the software to the fax options	X		X

Table 2-8 Software features by connection type (continued)

Feature or Function	Connected directly to computer (local user)[1]	Connected directly to computer, but shared with other users[2]	Connected to a network
Access through the software to the product setup options and setup for speed-dial numbers	X		X

[1] Available to the user of the computer that is directly connected to the product.

[2] Available to the other users who are using the network when Microsoft Windows sharing is enabled from the computer that is directly connected to the product. When the computer that is directly connected to the product is on a local area network (LAN), the product can be shared with other computers on the network. Users of the shared computers can only print from their computers to the product.

Supported configurations

This section includes information about the following topics:

- Direct connection
- Network connection options

Direct connection

In the direct (or local) configuration, the HP LaserJet all-in-one is connected directly to the host computer with a USB cable. In this configuration, the product is not shared. A single user has complete physical control over the product. Most users are familiar with using peripherals that are directly connected to their computers. In this configuration, you have access to all of the product features.

Network connection options

The following networking options are available for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products:

- Local connection that uses Microsoft peer-to-peer networking (Windows only)
- Networking requirements

Local connection that uses Microsoft peer-to-peer networking (Windows only)

Use Microsoft Windows to share a local printer over the network. The operating system handles all of the networking issues. The product prints in this configuration, but only the local computer can use the faxing and scanning functionality. Network faxing and scanning are *not* supported in this configuration.

Because Microsoft peer-to-peer networking is unidirectional, network users do not receive printer-status messages when they print to the product.

NOTE HP does not support vending drivers across operating systems that have different print-driver architectures, such as HP Traditional drivers and HP Unidrivers. To use a mix of operating systems, you must install an alternate print driver and download the driver for the specific operating system.

Networking requirements

The following features are required in order for your HP LaserJet all-in-one to work on a network connection:

- An installed network that uses the TCP/IP network protocol
- A cable for your type of network connections (not included)

Multitasking capabilities

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products are designed to carry out multiple tasks simultaneously. You can initiate tasks when they are needed, without waiting.

The HP LaserJet all-in-one performs multiple tasks such as printing, scanning, copying, faxing, and sending faxes directly from a computer (PC faxing). Depending on which functions are in use, the HP LaserJet all-in-one can perform many functions at the same time. This high level of multitasking is made possible by the two separate paper paths in the HP LaserJet all-in-one, a print paper path and a scan paper path. Additionally, these products feature at least 64 MB of memory that can efficiently manage multiple tasks, and a scan-ahead feature that quickly clears the scan paper path for subsequent jobs.

The following table shows which tasks the HP LaserJet all-in-one can perform while another function is in use.

NOTE The HP LaserJet all-in-one can perform multiple tasks when it is directly connected to a computer or when it is connected to a network. The fax and scan functions are not available when using a Windows sharing (peer-to-peer) connection.

The HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one does not support faxing.

Table 2-9 Multitasking capabilities

If the product is:	**You can:**						
	Send a print job	Receive a paper fax	Send a paper fax	Receive a PC fax	Send a PC fax	Scan to the PC	Copy
Printing a file	Yes – Prints when the first print job ends	Yes – Prints when the first print job ends	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Printing a paper fax	Yes – Prints when fax printing ends	Yes – Prints when the first job ends	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Receiving a paper fax	Yes – Prints when fax printing ends	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	Yes	Yes
Sending a paper fax	Yes	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	Yes – if the scanner is not in use	Yes – if the scanner is not in use
Copying	Yes – Prints when copying ends	Yes – Prints when copying ends	Yes – if the scanner is not in use	Yes	Yes	Yes – if the scanner is not in use	Yes – Second copy begins when the first copy job ends

Table 2-9 Multitasking capabilities (continued)

Sending a PC fax	Yes	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	Yes – if the scanner is not in use.	Yes
Receiving a PC fax	Yes	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	No – Telephone line is in use	Yes – Sends when the first fax job ends	Yes	Yes
Scanning	No	Yes	No – The scanner is in use	Yes	Yes	No – The scanner is in use	No – The scanner is in use

Differences between the network-connected and the direct-connected configurations

On a network, you can perform nearly all of the product functions just as if your HP LaserJet all-in-one were directly connected to your computer. The following are a few exceptions:

- One-touch scanning with the **Start Scan** button on the control panel of the HP LaserJet all-in-one product is not supported on networked HP LaserJet all-in-one products. The **Start Scan** button on the control panel of the HP LaserJet all-in-one starts the HP LaserJet Scan software on the computer in USB connections.
- For network connections, initiating a scan from the HP LaserJet all-in-one is turned off by default. You must turn on this function in the HP LaserJet Scan software for networked computers.
- Entries that appear on the HP LaserJet all-in-one include a host-name-abbreviation prefix for networked computers in order to differentiate among computers on the network.

Supported third-party software

This section describes third-party software programs that your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product software supports.

Text-recognition software

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software has an integrated text-recognition feature. This feature is also known as optical character recognition, or OCR. Text-recognition is also available through the third-party software program Readiris, which is included on a separate CD that comes with the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

About text-recognition reliability

Text-recognition software turns an image into computer-editable text by analyzing the image and defining the characters. The accuracy obtained through text-recognition software depends on the quality, size, and structure of the original document, and on the quality of the scan itself. To obtain the best possible results when using text-recognition software, use the following guidelines:

- Scan directly from the text-recognition software.
- Process only pages that contain 9-point text or larger.
- Limit pages that contain underlining, forms, graphics, rotated text, photographs, and handwriting.
- Scan images squarely.
- Make sure that the pages are free of extraneous marks.
- Maximize the scanning resolution. Use a minimum of 300 dpi.
- Process only pages that have crisp, clear text. Letters that have gaps, that "bleed" along their edges, or that touch other letters do not work well. Text that is aligned closely to nontext items, such as graphics, might also degrade text-recognition results.
- Fine-tune the amount of black and white on scanned images. See the user guide for information.
- Avoid scanning from thin media that has information printed on the back side. The information on the back can bleed through.

Even if you follow these recommendations, you might still get less-than-perfect results. This is because text-recognition technology is evolving and is still less than perfect.

Other PC fax programs

The PC fax program that came with the HP LaserJet all-in-one is the only PC fax program that works with the product.

If you want to continue to use your PC fax program, you must use it with the modem that you already have connected to your computer, rather than with the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Using two PC fax programs can cause both programs to work incorrectly.

3 HP traditional print drivers for Windows

This chapter includes information about the following topics:

- HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver and HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver features (for Windows 98 SE and Windows Me)
- Windows PS Emulation Driver features (for Windows 98 SE and Windows Me)

HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver and HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver features (for Windows 98 SE and Windows Me)

When you install the print drivers by using the printing-system installer in Windows 98 or Windows Me, the HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver is installed by default. The HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver can only be installed by using the Add Printer installation method.

This section describes the options available on each tab of the HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver interface. The following information is included:

- Access to print drivers
- Help system
- Finishing tab features
- Effects tab features
- Paper tab features
- Basics tab features
- Configure tab features

Access to print drivers

Depending on the operating system on which you are installing the print drivers, you can gain access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces in several ways.

Access to print drivers from software programs

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

Access to print drivers in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me

In Windows 98 SE and Windows Me, you have access to one set of driver tabs. To gain access to these tabs, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then select **Printers**. Right-click the product name, and then click **Properties** to gain access to all print-driver tabs. The settings that you make on these driver tabs control print-job output. The following print-driver tabs are available in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me:

- **General**
- **Details**
- **Color Management**
- **Finishing**
- **Effects**
- **Paper**
- **Basics**
- **Configure**

Help system

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver includes a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options. The following Help options are available:

- What's this? Help
- Context-sensitive Help
- Constraint messages
- Bubble Help

What's this? Help

"What's this?" Help is supported in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me. You can gain access to "What's this?" Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control and click **What's this?**, and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the **?** button at the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the F1 key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Context-sensitive Help

Press the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box, and context-sensitive Help appears.

Constraint messages

Constraint messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific actions you take. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the capabilities of the product or the current settings of other controls. For example, if you click **Print on Both Sides** and then change the paper type to **Transparency**, a message appears asking you to resolve this conflict.

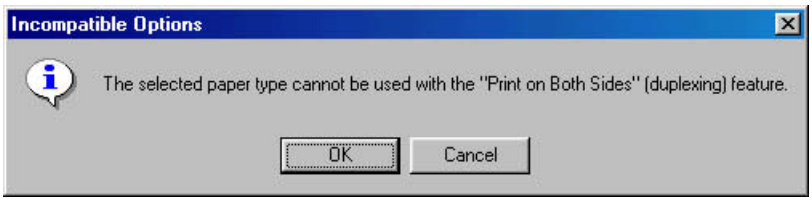


Figure 3-1 A typical constraint message

Whenever a constraint message appears with **OK** and **Cancel** buttons, the interpretation of the buttons is as follows:

- Clicking **OK** accepts the change that was just made, and the driver then resets the conflicting control to a setting that is compatible with the new value.
- Clicking **Cancel** rejects the change that was just made, returning the control to its previous value.

Bubble Help

Bubble Help features a graphical icon resembling a cartoon speech bubble with a small **i** in it, representing the international symbol for information. The following illustration shows Bubble Help icons on a driver tab.

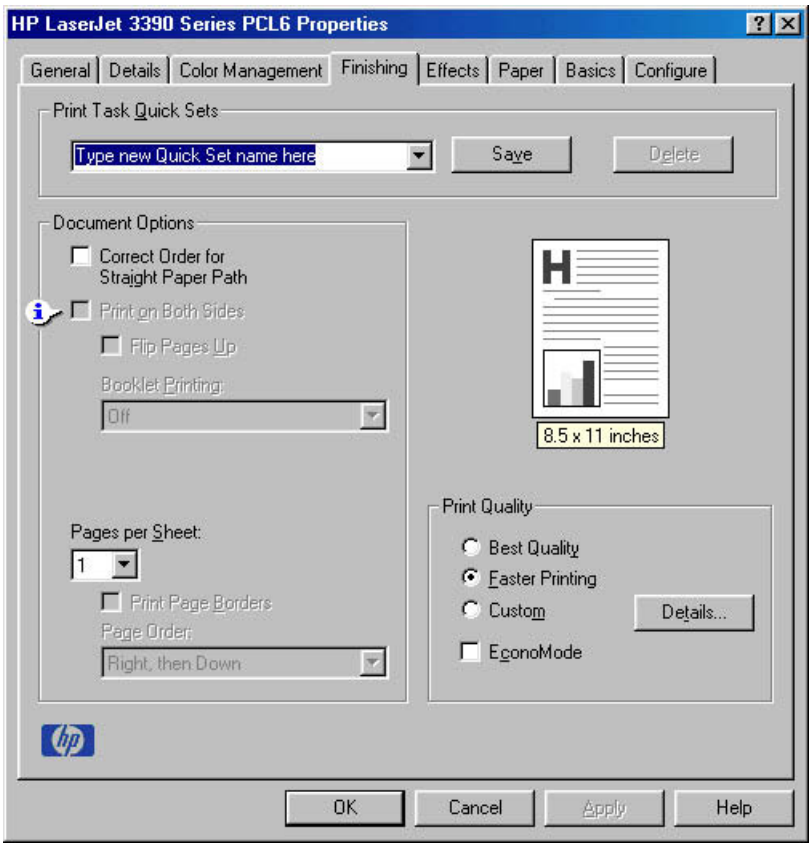


Figure 3-2 A property page with a Bubble Help icon

The bubble typically appears next to a disabled control, although it can also accompany an enabled control if there is an important note concerning its use. Moving the pointer over the bubble changes the arrow to a gloved hand, which indicates that the area underneath the pointer is selectable. When the bubble is selected by using either the mouse or the keyboard, a message box appears with a brief explanation about why the control is disabled and what can be done to enable it. If the control is not disabled, the message is a tip or a precaution to be aware of when using that particular feature.

The following table lists Bubble Help messages and the conditions that cause them to appear.

Table 3-1 Bubble Help messages

Condition/Cause	Effect	Message
Finishing tab: The **Pages per Sheet** setting is greater than **1**	**Finishing** tab: **Booklet Printing** is not available if **Print on Both Sides** check box is selected.	To use this feature, set **Pages per Sheet** to **1** (see **Finishing** tab).
Finishing tab: The **Pages per Sheet** setting is greater than **1**	**Effects** tab: **Print Document On** is not available.	To use this feature, set **Pages per Sheet** to **1** (see **Finishing** tab).

Table 3-1 Bubble Help messages (continued)

Condition/Cause	Effect	Message
Finishing tab: The **Pages per Sheet** setting is greater than **1**	**Effects** tab: **% of Normal Size** is not available.	To use this feature, set **Pages per Sheet** to **1** (see **Finishing** tab).
Finishing tab: The **Booklet Printing** setting is **On**.	**Finishing** tab: **Pages per Sheet** is not available.	To use this feature, set the **Booklet Printing** option to **Off** (see **Finishing** tab).
Finishing tab: The **Booklet Printing** setting is **On**.	**Effects** tab: **Print Document On** is not available.	To use this feature, set the **Booklet Printing** option to **Off** (see **Finishing** tab).
Finishing tab: The **Booklet Printing** setting is **On**.	**Effects** tab: **% of Normal Size** is not available.	To use this feature, set the **Booklet Printing** option to **Off** (see **Finishing** tab).
Effects tab: The **Print Document On** check box is selected.	**Effects** tab: **% of Normal Size** is not available.	To use this feature, turn off the **Print Document On** option (see **Effects** tab).
Effects tab: The **Print Document On** check box is selected.	**Finishing** tab: **Pages per Sheet** is not available.	To use this feature, turn off the **Print Document On** option (see **Effects** tab).
Effects tab: The **% of Normal Size** setting is any value except **100%**.	**Effects** tab: **Print Document On** is not available.	To use this feature, set **% of Normal Size** to **100** (see **Effects** tab).
Effects tab: The **% of Normal Size** setting is any value except **100%**.	**Finishing** tab: **Booklet Printing** is not available.	To use this feature, set **% of Normal Size** to **100** (see **Effects** tab).
Effects tab: The **% of Normal Size** setting is any value except **100%**.	**Finishing** tab: **Pages per Sheet** is not available.	To use this feature, set **% of Normal Size** to **100** (see **Effects** tab).
Paper tab: The **Type Is** setting is **Transparency**, **Labels**, or **Envelope**.	**Finishing** tab: The Bubble Help points to the **Print on Both Sides** check box.	This feature is not available with the currently selected paper type (see **Paper** tab).
Paper tab: The **Size Is** setting is anything except **Letter**, **Legal**, or **A4**.	**Finishing** tab: The Bubble Help points to the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu, which is not available.	To use this feature, set the paper size to **Letter**, **Legal**, or **A4** (see **Paper** tab).
Paper tab: The **Source Is** tray selected for **Other Pages** is the same as the one selected for **First Page**.	**Paper** tab: The Bubble Help points to the **Type Is** drop-down menu.	In order to use this feature, select a source tray different from the tray that you selected for the first page.

Table 3-1 Bubble Help messages (continued)

Condition/Cause	Effect	Message
Effects tab: **Watermarks** exceed 30.	**Effects** tab: The Bubble Help points to **Watermarks**.	You cannot add a new watermark because the list is full. You can edit existing watermarks, or you can delete one or more to make more room.
Finishing tab: The **Booklet Printing** option is not set to **Off**.	**Paper** tab, **Back Cover** option: The Bubble Help points to the **No back Cover** option button.	To use this feature, set the **Booklet Printing** option to **Off** (see **Finishing** tab).

Finishing tab features

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the media output. The following illustration shows the **Finishing** tab.

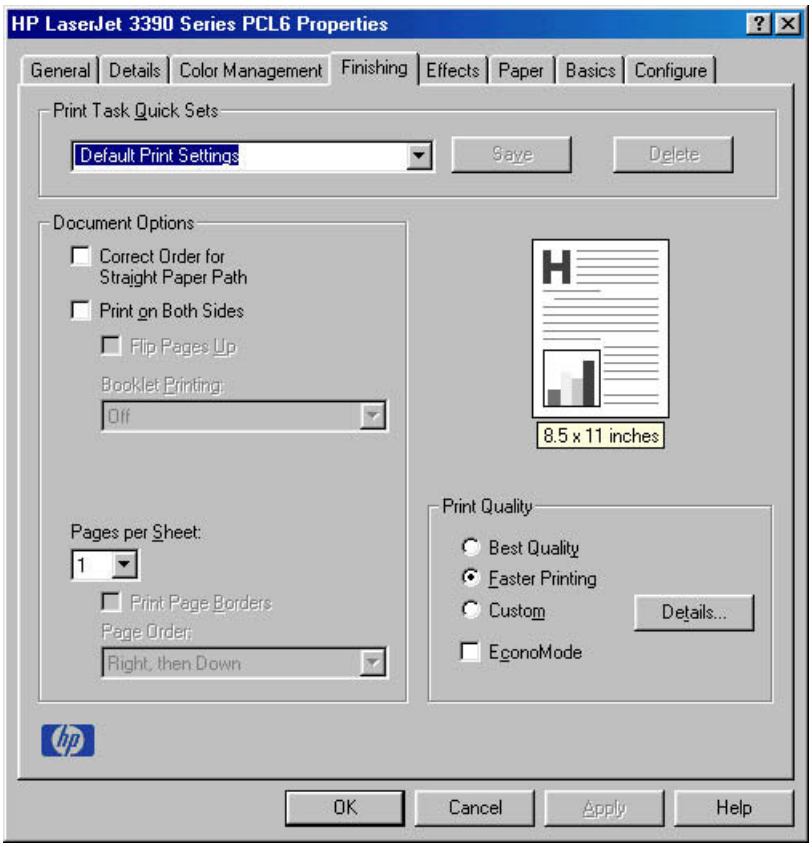


Figure 3-3 **Finishing** tab - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver

The **Finishing** tab contains the following options:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Document Options
- Document preview image
- Print Quality

Print Task Quick Sets

This group box appears on each of the print driver tabs. **Print Task Quick Sets** are either preset or user-defined printing specifications (such as paper size, pages per sheet, and so on).

Default Print Settings

The default setting is **Default Print Settings**. Other settings are **User Guide Print Settings** and **Type new Quick Set name here**. When **Defaults** is selected, nearly all settings are restored to the combination that existed after the driver was installed. However, if the attribute combinations that are associated with watermark definitions, custom paper sizes, or the **User Guide Print Settings** quick set have been changed or deleted, the original settings are not restored.

Default Print Settings appears automatically if no other driver settings have been changed since the driver was installed, or if all driver settings match the original settings. Otherwise, the setting in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu will be the same label that appeared when you last closed the printing **Properties** dialog box by clicking **OK**.

User Guide Print Settings

This setting provides a quick set for optimal printing of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

Custom Print Task Quick Sets

When you change any of the default settings on the **Finishing** tab or any of the other tabs, the name in the **Print Task Quick Set** drop-down menu dynamically changes to **Type new Quick Set name here**. If you want to save this configuration as a quick set, highlight the word **Type new Quick Set name here**, type the name you want for your new quick set, and then click **Save**. **Print Task Quick Sets** are saved in the system registry.

To delete a quick set, select it from the drop-down menu and click **Delete**.

You can store a maximum of ten user-defined **Print Task Quick Sets** on a particular system. If you attempt to save too many, a message box appears: **There are too many Print Task Quick Sets defined. Please delete some before adding new ones.**

NOTE Do not save more than 10 Print Task Quit Sets. The print driver, when closed and re-opened, might not retain *any* of the new Print Task Quick Sets that you saved.

Document Options

Use the **Document Options** group box, shown in the following illustration, to select options for printing on both sides and for changing the number of pages that are printed on each sheet.

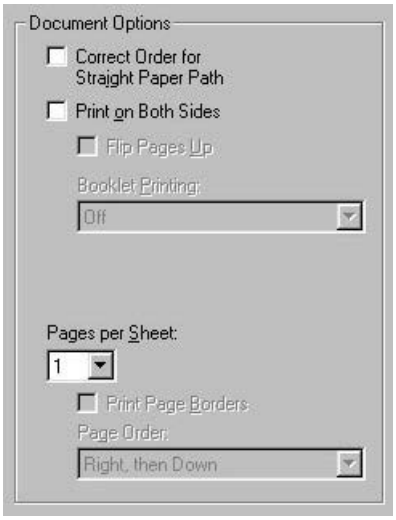


Figure 3-4 Document Options group box

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls.

- **Correct Order for Straight Paper Path**.
- **Print on Both Sides (Manually)**. This setting is available only when the **Allow Manual Duplexing** check box on the **Configure** tab is selected. The **Allow Manual Duplexing** check box is selected by default.
- **Flip Pages Up**
- **Booklet Printing**
- **Pages per Sheet**
- **Print Page Borders**
- **Page Order**

Correct Order for Straight Paper Path

Select **Correct Order for Straight Paper Path** to send print jobs to the rear output bin rather than to the top output bin. Make sure that the rear output door is open. This setting reverses the order of pages to maintain the correct page sequence. See the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide* for additional settings that might be needed.

Print on Both Sides (Manually)

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option is off. **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** is not available when **Type is** is set to **Envelope**, **Transparency**, or **Labels**.

Clicking **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** makes the **Flip Pages Up** and **Booklet Printing** options available. In the default setting, neither of these options is selected.

Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055 all-in-one)

To manually print on both sides of the paper, you must send the paper through the product twice. You can print by using the media output bin or the straight-through output path. HP recommends that you use the media output bin for lightweight paper and use the straight-through output path for any heavy media or media that curls excessively when printed.

Follow these steps to print on both sides manually:

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
   - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up, bottom-edge leading first.
   - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, and the top edge toward the back of the tray.
2. In the print driver, select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option and send the job to print.
3. After the job finishes printing, remove any blank paper from tray 1.
4. Gather the printed pages, keep the printed side facing down, and straighten the stack.
5. Place the stack of media in tray 1 again. The printed side should be facing down with the top edge feeding into the all-in-one first.
6. On the computer screen, click **OK** and then wait for the second side to print.

Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one)

To manually print on both sides of the paper, you must send the paper through the product twice. You can print by using the media output bin or the straight-through output path. HP recommends that you use the media output bin for lightweight paper and use the straight-through output path for any heavy media or media that curls excessively when printed.

Follow these steps to print on both sides manually:

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
   - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up, bottom-edge leading first.
   - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, and the top edge toward the back of the tray.
2. In the print driver, select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option and send the job to print.
3. After the job finishes printing, remove any blank paper from tray 1. Insert the printed stack into the tray that is specified on the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel. Load the paper with the printed side up, and the bottom-edge feeding into the all-in-one first. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears before feeding the output stack for printing the second half of the job.
4. Press Enter to continue printing.

NOTE The PS Emulation Driver does not support manual duplexing.

Flip Pages Up

The **Flip Pages Up** check box, enabled only when **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** is selected, is used to specify the duplex-binding option. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this box, depending upon the paper orientation selected on the **Basics** tab.

Table 3-2 Page orientation

Orientation (Basics tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing will occur on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Booklet Printing

The **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is available when **Print on Both Sides** is selected and a supported media size is selected in the **Size is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu offers choices that are based on the current media size. The default setting is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the media size that is set on the **Paper** tab.

- **[paper size] (Left Binding)**
- **[paper size] (Right Binding)**

When you select **[paper size] (Left Binding)** or **[paper size] (Right Binding)**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See the Pages per Sheet section of this document for more information.

The **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is available only when the following conditions exist:

- **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** (on the **Finishing** tab) is selected.
- **% of Normal Size** (on the **Effects** tab) is 100.
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is 1.
- **Size is** (on the **Paper** tab) is set to Letter, Legal, or A4.

If any of these conditions is not met (except the first), a Bubble Help appears next to **Booklet Printing** to tell you why it is disabled.

Book and booklet printing

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products supports both book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job that consists of at least two pages, and that can have a different media type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, or **Back Cover** settings on the **Paper** tab (available when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box) to select different printing options for the book. For more information, see Paper tab features.

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the media type. Use the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

To print a booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet in most software programs.

1. In the software program, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**.
2. Click the **Finishing** tab.
3. Select the **Print on Both Sides** check box.
4. In the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want. The booklet printing type consists of the media size and the location of the binding (for example, **Letter [Left binding]**).
5. Click **OK** in the print driver.
6. Click **OK** in the print dialog box to print.

Pages per Sheet

The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings: **1** (default), **2**, **4**, **6**, **9**, and **16**. If you type another value into the box (for example, 3), the control will round the value to the nearest valid value (in this example, 4).

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The document preview image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following illustration.

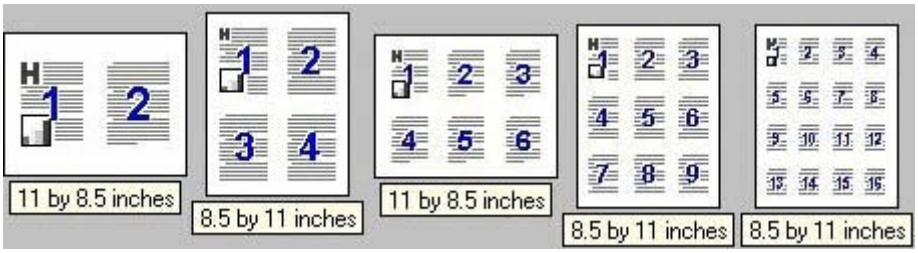


Figure 3-5 Page-order preview images

1. 2 pages per sheet
2. 4 pages per sheet
3. 6 pages per sheet

4. 9 pages per sheet
5. 16 pages per sheet

Document preview image

The preview image is a line-drawn color image of a page that represents graphics and text. The image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all properties tabs except for the **Configure** tab.

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the preview image. When you move the mouse over the preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking on the image.

The light-yellow dimensions label that appears below the preview image indicates the selected page size. The horizontal dimension is always first, so the order of the numbers reverses when the orientation changes. Click on the label to toggle between English and metric units.

Print Quality

The **Print Quality** group box provides options that control resolution, graphics settings, and font settings. The group box includes the following options:

- **Best Quality**
- **Faster Printing**
- **Custom**
- **Economode**

The default setting is **Faster Printing**. This is the fastest printing option, but prints with slightly lower quality than the **Best Quality** option. The **Faster Printing** setting uses a resolution of 600 dpi for the HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver.

Select the **Best Quality** option to print documents at the optimal resolution for your product. This option provides the best print quality but will print slightly slower than the **Faster Printing** option.

To use the **Custom** print quality setting, click the **Details** button. Clicking the **Details** button opens the **Print Quality Details** dialog box. The **Print Quality Details** dialog box has different options depending on the driver that you are using. After you have made changes in the **Print Quality Details** dialog box, the **Custom** option is selected in the **Print Quality** group box.

The **EconoMode** check box can be selected in conjunction with any of the print quality settings. When you select EconoMode, the product uses less toner on each page. Using this option might extend the life of your print cartridge and can lower the cost per page, but the option also reduces print quality. Using the EconoMode feature with non-HP print cartridges can result in spillage or product damage.

The **Print Quality** group box includes a **Details** button. Clicking this button opens the **Print Quality Details** dialog box, which provides options for various print-quality settings.

The following illustration shows default **Print Quality Details** settings for the HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver.

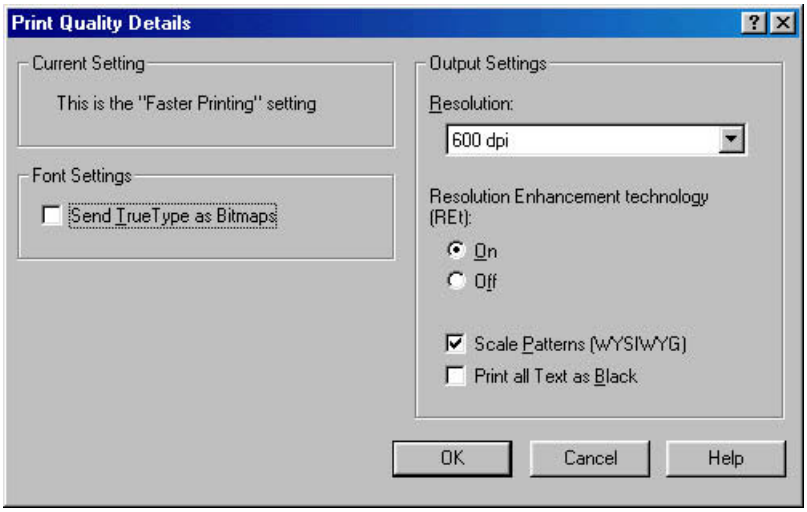


Figure 3-6 **Print Quality Details** dialog box - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver

Current Setting

For the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver, the **Current Setting** group box contains one of the following options, depending on the selection of the **Print Quality** group box on the **Finishing** tab (**Default** or **Custom**):

- **This is the "Default" setting**
- **This is a "Custom" setting**

Output Settings group box

The **Output Settings** group box contains the following options:

- **Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG)**. Select the **Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG)** This feature is implemented to address the moiré effect created when certain software programs encounter certain patterns. Use this feature to turn off the pattern scaling. What you lose is WYSIWYG with patterns, but the printed result might look better. The feature works only with programs that use vector hatch patterns. This option is on by default.
- **Print all Text as Black**. The **Print all Text as Black** check box is not selected, by default. When selected, this option causes the driver to print all text as black regardless of the original document text color. By design, however, white text remains white, as a fail-safe method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background. This setting does not affect graphic images on the page. The **Print all Text as Black** check box remains selected only for the current print job.

Font Settings group box

In the **Font Settings** group box, the only available option is **Send TrueType as Bitmaps**, which provides a safety net for software programs that cannot easily use TrueType fonts for special graphic purposes, such as shading, rotation, or slanting.

Effects tab features

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks.

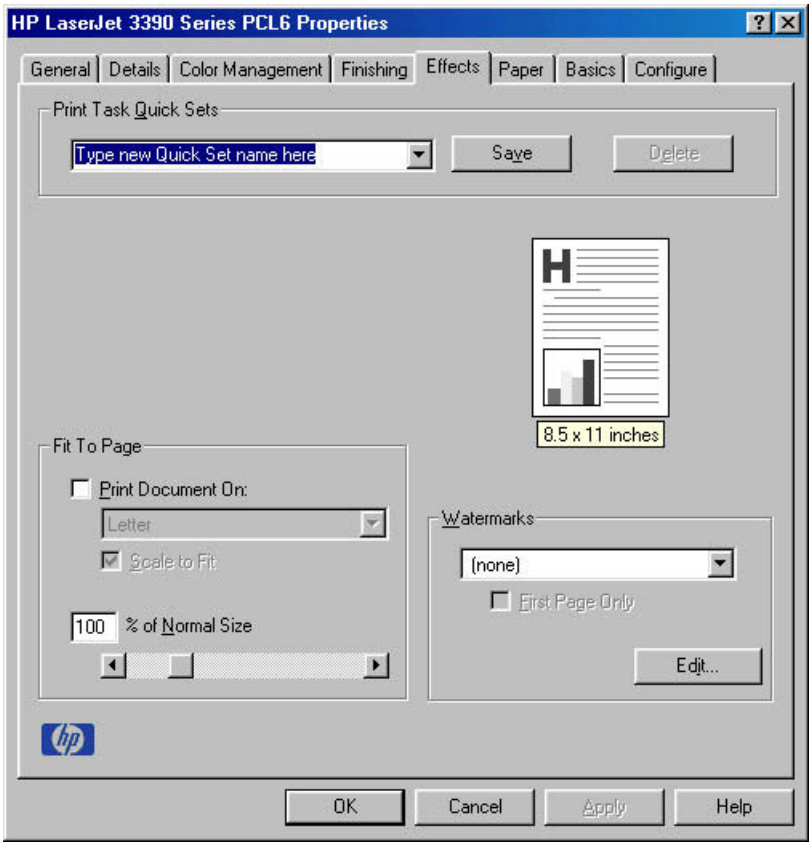


Figure 3-7 **Effects** tab - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver

The **Effects** tab contains the following options:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Document preview image
- Fit To Page
- Watermarks
- Edit

Print Task Quick Sets

Use **Print Task Quick Sets** to store the current combination of driver settings . Print Task Quick Sets are either preset by network-administrator settings or user-defined printing specifications (such as media size, pages per sheet, and so on). For more information, see Print Task Quick Sets in the **Finishing** tab section of this chapter.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn color image of a page that represents graphics and text. The image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all properties tabs except for the **Configure** tab. For more information, see the Document preview image section in the Finishing tab features section of this chapter.

Fit To Page

The **Fit to Page** group box includes features that scale the image on the page, either by specifying a numeric percentage or by specifying a scale change to a different paper size. The **Fit to Page** setting handles scale transformations.

Print Document On

Use **Print Document On** to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the page image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- **Percent of Normal Size** is not **100**.
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not **1**

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the media sizes on which you can print. If the currently selected media source is manual, auto, or any tray, the list contains all standard media sizes that the selected media source supports. The list also contains any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected.

Scale to Fit

The **Scale to Fit** option specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following illustration shows preview images for a document that is formatted for **Legal** paper, and where the **Print Document On** check box is selected and the target size specified as **Letter**.

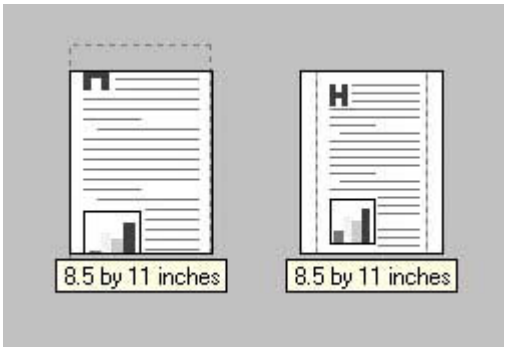


Figure 3-8 Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)

When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

% of Normal Size

The **% of Normal Size** setting provides a slider bar for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is **100**, or 100% of normal size. **Normal size** is defined as the paper size selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and send it to the printer.

The limits of the range are from **25** to **400**, or 25% to 400% of normal size, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the slider bar indicator is dragged, and the preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the slider bar arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the slider bar indicator at the default Windows resolution; use the slider bar indicator to approximate the appropriate value, and then use the slider bar arrows to refine the value.

The following settings disable **% of Normal Size**:

- **Print Document On** is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** is not **1**
- **Booklet Printing** is ON

Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or to edit an existing watermark.

The **Watermarks** group box contains the following controls:

- **Watermarks** drop-down menu
- **First Page Only** check box
- **Edit** button (opens the **Watermark Details** dialog box)

Watermarks drop-down menu

The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(None)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

The drop-down menu shows the alphabetically-sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark that is selected from this list appears in the document preview image.

First Page Only

When **First Page Only** is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is not available when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Edit

Click **Edit...** on the **Effects** tab to view the **Watermark Details** dialog box, as shown in the following illustration.

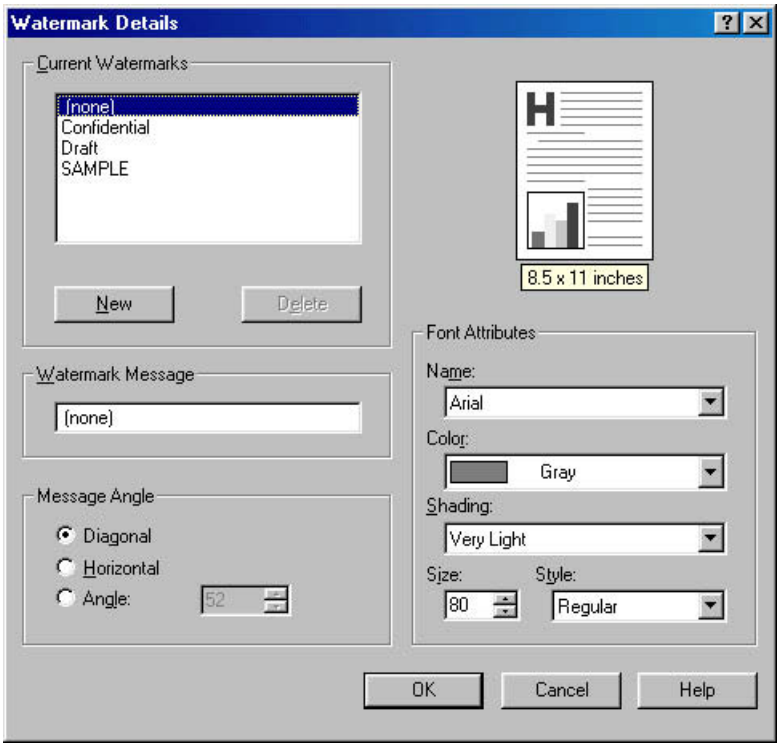


Figure 3-9 Watermark Details dialog box

The dialog box shows a document preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and the font attributes.

The **Watermark Details** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **Current Watermarks**
- **Watermark Message**
- **Message Angle**
- Document preview image
- **Font Attributes**

Current Watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as **Untitled** until you name it.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**.

NOTE You can have no more that 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled, and a Bubble Help message appears that explains why the button is disabled and how to make it available.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each in a different font or size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique.

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in a diagonal, horizontal, or angle (custom) orientation to the text on the page. The default is **Diagonal**. All three settings automatically center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. **Diagonal** places the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the **Watermark Details** dialog box and changes to reflect the modifications that you make in the **Watermark Details** dialog box.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name**

  The **Name** drop-down menu lists TrueType fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

- **Color**

  The color selection combo box provides a single setting for the watermark: **Gray**.

- **Shading**

  The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

  - **Lightest**
  - **Very Light** (default)
  - **Light**
  - **Medium Light**

- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

- **Size**

  Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent. The default point size for preset watermarks is language-dependent.

- **Style**

  The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu. The default **Style** setting for new and current watermarks is **Regular**.

Default settings

The default settings for new watermarks are **Arial** font, **Gray** color, **Very Light** shading, **80** points, and **Regular** style. The default settings for preset watermarks are **Arial** font, **Very Light** shading, and **Bold** style. The default font name and point size for preset watermarks are language-dependent, and vary.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that have been made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark, and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes made to the previous watermark are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Paper tab features

Use the **Paper** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the media. You can also use this tab to indicate different paper-selection choices for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper** tab.

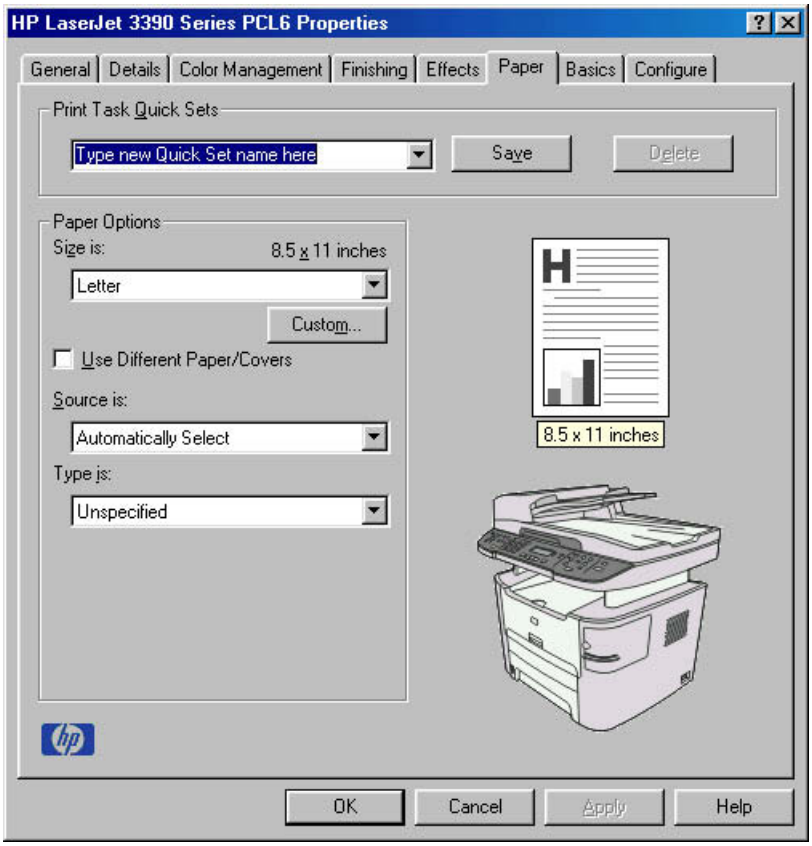


Figure 3-10 **Paper** tab - HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver

The **Paper** tab contains the following controls:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Paper Options
- Document preview image
- Product image

Print Task Quick Sets

The **Print Task Quick Sets** control is used to store the current combination of driver settings that appear on all of the other **Document Defaults** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset (by the administrator) or user-defined printing specifications, such as media size and pages per sheet. For more information, see Print Task Quick Sets in the **Finishing** tab section of this chapter.

Paper Options

The settings that are specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections that are available by default.

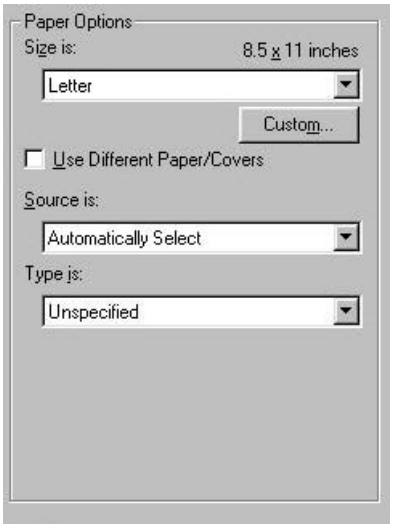


Figure 3-11 **Paper Options** group box (default)

The appearance of the **Paper Options** group box changes when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected. For convenience, the settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:

- Size is
- Source Is
- Type is
- Use Different Paper/Covers
- Custom

Size is

The **Size is:** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported media sizes.

Hint When you move the mouse over the dimensions label, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

You can specify size for all of the settings in the **Paper Options** group box. When you set the media size in the driver, the entire print-job output uses that media size. That is, if the print job uses Letter-size media, any option that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options must also use Letter-size media.

Because driver settings are overridden by media-size settings in most software programs, it is generally best to use the driver to set media size only for software programs that lack a media-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different media sizes.

NOTE Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different media sizes within a single document.

For information about media sizes, see the Media attributes section of this guide.

When the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected and different options are configured, the **Size is:**, **Source is:**, and **Type is:** menus change, offering a variety of options. For more information, see Use Different Paper/Covers.

Source Is

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu can contain the following options:

- **Automatically Select**
- **Printer Auto Selecy**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (125-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (250-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (250-sheet tray, HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one products only)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products use the source tray that supports the media size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically Select**, make sure that the correct media size is loaded in the source tray. For more information about media sources, see the Media attributes section of this STR.

Type is

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products support. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default media type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom media types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the printer when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, then the information returned is an updated list of media types. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, then the driver looks for custom media types saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom media types are available through the driver.

The following standard paper types appear in the lists.

Table 3-3 Standard paper types and engine speeds

Paper type	Engine speed
Unspecified	
Plain	Full
Preprinted	Full
Letterhead	Full
Transparency	1/4 speed
Prepunched	Full
Labels	1/2 speed
Bond	Full

Table 3-3 Standard paper types and engine speeds (continued)

Paper type	Engine speed
Recycled	Full
Color	Full
Cardstock (105 to 176 g/m^2 or 43 to 47 lb.)	1/2 speed
Rough	
HP Multipurpose Paper	
HP Office Paper	
HP LaserJet all-in-one Printing Paper	
HP LaserJet Paper	
HP Premium Choice LaserJet Paper	
Heavy (90 to 105 g/m^2)	Full
Envelope	Full
Light (< 75 g/m^2)	Full
Vellum	

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the media type. If you select a different setting, make sure that the correct media type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Source is:** setting.

For more information about media types, see the Media attributes section of this STR.

Use Different Paper/Covers

You can print books that are comprised of different media types using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

When you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box, the following settings can appear in the group box, along with associated options:

- **Front Cover**
- **First Page**
- **Other Pages**
- **Last Page**
- **Back Cover**

You must use the same size of media for the entire print job. All **Use Different Paper/Covers** options use the size that you selected in the First Page settings and the **Size is:** driver setting becomes unavailable for all of the other **Use Different Paper/Covers** options. Therefore, the First Page settings are described first in the following sections.

When you change the type and source of the media and covers, the settings that you select remain configured until you close the software program.

Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the following sections.

First Page

Use the **First Page** option to select an alternative media size, type, or source for the first page of a document. The following illustration shows the appearance of the Paper Options group box when you select the Use Different Paper/Covers check box. The **First Page** setting is selected by default.

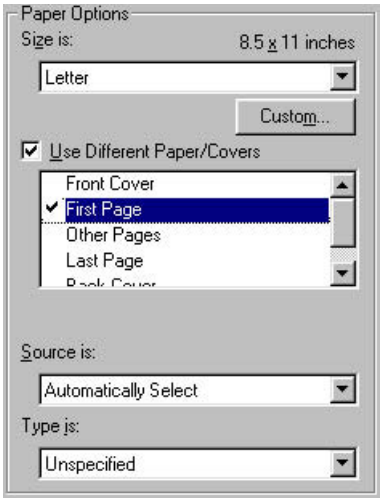


Figure 3-12 First Page options

The following are the **First Page** options:

- **Size is:** drop-down menu
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Size is:** driver setting for the first page applies to the entire print job. When this is set, the setting becomes unavailable for all the other **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the Source Is section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the product supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the Type is section of this chapter.

Front Cover

Use the **Front Cover** options to include a blank or preprinted front cover on a document, or to include a front cover from a source tray that is different from the one that is used for the remainder of the document.

The following illustration shows the **Front Cover** setting and options.

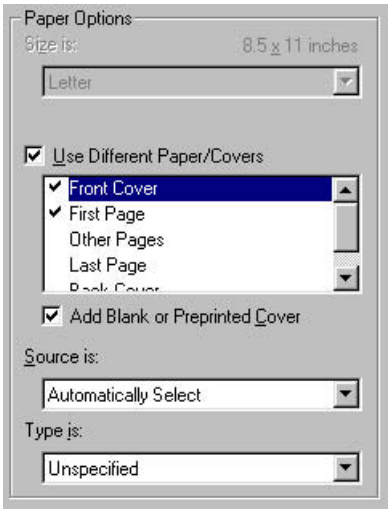


Figure 3-13 **Front Cover** options

The following are the **Front Cover** options:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Front Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Front Cover** option.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the Source Is: drop-down menu section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the product supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the Type is: drop-down menu section of this chapter.

Other Pages

Use the **Other Pages** options to select an alternative media source (or the same source as **First Page**) for the other pages of the document.

The **Other Pages** setting and options are shown in the following illustration.

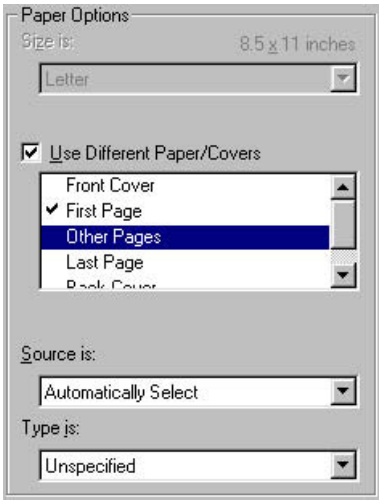


Figure 3-14 **Other Pages** options

The following are the **Other Pages** options:

- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing the other pages of the document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the Source Is section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the product supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the Type is section of this chapter.

Last Page

Use the **Last Page** options to select an alternative media type or source for the last page of the document. The **Last Page** setting and options are shown in the following illustration.

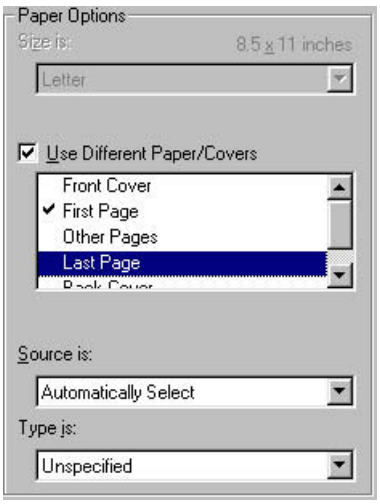


Figure 3-15 **Last Page** options

The following are the **Last Page** options:

- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing the last page of the document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the Source Is section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the product supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the Type is section of this chapter.

Back Cover

Use the **Back Cover** options to include a blank or preprinted back cover on a document.

The following illustration shows the **Back Cover** setting and options.

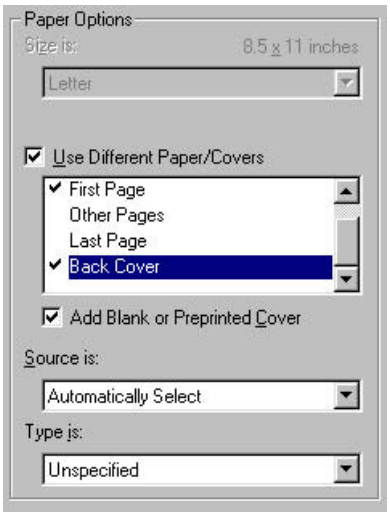


Figure 3-16 **Back Cover** setting

The following are the **Back Cover** options:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Back Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover** option.

NOTE The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed

through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the Source Is section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the product supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the **Type is:** in the Type is section of this chapter.

Custom

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click the **Custom** button on the **Paper** tab. The following illustration shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

NOTE The **Custom** button is not available when **Use Different Paper/Covers** is selected *and* any setting other than **First Page** is also selected.

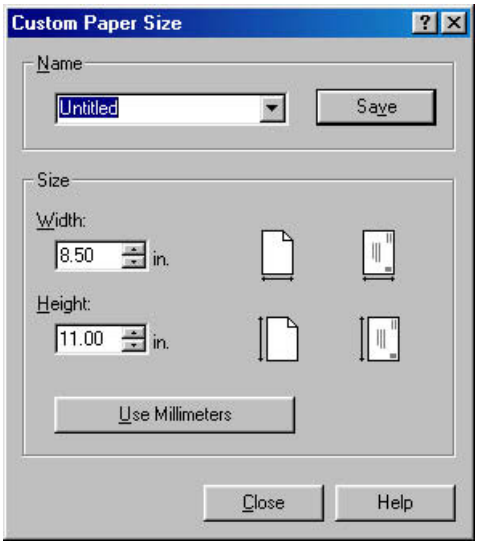


Figure 3-17 **Custom Paper Size** dialog box

When the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears, the drop-down menu in the **Name** group contains one of two things, depending on the current paper-size selection on the **Paper** tab:

- If the paper-size selection is a previously defined custom size, then the drop-down menu contains the name of that custom size.
- If the paper-size selection is a standard media size, then the drop-down menu shows the default name **Untitled** for a custom media size.

NOTE In Windows 98 SE and Windows Me, two names for the same size media can coexist. For example, "big" and "BIG" can both be used as names for custom-size media measuring 8.4 inches by 11 inches (213.4 mm by 279.4 mm). In Windows 2000, and Windows XP, both uppercase and lowercase names can be used, but they cannot be used to name the same media size.

The new name is compared only against the list of user-defined custom media-size names, and not against the standard media-size names.

The complete set of titles for this button and the specific characteristics that determine its title and capabilities are discussed in the Save, Delete, or Rename section.

Name

The **Name** drop-down menu shows the name of the custom media size that was selected most recently. Use the **Name** drop-down menu to select from the list of currently defined custom media sizes, or to type a new name for a custom media size.

The name that appears in the **Name** drop-down menu is one of three things, depending on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom media size has been selected from the drop-down menu and the other controls in the dialog box have not been changed since, then the **Name** drop-down menu shows the name of the last selected custom media size.
- If the width or height controls have been changed since a custom size was selected or saved, or if a saved media size has just been deleted, then the **Name** drop-down menu shows the default name of "Untitled."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** drop-down menu for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the drop-down menu until a saved custom media size has been selected from the drop-down menu.

If you type a new name into the **Name** drop-down menu, but then do not click the **Save** button, you should be able to change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if a saved media-size name is selected from the drop-down menu, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning, and replaced by the values of the selected custom media size.

Save, Delete, or Rename

The dynamic command button located under the **Name** drop-down menu has three possible labels: **Save**, **Delete**, and **Rename**.

- **Save** is the button title whenever the height and width values have been changed since the most recent save action or since the selection of an existing custom media size. Clicking the button causes the name in the **Name** drop-down menu to be compared against each of the saved names. If a duplicate is found, a dialog box appears, asking if it is okay to replace the existing item. If you click **Yes**, the old item is updated with the new values. If you click **No**, the driver returns to the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box, where you can type a different name. The new name is compared only against the list of user-defined custom media names, and not against the standard media-size names. Whenever the command button has the **Save** title, it is the default button.
- **Delete** is the button title whenever the name of an existing (previously saved) custom media size appears in the **Name** drop-down menu, such as immediately after selecting an item from the drop-down menu or clicking the **Save** button. Clicking the **Delete** button causes the saved custom media size to be deleted, after which the **Name** drop-down menu changes to **Untitled**, the height and width controls are unchanged, and the button title changes to **Save**.
- **Rename** is the button title when you type something into the **Name** drop-down menu after selecting an existing custom media size from the drop-down menu. If no duplicate is found, then the name of the stored custom media size changes to match the contents of the **Name** drop-down menu.

The following table illustrates the relationships between the **Name** drop-down menu, the command button, and the actions that take users from one state to another.

Table 3-4 Name drop-down menu text strings

State	Drop-down menu contents	Button label	Action	Next state
1	Untitled	Save	Click **Save**.	3
			Type something into the **Name** drop-down menu.	2
			Change the width or height values.	1
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3
2	<user-typed text>	Save	Click **Save**.	3
			Type something into the **Name** drop-down menu.	2
			Change the width or height values.	2
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3
3	<name of saved item>	Delete	Click **Delete**.	1
			Type something into the **Name** drop-down menu.	4
			Change the width or height values.	1
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3
4	<user-typed text>	Rename	Click **Rename** (when the name is unique).	3
			Click **Rename** (when the name is a duplicate).	4
			Type something into the **Name** drop-down menu.	4
			Change the width or height values.	2
			Select a saved item from the drop-down menu.	3

Custom size (width and height controls)

The width and height values can be changed either by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes, or by using the up and down arrows.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height control is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height control is rounded up to the minimum valid entry. See Custom width and height control limits.

If units are in millimeters, the custom media-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom media-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each control is one millimeter or one-tenth of an inch, depending on the current measurement units. Clicking the up and down arrows increases or decreases the current value by the increment amount (within the allowed range of values). The computer determines the rate at which the values change.

Unit indicator labels change dynamically to indicate inches or millimeters, depending on the measurement units the driver is currently using. To change measurement units, click the dynamic measurement-units button (either **Use Inches** or **Use Metric**).

The paper and envelope icons visually define width and height.

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum media size for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products is 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) and the maximum is 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 inches). The following table summarizes media size limits for each media-handling device.

Table 3-5 Custom media sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (multipurpose)	Width	76 mm (3 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5 inches)	356 mm (14 inches)
Tray 2 (250-sheet)	Width	76 mm (3 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5 inches)	356 mm (14 inches)
ADF unit	Width	76 mm (3 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5 inches)	356 mm (14 inches)

Paper and envelope icons

The paper and envelope icons visually define width and height.

Dynamic measurement units

Use the dynamic measurement-units button to toggle the unit of measurement between standard (inches) and metric (millimeters) units of measurement. The label on this button is dynamic, depending on the measurement units that are in use. If the custom size currently shows the measurements in inches, the button is labeled **Use Millimeters**. If the custom size currently shows the measurements in millimeters, the button is labeled **Use Inches**. Click the button to switch measurement-unit types.

Close

The **Close** button closes the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box according to the logic in the following table. In all cases, any custom media sizes that are successfully saved (and not renamed or deleted) while the dialog box is open will remain in the **Size is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The following table lists options that appear when you click the **Close** button.

Table 3-6 Close dialog box text strings

If the drop-down menu contains	And the button says	Then this happens when the Close button is clicked
Untitled	Save	The dialog box closes, but you lose the changes that were not saved. The current media size remains the same as it was when the **Custom** button was clicked.
<user-typed text>	Save	The dialog box closes, but you lose the changes that were not saved.

Table 3-6 Close dialog box text strings (continued)

If the drop-down menu contains	And the button says	Then this happens when the Close button is clicked
		The current media size remains the same as it was when the **Custom** button was clicked.
<name of saved item>	Delete	The dialog box closes, and the current media size is set to the size that was last shown in the drop-down menu.
<user-typed text>	Rename	The dialog box closes, but you lose the changes that were not saved. The current media size remains the same as it was when the **Custom** button was clicked.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all of the HP print driver tabs. For more information about the document preview image, see Document preview image in the Finishing tab features section of this chapter.

Product image

The bitmap image in the lower-right portion of the **Paper** tab represents the current physical configuration of the product and corresponds to its configuration data. It should look the same as the image that appears in the same location on the **Configure** tab in the printer **Properties** dialog box.

On the **Paper** tab, the product image contains hot spots where you can select a media source. When you use the mouse to move the pointer over a hot spot, the arrow reverts to a gloved hand. The current media source tray, whether selected from the drop-down menu or from a product image hot spot, is highlighted on the product image. The following points are worth noting:

- The **Automatically Select** setting in the **Source is:** drop-down menu does not have a corresponding area to highlight in the product image. Selecting other settings in this menu highlights the corresponding part in the product image.
- Selecting the area that represents a tray in the image always selects the corresponding tray in the **Source is:** option. **Manual Feed in Tray 1**, which is available from the **Source is:** drop-down menu, cannot be selected by selecting the image.
- On the **Paper** tab, only source trays have product image hot spots and can be highlighted.

Basics tab features

The **Basics** tab provides options for setting the number of copies to be printed and for the orientation of the print job. It also lets you retrieve information about the driver.

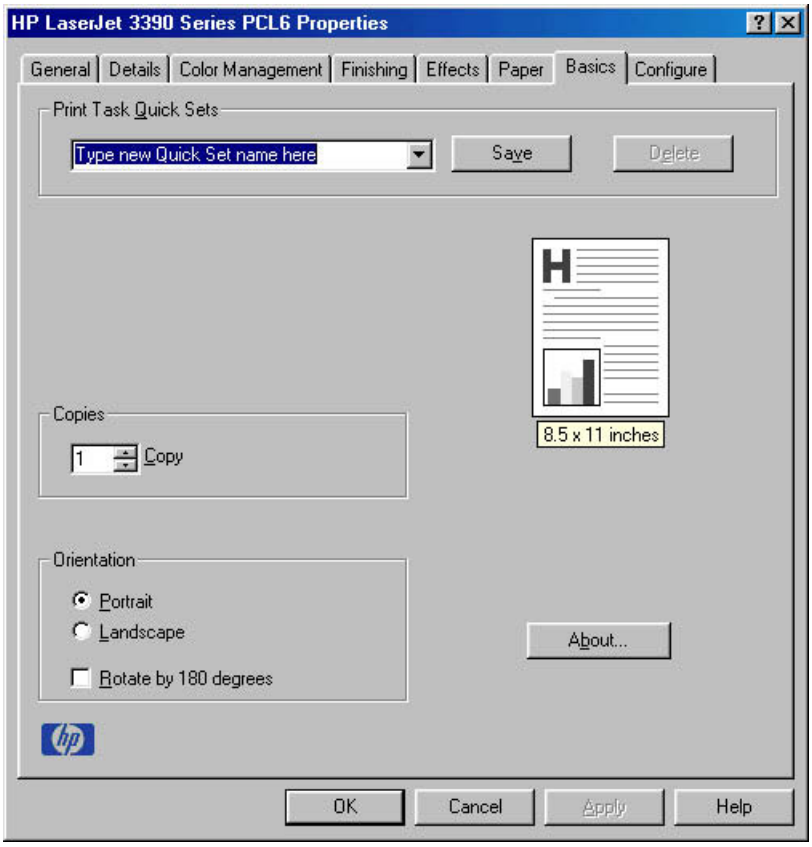


Figure 3-18 **Basics** tab – HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver

The **Basics** tab contains the following options:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Copies
- Orientation
- Document preview image
- About

Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see Print Task Quick Sets in the **Finishing** tab section of this STR.

Copies

Use the **Copies** group box to specify the number of copies to print.

The number of copies you request appears in the **Copies** box. You can select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the edit box. Valid entries are numbers from **1** to **999**. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (999) when the down arrow is used. Invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1 or greater than the maximum allowed)

change to the last valid value that appeared in the box when you click another group box or leave the **Basics** tab. The default number of copies is **1**.

Because you can set the desired number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts can arise between the software program and the driver. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the software program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not happen, and the **Copies** values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended to set the number of copies in the software program, wherever possible.

Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the manner in which media feeds into the printer. You can specify the orientation of the print job.

You can toggle between portrait and landscape orientation by left-clicking the preview image. If you select **Rotate by 180 degrees**, no change is evident in the preview image.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait** option button
- **Landscape** option button
- **Rotate 180 degrees** check box

Portrait

Select this option to print your document in **Portrait** orientation. This is the default setting.

Landscape

Select this option to print your document in **Landscape** orientation.

Rotate by 180 degrees

Select the **Rotate by 180 degrees** check box to rotate the document image on the paper 180°. For example: If the return address on an envelope is smudged, try using this setting and feed the envelope so that the return address area is fed into the printer first.

Document preview image

The preview image is a line-drawn color image of a page that represents graphics and text. The image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The preview image appears in the upper-right corner of all properties tabs except for the **Configure** tab. For more information, see the Document preview image section of this STR.

About

By clicking the **About** button on the **Basics** tab or the HP logo on any of the driver property pages, the **About** box appears. To close the **About** box, click **OK**, press Esc, press Alt + F4, or press Enter. The following figure shows the **About** box. The information varies according to HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product model number, driver, date, and version numbers.

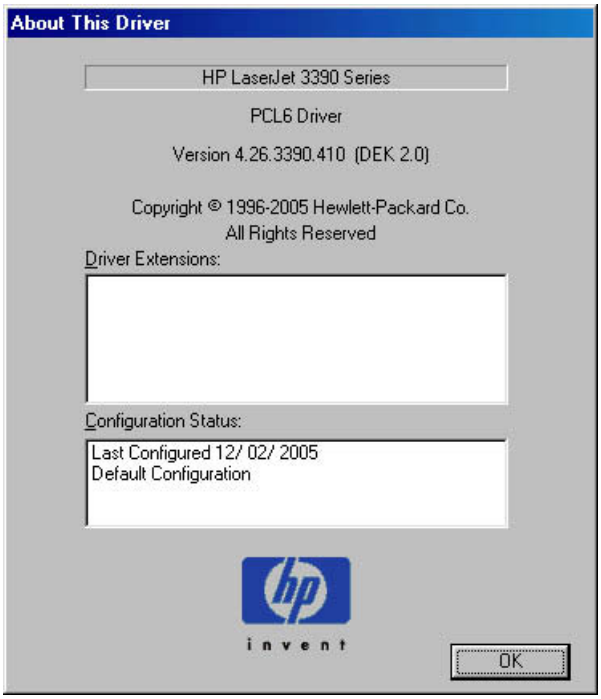


Figure 3-19 **About This Driver** dialog box

Configure tab features

To gain access to the **Configure** tab in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. Right-click the product name, and then click **Properties**.

Use the **Configure** tab to tell the driver about the product hardware configuration.

The **Configure** tab is available when you click **Properties** and open the **Printers** folder. When you open the driver from within a software program, the **Configure** tab is not visible, with a few exceptions, such as when using Excel 5.0 or Corel® Chart 4.0. When opened from the **Printers** folder, the **Configure** tab looks like the following illustration.

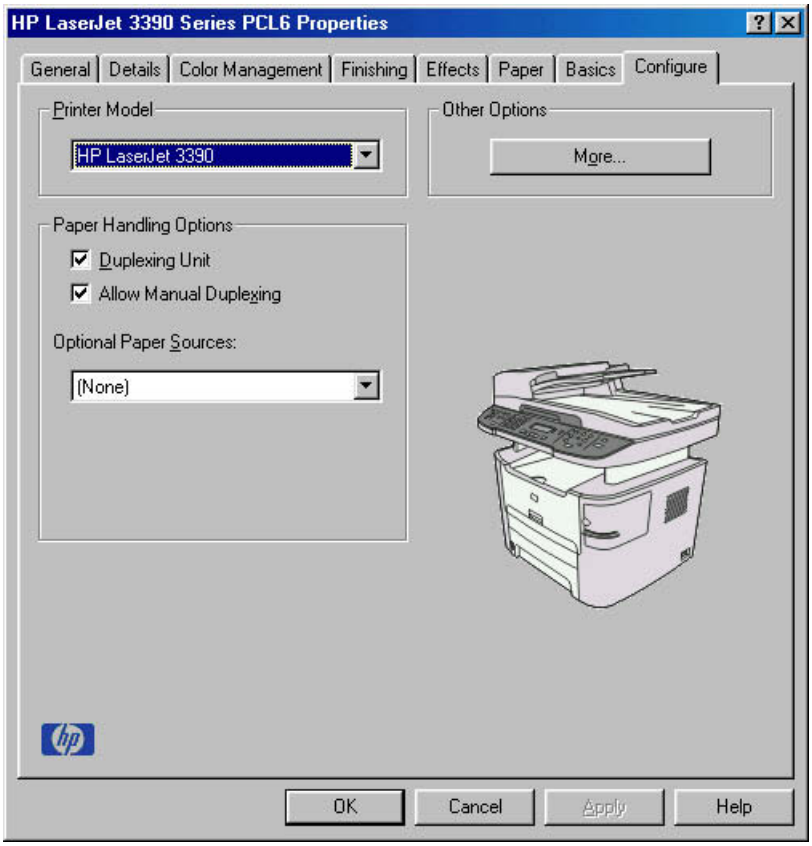


Figure 3-20 **Configure** tab

The printer image in the lower-right portion of the **Configure** tab represents the current physical configuration of the product and corresponds to its configuration data, which is either obtained automatically through bidirectional communication or configured manually. It should look the same as the image that appears in the same location on the **Paper** tab. For more information, see the Paper tab features section of this chapter.

The **Configure** tab contains the following options:

- Printer Model
- Paper Handling Options
- Other Options
- Printer image

Printer Model

In the **Printer Model** group box, the driver title depends on the printer model being used. Selection of any model in the drop-down menu makes the appropriate changes to other configuration options on the tab.

The **Printer Model** setting automatically changes to **User Configured** whenever you change any of the device configuration settings on the tab.

If it is installed and working, the bidirectional mechanism will detect the correct model and update the configuration accordingly, either during installation or when you select **Update Now** on the **Configure** tab. However, the printer model name shown in the **Printer Model** text box does not change.

Paper Handling Options

The **Paper Handling Options** group box provides options for configuring most of the paper-handling device features.

For the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products, the following paper-handling options are available.

- Duplexing Unit
- Allow Manual Duplexing
- Optional Paper Sources

Duplexing Unit

The HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one and the HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one products are equipped with automatic 2-sided printing (duplexing), which allows you to print on both sides of supported media. Automatic 2-sided printing is not supported for certain media types, including transparencies, labels, envelopes, and cardstock.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Select **Allow Manual Duplexing** to enable manual duplexing on the HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one and the HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one products.

Optional Paper Sources

The **Optional Paper Sources** drop-down menu lists optional media sources for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products. The list of available media sources varies, depending on your product, its input accessories, and the product configuration settings on the **Configure** tab.

Other Options

The **Other Options** group box contains a single **More** button. Clicking the **More** button opens the **More Configuration Options** dialog box.

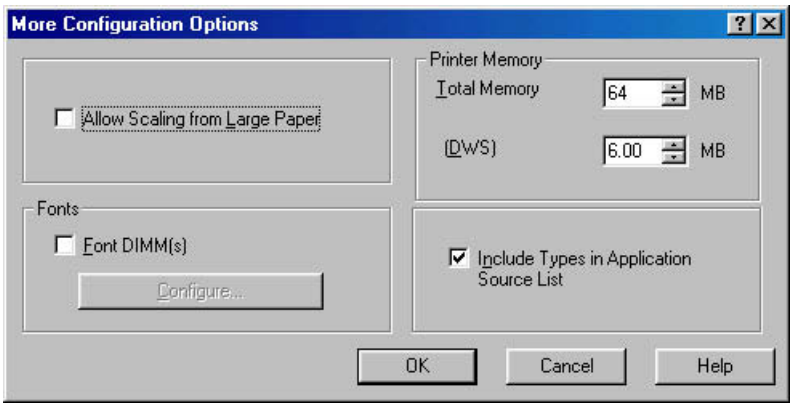


Figure 3-21 More Configuration Options dialog box

The **More Configuration Options** dialog box contains the following options:

- Allow Scaling from Large Paper
- Fonts

- Printer Memory
- Include Types in Application Source List selection

Allow Scaling from Large Paper

Use the **Allow Scaling from Large Paper** check box to print from media sizes that are larger than those that the product supports. When this check box is selected, you can select these larger paper sizes from the **Size Is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab, and the print jobs are automatically scaled to a size that the product does support.

Fonts

The **Fonts** group box contains a **Font DIMM** check box and a corresponding **Configure** button. Selecting the **Font DIMM** check box tells the driver that a Font DIMM is installed, and that stored data about the fonts on the DIMM is available. When the check box is selected, the **Configure** button is enabled. Click the **Configure** button to open the **Configure Font DIMMs** dialog box. If the **Font DIMM** check box was not selected when you opened the **More Configuration Options** dialog box, selecting that check box automatically opens the **Configure Font DIMMs** dialog box.

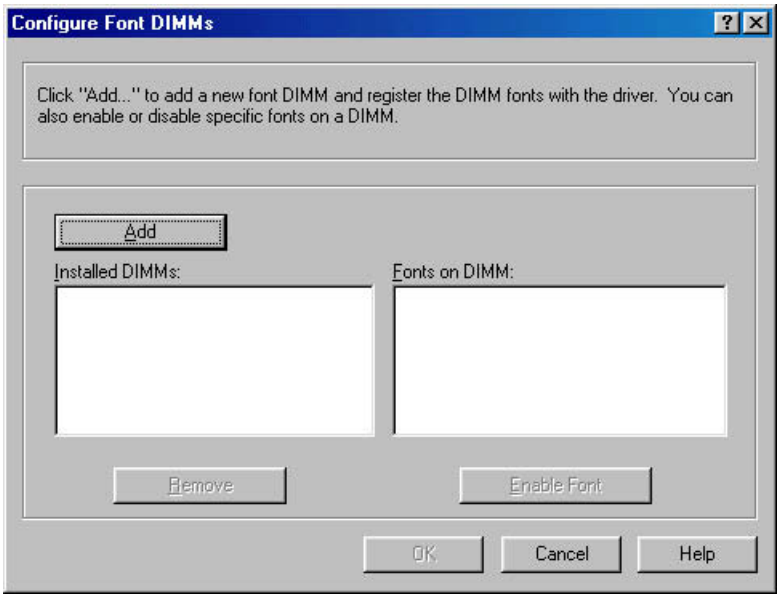


Figure 3-22 Configure Font DIMMs dialog box

Use the **Configure Font DIMMs** dialog box to perform the following tasks:

- Add up to two font DIMMs by clicking the **Add** button.
- Specify a unique font DIMM name.
- Select specific font DIMM data files that contain lists of fonts on specified DIMMs.
- Select one or more installed DIMMs in the **Installed DIMMs** list, and based on the selected DIMM (s). The list to the right (**Fonts on DIMM**) will display all of the fonts available on the selected DIMM (s).
- Enable or disable one or more of the selected font(s).

Use the following procedure to configure a font DIMM:

1. Make sure that the font DIMM is correctly installed.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add Font DIMM** dialog box appears.
3. Click **Browse**. The **Font DIMM Files** dialog box appears.
4. Find and select the appropriate Printer Cartridge Metrics (.PCM) file that came with the font DIMM.
5. Click **Open**.
6. If you want to, specify a **Font DIMM Name** in the **Add Font DIMM** dialog box.
7. Click **OK**. The selected printer cartridge metrics (.PCM) file appears in the **Installed DIMMs** list. Select the .PCM file to see a list of available fonts in the **Fonts on DIMM** list.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Add Font DIMM** dialog box. The fonts on the DIMM should now be available on the system.

NOTE To install screen fonts that match the font DIMM, use the .HPB file that is specifically designed to work with that DIMM. If no screen fonts are available for the DIMM, use the .PCM file that is specifically designed to work with that DIMM.

Printer Memory

The **Printer Memory** group box contains the following information:

- **Total Memory**. This shows the total amount of memory that is physically installed in the printer. Total Printer Memory updates after a successful bidirectional query.
- **Driver Work Space**. Use the Driver Work Space (**DWS**) option to specify the amount of work-space memory available to the printer. In environments that support bidirectional communication, this option is configured automatically. To set DWS manually, print a configuration page and find the **DWS** value in the Memory section of the configuration page. The DWS value might change if you switch printer-model settings. Then, type that value in the DWS box in the **More Configuration Options** dialog box. An accurate DWS value optimizes driver performance.

Include Types in Application Source List selection

When the **Include Types in Applications Source List** check box is selected, all paper types (such as envelopes and transparencies) that are supported by the printer are available from a software program's paper source list in the **Page Setup** dialog.

When you are in a software program, you can open the **Page Setup** dialog by clicking the **File** menu, and then clicking the **Page Setup** button.

Printer image

The bitmap image in the lower-right portion of the **Paper** tab screen represents the current physical configuration of the product and corresponds to the driver configuration data, which is either obtained automatically through bidirectional communication or configured manually through the driver. It should have the same appearance as the image in the same location on the **Paper** tab. For more information, see the Paper tab features section of this chapter.

Windows PS Emulation Driver features (for Windows 98 SE and Windows Me)

This section provides information about the features of the HP PS traditional driver. The following information is provided:

- HP postscript level 3 emulation support
- Access to print-driver settings in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me
- Paper
- Graphics
- Device Options
- PostScript

HP postscript level 3 emulation support

A set of 92 PS Level 3 soft fonts is included with the printing-system software. If you want to permanently install the fonts in the printer, HP postscript level 3 emulation fonts are also available from HP in an optional font DIMM. The HP postscript level 3 emulation maintains full compatibility with Adobe PS Level 3 when PS Level 3 soft fonts are purchased from Adobe.

Users of Adobe-licensed software might also have the right to use the Adobe PS level 3 print drivers from Adobe with the HP LaserJet printer postscript level 3 emulation PPD, which is available on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one printing-system software CD or from the HP Web site. When using the Adobe PS Level 3 print driver, users must comply with all Adobe licensing agreements, as stated on the Adobe Web site at www.adobe.com/support/downloads/license.html.

Access to print-driver settings in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me

To gain access to the PS Emulation Driver tabs in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**. Right-click the product name, and then click **Properties** to gain access to all print-driver tabs. The settings that you make on these driver tabs control print-job output. The following print-driver tabs are described in this STR:

- Paper
- Graphics
- Device Options
- PostScript

Paper

Use the **Paper** tab options to make changes to your document layout, size, and orientation. The **Paper** tab is shown in the following illustration.

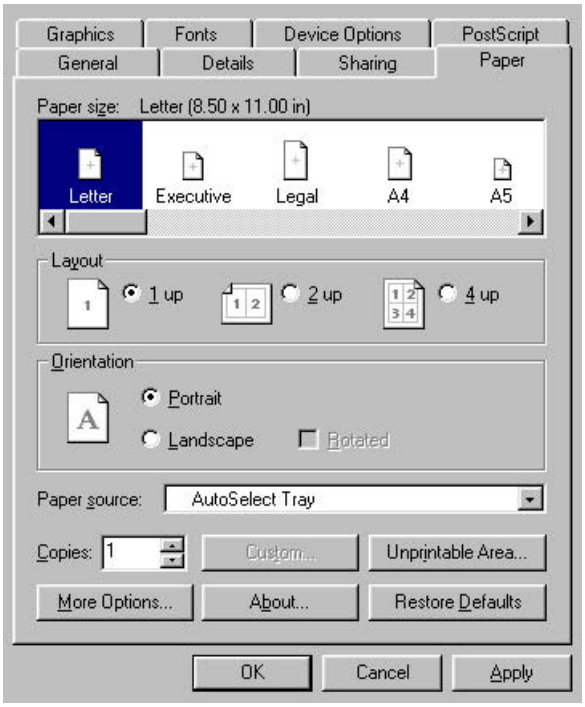


Figure 3-23 **Paper** tab - HP PS traditional driver

The **Paper** tab contains controls for the following options:

- Paper size
- Layout
- Orientation
- Paper source
- Copies
- Custom
- Unprintable Area
- More Options
- About
- Restore Defaults

Paper size

Shows the paper or envelope sizes that your HP LaserJet all-in-one supports. Click the size you want to use. If your HP LaserJet all-in-one supports custom paper sizes, a **Custom** icon appears. Click the **Custom** icon, and then click **Custom** to specify a paper size. A red circle with a line through one of the paper icons means that you can select that paper size, but you must change a setting before your HP LaserJet all-in-one can print on that size of paper. Change the setting in this dialog box or on the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Layout

Specifies how many pages of your document to print on one piece of paper. For example, **1 up** prints one page of your document per piece of paper; **2 up** prints two pages on one piece of paper, dividing the paper in half. This option is ignored if you print an EPS file.

Orientation

Determines how the document is positioned on the page. Click **Portrait** or **Landscape** to see an example. In Landscape mode, you also have the option of rotating the image. Select the **Rotated** check box to see an example. To see the current dimensions of the page (the paper size and the unprintable margins), point to the page icon, and then press and hold down the mouse button.

Paper source

Specifies where the paper you want to use is located in the printer. Different printer models support different paper sources, such as upper tray, envelope feed, mixed bins, and manual feed. If you click **AutoSelect Tray**, the printer uses the paper tray that supports the paper size you have chosen.

Copies

Sets the number of copies you want printed. You can print from 1 to 999 copies. If you print an EPS file, this option is ignored. Some software programs override this setting.

Custom

Click the **Custom** button to specify a custom paper size. You can define up to three custom sizes at a time, if your printer supports it. If this button is unavailable, click a custom paper icon in the **Paper size** section.

Unprintable Area

Click the **Unprintable Area** button to view the page margins (the area of the page that is unavailable for printing). If you change these settings, be sure to check your printer manual. Some printers have built-in margins. If the built-in margins are greater than the margins that you specify here, the text in your document could be cut off.

More Options

Use the **Output bin** drop-down menu to select an output bin for the print-job.

Click the **Restore Defaults** button to restore the settings in this dialog box to their original values.

About

Click the **About** button to display copyright information.

Restore Defaults

Click the **Restore Defaults** button to restore the settings in this dialog box to their original values.

Graphics

The **Graphics** tab contains controls for the following options:

- Resolution

- Halftoning
- Special
- Scaling
- Restore Defaults button

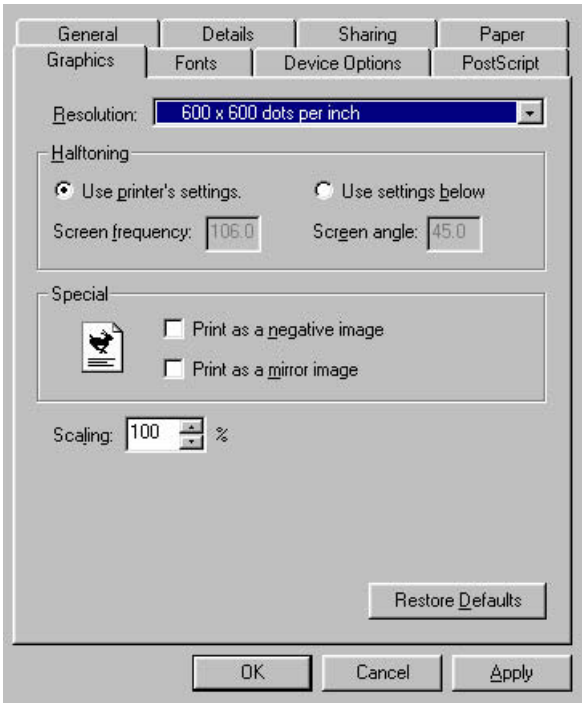


Figure 3-24 Graphics tab

Resolution

Specifies the resolution you want for printing, in dots per inch (dpi). Higher-resolution settings produce higher-quality printing; however, your documents might take longer to print. The resolutions available depend on the product capabilities.

Halftoning

Specifies values for the number of lines per inch (frequency) and angle of the pattern that you want to use for halftone screens. If you are getting a moiré pattern when you print graphics such as photographs or detailed images, you might want to adjust these settings. However, the default printer settings should work in most cases. Do not change these settings unless you have experience using halftones. To return to the default settings after you have made changes, click **Use printer's settings**.

Special

- **Print as a negative image**: Prints a negative of the image by complementing the RGB values or reversing the black and white values. Click this option to see an example.
- **Print as a mirror image**: Prints a mirror image of your document by reversing the horizontal coordinates. Click this option to see an example.

Scaling

Specifies the size of the image to print. You can specify from **25** to **400**, or 25% to 400% of normal size. Print jobs at 400% produce an image four times larger than the original.

Restore Defaults button

Click the **Restore Defaults** button to restore the settings in this dialog box to their original values.

Device Options

The **Device Options** tab contains the following options:

- Available printer memory (in KB)
- Printer features
- Restore Defaults button

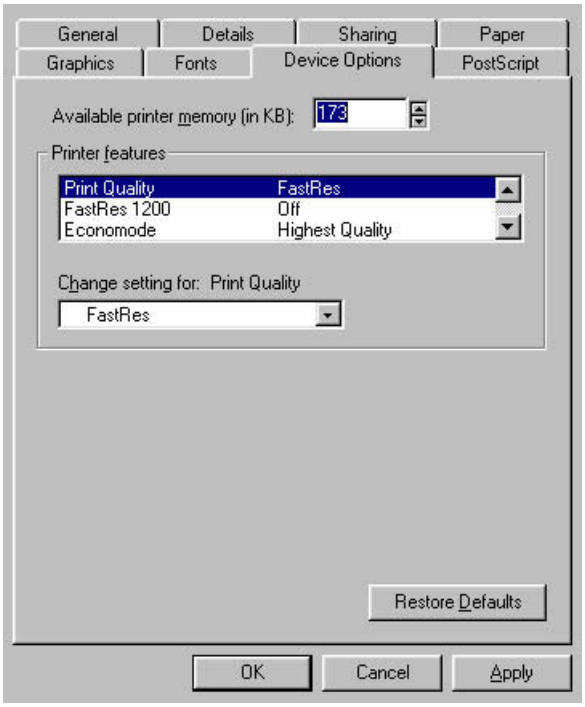


Figure 3-25 Device Options tab

Available printer memory (in KB)

Specifies the amount of memory in your HP LaserJet all-in-one. If the value does not match the amount of memory on your HP LaserJet all-in-one, you might need to change it if you experience printing problems.

Printer features

Shows product-specific settings. You can change the settings by clicking the setting and then specifying a new value in the **Change Setting for** drop-down list.

Restore Defaults button

Click the **Restore Defaults** button to restore the settings in this dialog box to their original values.

PostScript

The **PostScript** tab contains the following options:

- PostScript output format
- PostScript header
- Print PostScript error information
- Advanced
- Restore Defaults

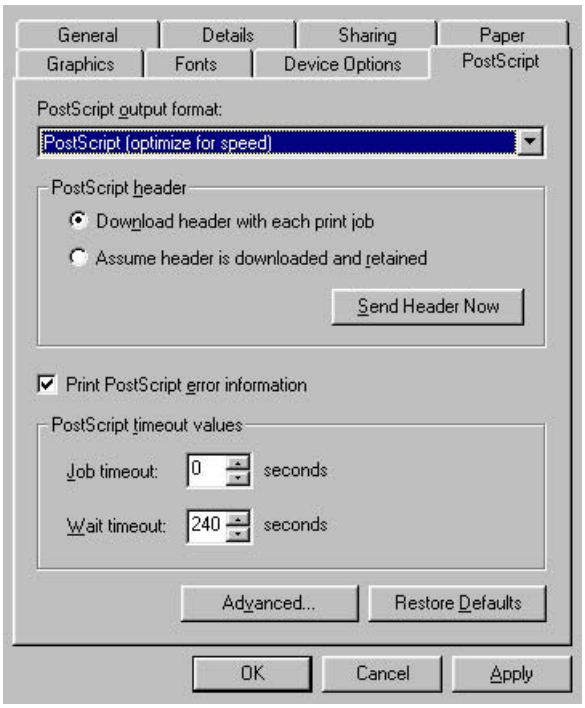


Figure 3-26 PostScript tab

PostScript output format

Specifies the format for PostScript files.

In general, use **PostScript (optimize for speed)** for printing a document.

To create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC), click **PostScript (optimize for portability - ADSC)**. Each page of the document will be a fully self-contained object. This is useful if you want to create the PostScript file and print it on a different printer.

If you want to include this file as an image in another document that will be printed from a different program, click **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**.

The **Archive format** setting creates a PostScript data stream that is stored in a file for later use. This does not take advantage of any product features.

If you have an HP printer that supports both PostScript and another printer language, you might need to click **PJL archive format** to notify the HP LaserJet all-in-one that the document is being printed in a different printer language.

PostScript header

Specifies whether to send header information to the printer each time you print a document.

If you print to a local printer, you can save printing time by sending the header information to your printer only once. However, sending header information each time you print a document is sufficient for most types of printing, and is especially recommended if you print to a shared network printer or to a file on a disk.

This setting is ignored for EPS and Archive formats.

Print PostScript error information

Specifies whether to print PostScript error messages after your document has been printed. The PostScript print driver can detect certain errors that Windows cannot. If you are having printing problems, click this option. This information might help you, a system administrator, or a product-support representative determine what caused the problem.

The error message information is not included in EPS format.

Advanced

Click the **Advanced** button for advanced PostScript options.

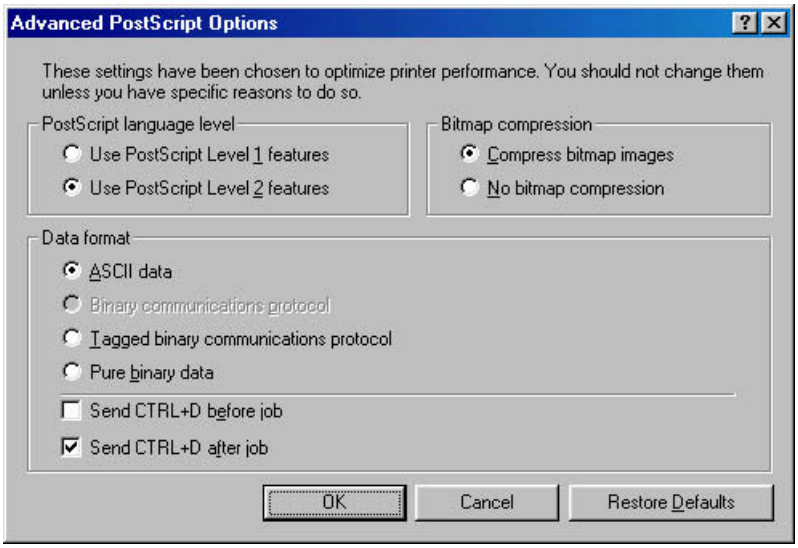


Figure 3-27 Advanced PostScript options

- **PostScript language level** specifies which level of PostScript language to use. Some printers support both level 1 and 2. If your printer supports level 2, it is probably best to use level 2.
- **Bitmap compression** specifies whether to compress graphics before sending your document to the printer. If you are using PostScript level 2, or if you are using PostScript level 1 and a printer connected to a serial port, click **Compress bitmap images**. For PostScript level 1 and a printer connected to a parallel port or a network printer, click **No bitmap compression**.
- **Data format**
  - **ACSII data** sends data in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial, parallel, or network port.

    If you select this option and you see a **Send Mode** button, click it to switch your printer to ASCII for future print jobs.
  - **Binary communication protocol** sends all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. This format can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and is faster than sending data in ASCII format. If you select this option, click **Send Mode** to switch your printer to Binary Communications Protocol (BCP) for future print jobs.
  - **Tagged binary communications protocol** sends all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. This format can be sent over parallel or serial communications ports and is faster than sending data in ASCII format.
  - **Pure binary data** sends all data in pure binary format, which is the fastest format to print but can be sent only over network cables or AppleTalk.
  - **Send CTRL+D before job** sends a CTRL+D to notify the printer that the current job has finished printing and to reset the printer. If you are printing over a UNIX-based network, such as Banyan VINES, AT&T StarGROUP, or Sun, you might need to clear these settings.
  - **Send CTRL+D after job** sends a CTRL+D to notify the printer that the current job has finished printing and to reset the printer. If you are printing over a UNIX-based network, such as Banyan VINES, AT&T StarGROUP, or Sun, you might need to clear these settings.

Restore Defaults

Click the **Restore Defaults** button to restore the settings in this dialog box to their original values.

4 HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation unidrivers for Windows

Introduction

This chapter describes the features of the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one unidrivers. The unidrivers are the HP PCL 6 Unidriver, the HP PCL 5e Unidriver, and the HP Postscript 3 Emulation Unidriver (the PS Emulation Driver) for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

You can control print jobs from several places: the product control panel, the software program, and the driver user interface. Generally, for features that are common to two or more of these places (for instance, you can select the media input tray from any of them), settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings override product control-panel settings.

This chapter includes the following information:

- Access to drivers
- Help system
- HP postscript level 3 emulation support
- Advanced tab features
- Paper/Quality tab features
- Effects tab features
- Finishing tab features
- Device Settings tab features
- About tab features

Access to drivers

To gain access to driver settings from within most software programs, click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**. The appearance and names of the driver tabs that appear can vary, depending on the operating system. These settings apply only while the software program is open.

You can also control the drivers directly from the **Printers** folder. These settings change the default settings used across all software programs. Here you have access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings that you make on these driver tabs control the print-job output.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then select **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home). Right-click the product name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** print-driver tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Services**

Properties driver tabs

To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then select **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home). Right-click the product name, and then click **Properties**. This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections.

The following **Properties** print-driver tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

The **Device Settings** and **About** tabs are HP print driver tabs and are described in this STR. The other **Properties** print-driver tabs are Windows tabs. For information about those tabs, see the documentation that came with your computer.

Help system

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product HP PCL 6, PCL 5e, and PS emulation unidrivers include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options. The following Help options are available:

- What's this? Help
- Context-sensitive Help
- Constraint messages

What's this? Help

"What's this?" Help is supported in Windows 2000 and Windows XP. You can gain access to "What's this?" Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control and click **What's this?**, and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the **?** button at the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the F1 key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Context-sensitive Help

Press the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box, and context-sensitive Help appears.

Constraint messages

Constraint messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific actions you take. These messages alert you to selections that are illogical or impossible given the capabilities of the printer or the current settings of other controls. For example, if you click **Print on Both Sides** and then change the paper type to **Transparency**, a message appears asking you to resolve this conflict.

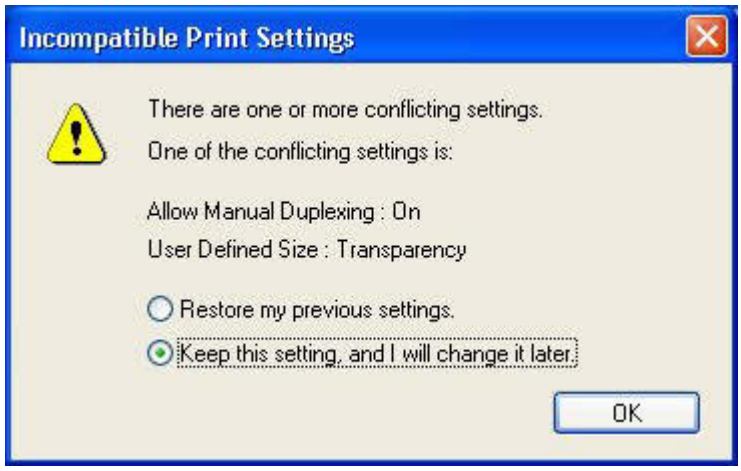


Figure 4-1 A typical constraint message

Whenever a constraint message appears with **Restore my previous settings** and **Keep this setting, and I will change it later** buttons, the action of the buttons is as follows:

- Click **Restore my previous settings** and then click **OK** to reject the change that was just made, returning the control to its previous value.
- Click **Keep this setting, and I will change it later** and then click **OK** to accept the change that was just made, allowing you to go back into the driver settings to resolve the conflict.

HP postscript level 3 emulation support

The HP postscript level 3 emulation maintains full compatibility with Adobe PS Level 3 when PS Level 3 soft fonts are purchased from Adobe.

A set of 45 PS Level 3 soft fonts is included with the printing-system software. If you want to permanently install the fonts in the printer, HP postscript level 3 emulation fonts are also available from HP in an optional font DIMM.

Users of Adobe-licensed applications might also have the right to use the Adobe PS level 3 print drivers from Adobe with the HP LaserJet printer postscript level 3 emulation PPD, available on the HP LaserJet printer software CD or from the HP Web site. When using the Adobe PS Level 3 print driver, users must comply with all Adobe licensing agreements, as stated on the Adobe Web site at www.adobe.com/support/downloads/license.html.

Advanced tab features

To gain access to the **Advanced** tab, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professions and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home). Right-click the product name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.

You can use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages. Use this tab to configure special controls that are not commonly used, as well as features such as paper size and copies, in the driver. The following illustration shows the **Advanced** tab.

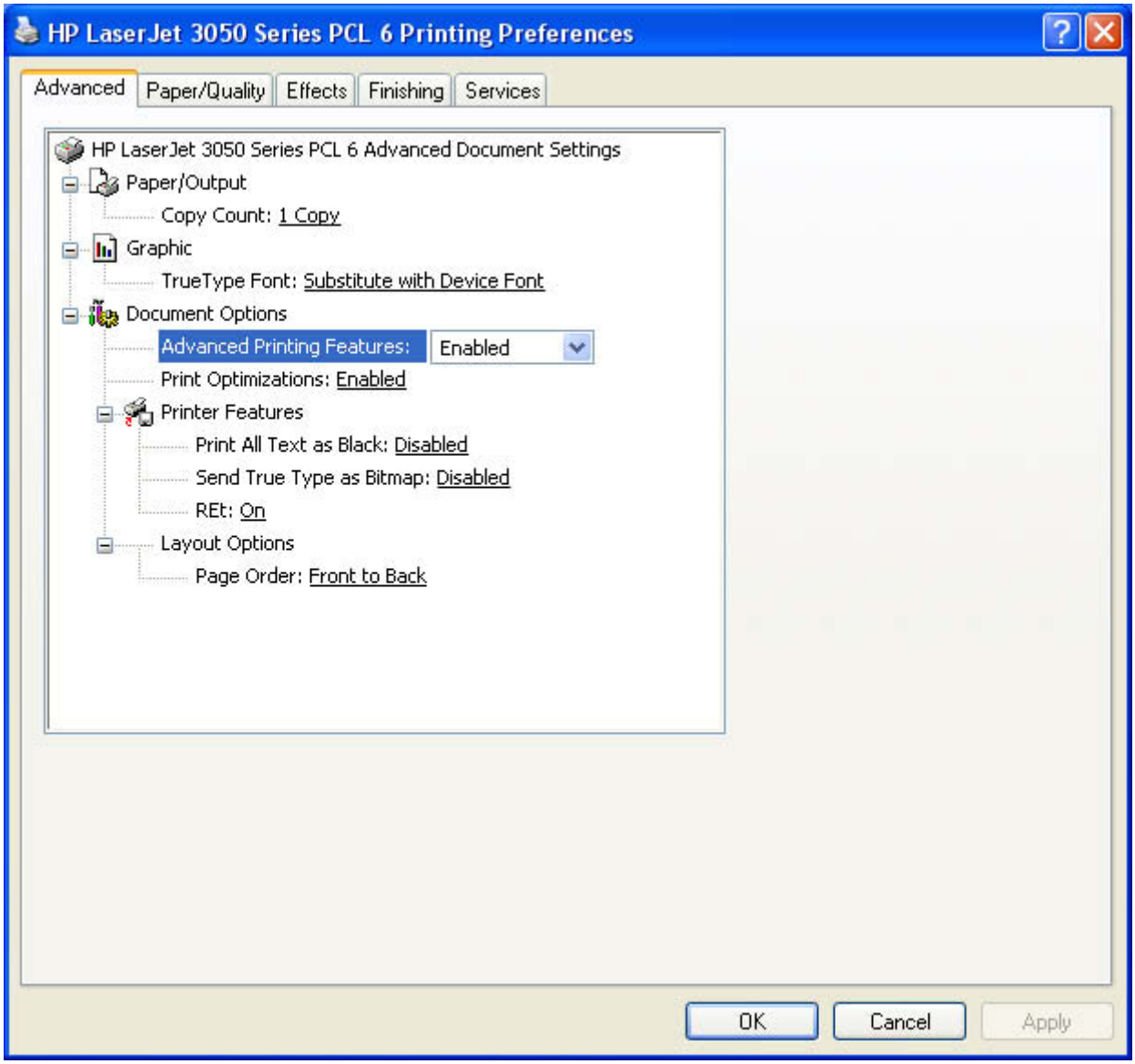


Figure 4-2 **Advanced** tab – HP PCL 6 Unidriver

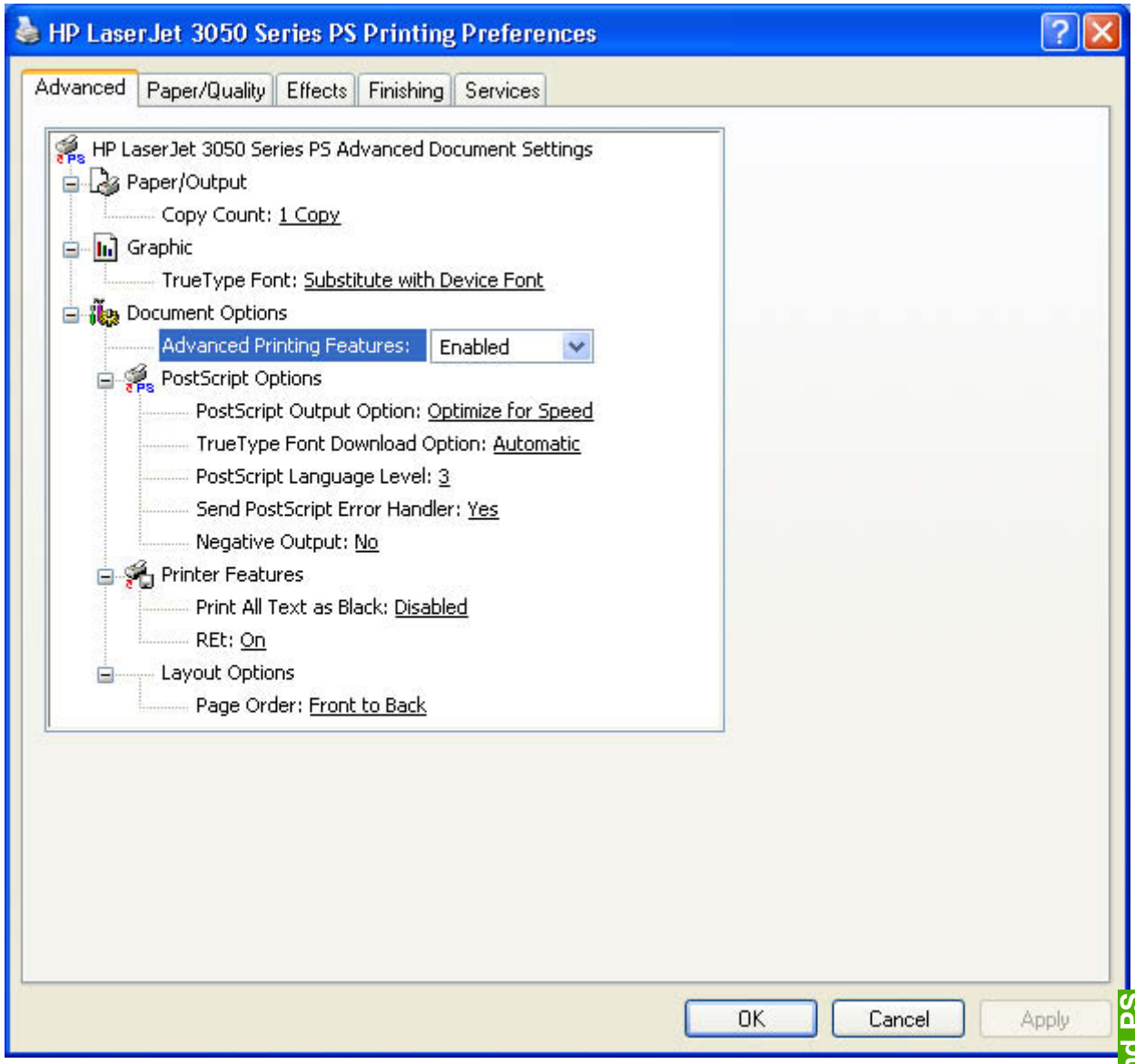


Figure 4-3 **Advanced** tab – PS Emulation Unidriver

The **Advanced** tab contains the following controls:

- Paper/Output settings
- Graphic settings
- Document Options

Paper/Output settings

The **Paper/Output** settings contain the following option:

- Copy Count setting

Copy Count setting

This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.**Copy Count** specifies the number of copies to print.

The number of copies that you request appears in the **Copy Count** option. You can select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. For the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products, valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used. When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) change to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because you can set the number of copies that you want from some software programs, conflicts can arise between the software program that you are using and the driver. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) will appear in the other (such as the driver). For some programs, this communication does not happen, and the copies values are treated independently. For these programs, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver will result in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. It is recommended that you set the number of copies in the program, wherever possible.

Graphic settings

The **Graphic** settings contain the following option:

- TrueType Font settings

TrueType Font settings

This option specifies the TrueType font settings. The following settings are available.

- **Substitute with Device Font**. This setting causes the printer to use equivalent fonts for printing documents that contain TrueType fonts. This permits faster printing; however, you might lose special characters that the printer font does not support. This is the default setting.
- **Download as Softfont**. This setting causes TrueType fonts to be downloaded and used for printing, instead of using printer fonts.

Document Options

The **Document Options** settings contain the following controls:

- Advanced Printing Features
- Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)
- PostScript Options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)
- Printer Features
- Layout Options

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on your product. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, you can disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even though they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically turned on again.

Print Optimizations (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and your document contains overlapping text and graphics, text placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, you can disable this feature. When disabled, print optimization features, such as substituting device fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

PostScript Options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

The following PostScript options appear in the PS Emulation Unidriver:

- PostScript Output Option
- TrueType Font Download option
- PostScript Language Level
- Send PostScript Error Handler
- Negative Output

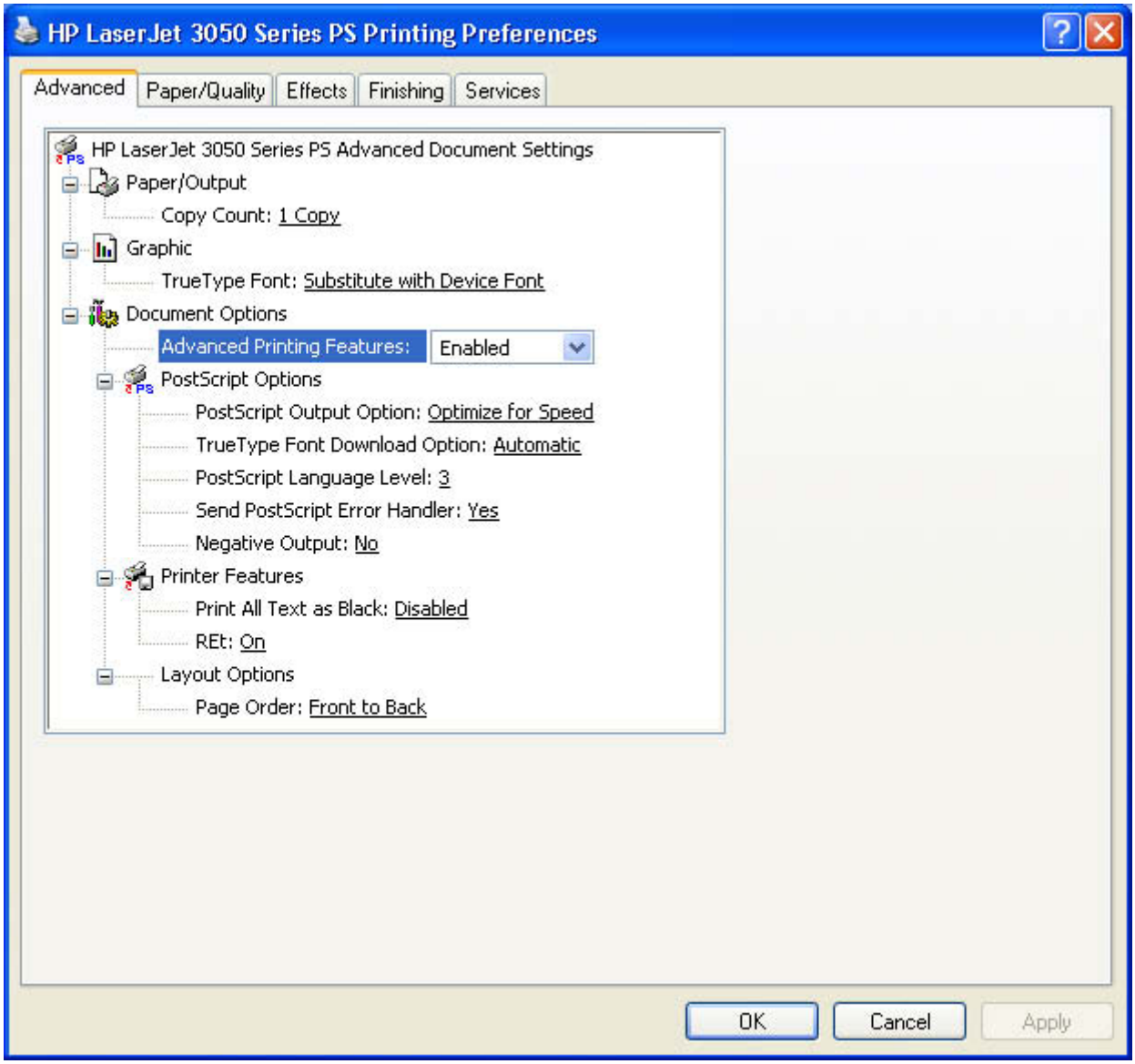


Figure 4-4 **Advanced** tab - PS Emulation Unidriver - PostScript Options

PostScript Output Option

The **PostScript Output Option** specifies the output format for PS files. Generally, you use the default setting, **Optimize for Speed**, to print your documents.

To create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC), click **Optimize for Portability**. Each page of the document will be a self-contained object. This is useful if you want to create a PS file and print it on a different product. If you want to include the file as an image in another document that is printed from a different software program, click **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**. The **Archive Format** creates a PS file that you can use later.

TrueType Font Download option

The **TrueType Font Download Option** specifies how TrueType fonts are downloaded. The default setting of **Automatic** allows the PS driver to decide which format is best. If you want to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font, click **Outline**. To download the TrueType font as a bitmap font,

click **Bitmap**. If your product is a TrueType rasterizer printer, click **Native TrueType** to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

PostScript Language Level

The **PostScript Language Level** option specifies which PS language level to use, from 1 to 3. The highest level supported by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products is 3, and this is the default setting. Some printers support multiple levels.

It is usually best to select the highest number available, because a higher language level provides more features. In some instances you should use level 1, such as when you are printing a file to disk, and that file will be printed by someone who uses a level-1 printer.

Send PostScript Error Handler

The **Send PostScript Error Handler** setting specifies whether a PS error-handler message is sent. If you want the printer to print an error page when an error occurs in the print job, click **Yes**. The default setting is **Yes**.

Negative Output

This control specifies negative output. Click **Yes** to print a mirror image of your document by reversing the values for black and white. The default setting is **No**.

Printer Features

The following **Printer Features** are available:

- Print All Text as Black
- Send TrueType as Bitmap (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)
- REt (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)

Print All Text as Black

The **Print All Text as Black** feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.**Print All Text as Black** remains enabled only for the current print job. When the current print job is completed, **Print All Text as Black** is automatically disabled.

Send TrueType as Bitmap (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)

Send True Type as Bitmap provides an alternative for those software programs that encounter problems when using TrueType fonts for special graphic purposes such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are first converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the printer as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

REt (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)

Resolution Enhancement technology (REt) refines the print quality of characters by smoothing out jagged edges that can occur on the angles and curves of a printed image. It is **On** by default. Select **Off** if graphics, particularly scanned images, are not printing clearly.

Layout Options

The **Layout Options** section includes the following option:

- **Page Order**

Page Order

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of your document are printed. **Front to Back** prints the document so that page 1 prints first. **Back to Front** prints the document so that page 1 prints last. The **Back to Front** setting is useful if you are printing to a face-up output bin to achieve output in the correct order.

NOTE The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if you set **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Paper/Quality tab features

To gain access to the **Paper/Quality** tab, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professions and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home). Right-click the product name, and then click **Printing Preferences**.

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the media for your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product. You can also use this tab to indicate different paper-selection choices for the first page, other pages, and back cover of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

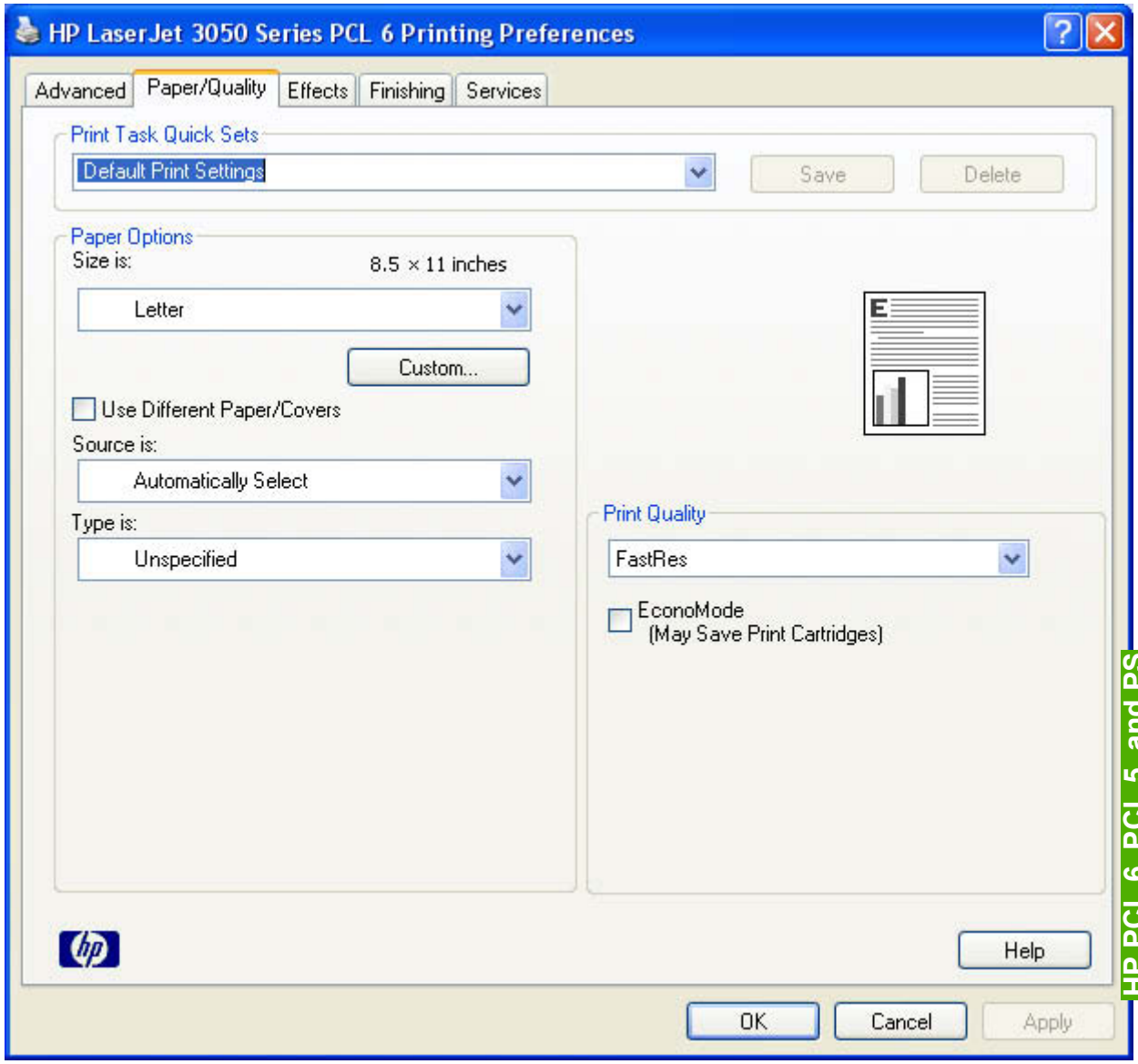


Figure 4-5 **Paper/Quality** tab

The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following controls:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Paper Options group box

- Document preview image
- Print Quality group box

Print Task Quick Sets

The first group box in the upper portion of the **Paper/Quality** tab is **Print Task Quick Sets**. Any change to the **Print Task Quick Sets** group box that is made on the **Paper/Quality** tab affects most of the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Effects**, **Finishing**, and **Job Storage** tabs) because they are all the same control.

Use **Print Task Quick Sets** to store the current combination of driver settings (except the settings on the **Advanced** tab). Print Task Quick Sets are either preset by network-administrator settings or user-defined printing specifications (such as media size, pages per sheet, and so on). The **Print Task Quick Sets** setting does *not* appear on the driver **Properties** tabs.

The following selections are available in the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down menu:

- **Default Print Settings**
- **User Guide Print Settings**
- **Type a new Quick Set name here**

Default Print Settings

When you select **Default Print Settings**, nearly all of the settings are restored to the combination that existed after the driver was installed (the original settings). However, if the attribute combinations that are associated with watermark definitions, custom paper sizes, or the **User Guide Print Settings** quick set have been changed or deleted, the original settings are not restored.

Type a new Quick Set name here appears in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu automatically if no other driver settings have been changed since the driver was installed, or if all of the driver settings match the original settings. Otherwise, the setting in the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is the same label that appeared when you last closed the printing **Properties** dialog box by clicking **OK**.

User Guide Print Settings

The **User Guide Print Settings** option provides a **Print Task Quick Sets** for optimal printing of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

Type new Quick Set name here

By default, the **Print Task Quick Sets** menu is set to **Type new Quick Set name here**. When you change any of the default settings on any of the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs and you want to save the configuration as a Print Task Quick Set, highlight the words **Type new Quick Set name here**, type the name you want for your new Print Task Quick Set, and then click **Save**. Print Task Quick Sets are saved in the system registry. To delete a Print Task Quick Set, select it from the drop-down menu and click **Delete**.

NOTE Administrators can predefine Print Task Quick Sets for their users. These administrator Print Task Quick Sets are defined on the server and are available to users, but usually cannot be modified by users. Users can also define Print Task Quick Sets for their own use. User-defined Print Task Quick Sets are described later in this section.

You can store a maximum of 25 **Print Task Quick Sets** on a particular system. If you attempt to save too many, a message box appears that reads, "There are too many Print Task Quick Sets defined. Please delete some before adding new ones."

Paper Options group box

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following illustration shows the **Paper Options** group box and the selections available by default.

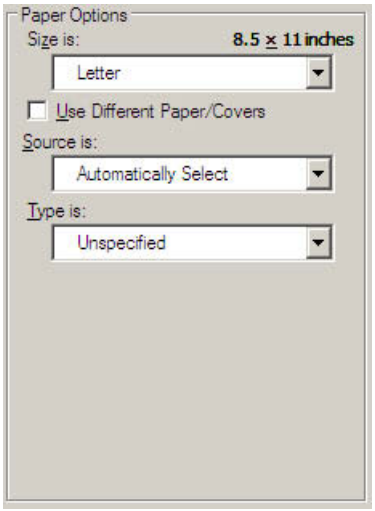


Figure 4-6 **Paper Options** group box

The appearance of the **Paper Options** group box changes when the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box is selected. The following settings in the **Paper Options** group box are available:

- Size is:
- Use Different Paper/Covers check box
- Source Is: drop-down menu
- Type is: drop-down menu
- Use Different Paper/Covers options

Size is:

The **Size is:** setting is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported media sizes.

You can specify size for all the settings in the **Paper Options** group box. You must use the same size of media for the entire print job. That is, if the print job uses Letter-size media, any option that you select from the available **Use Different Paper** options must also use Letter-size media.

NOTE Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different media sizes within a single document.

For the **Other Pages** and **Back Cover** settings, you can select a source (tray) and media type that differ from the settings selected for **First Page**. If a conflict exists among media source, media size, and/or media type, and you choose to keep the conflicting settings, the settings are processed in the following order: media size, media type, and then media source.

Because driver settings are overridden by media-size settings in most software programs, it is generally best to use the driver to set media size only for software programs that lack a media-size setting, such as NotePad, or when you are producing a book or a booklet that does not require different media sizes.

NOTE When you use a software program with a media-size setting, you can specify different media sizes within a single document by using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options. For more information, see Use Different Paper/Covers options.

For information about media sizes, see the Media types and sizes section of this STR.

To create a custom paper size, click **Start**, select **Settings**, and then select **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP or Windows Server 2003). Click the **File** menu, click **Server Properties**, and then select the **Create a new form** check box. Specify a name and dimensions for your paper size, and then click the **Save Form** button. This new paper size will be included in any list of paper sizes in the driver and application tabs. The print dialogs for various software programs also often have settings that allow you to create custom paper sizes.

Use Different Paper/Covers check box

When the **Use Different Paper** check box is selected and different options are configured, the **Size is:**, **Source is:**, and **Type is:** menus change, offering a variety of options. For more information, see Use Different Paper/Covers check box.

Source Is: drop-down menu

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the printer accessories. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Source is:** drop-down menu can contain the following options:

- **Automatically select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1** (125-sheet multipurpose tray)
- **Tray 2** (250-sheet tray)
- **Tray 3** (250-sheet tray; HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one products only)

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this setting is selected, the printer uses the source tray that supports the media size that you have selected. If you select a source tray other than **Automatically select**, make sure that the correct media size is loaded in the source tray.

For information about media sources, see the Media types and sizes section of this guide.

Type is: drop-down menu

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all the paper types that the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products support. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default media type, which is usually **Plain**.

The following standard paper types appear in the lists.

Table 4-1 Standard paper types and engine speeds

Paper type	Engine speed
Unspecified	
Plain	Full
Preprinted	Full
Letterhead	Full
Transparency	1/4 speed
Prepunched	Full
Labels	1/2 speed
Bond	Full
Recycled	Full
Color	Full
Cardstock (105 to 176 g/m^2 or 43 to 47 lb.)	1/2 speed
Rough	
HP Multipurpose Paper	
HP Office Paper	
HP LaserJet all-in-one Printing Paper	
HP LaserJet Paper	
HP Premium Choice LaserJet Paper	
Heavy (90 to 105 g/m^2)	Full
Envelope	Full
Light (< 75 g/m^2)	Full
Vellum	

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the media type. If you select a different setting, make sure the correct media type is loaded in the tray that you selected in the **Source is:** setting.

For more information about media types, see the Media types and sizes section of this guide.

Use Different Paper/Covers options

You can print books that include different media types by using the **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

When you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box, the following settings can appear in the group box, along with associated options:

- **Front Cover**
- **First Page**
- **Other Pages**

- **Last Page**
- **Back Cover**

To use **Use Different Paper/Covers** options, you must configure the setting for the print job. Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the sections that follow this procedure. Use the following instructions to configure the setting.

To configure the Use Different Paper/Covers options for a print job

For each option, you can set a different tray using the **Source Is:** drop-down menu. For some options, the **Type is:** drop-down menu is also available.

1. To use different paper or cover stock, select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box. A list of options appears in the dialog box. The full set of selections is visible when you use the down arrow button to the right of the list to scroll.
2. To use different media for the pages within the print job, select the appropriate option (**Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, or **Back Cover**) in the dialog box. A check mark appears to the left of the option when you change a setting using the **Source is:** or **Type is:** drop-down menus.
3. Click **OK** to print.

NOTE You must use the same size of media for the entire print job. All options that you select from the available **Use Different Paper/Covers** options use the size selected in the **First Page** settings.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings you select remain configured until you close the application software.

Each option for the **Use Different Paper/Covers** setting is described in the following sections, in the order they appear in the pane below the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box.

Front Cover and Back Cover options

Use these options to include a blank or preprinted front cover or back cover on a document.

The following illustration shows the **Front Cover** setting and options. These options are the same for the **Back Cover** setting.

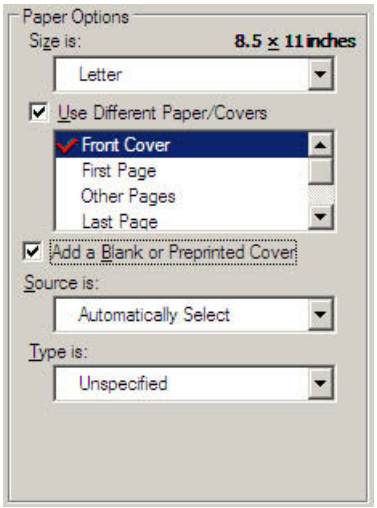


Figure 4-7 Front Cover setting

The **Front Cover** and **Back Cover** options are as follows:

- **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

When you select **Front Cover** or **Back Cover**, you must also select the **Add a Blank or Preprinted Cover** check box to enable the setting. When you select this check box, the **Source is:** and **Type is:** drop-down menus become available and a check mark appears next to the **Back Cover** option.

NOTE The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. For two-page-per-sheet (2-up) booklet printing, you can obtain a cover by selecting different media for the first page only. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would otherwise be printed in the middle of a booklet.

The **Source is:** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the printer accessories. Any optional media trays that are installed through the **Configure** tab also appear here. For more information about the **Source is:** setting, see the Source Is: drop-down menu section of this chapter.

The **Type is:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the printer supports. For more information about the **Type is:** drop-down menu settings, see the **Type is:** in the Type is: drop-down menu section of this chapter.

First Page, Other Pages, and Last Page options

Use these options to select an alternative media size, type, or source for the first page, other pages, or last page of a document. The following illustration shows the appearance of the **Paper Options** group box when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box.

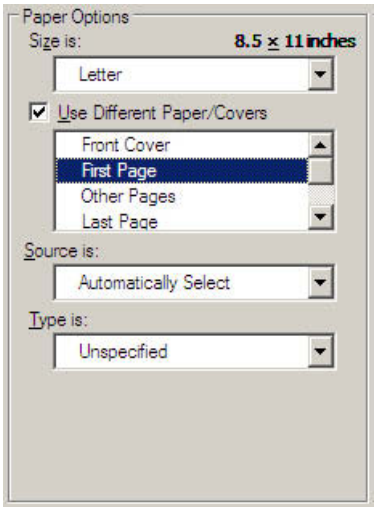


Figure 4-8 **First Page**, **Other Pages**, and **Last Page** options

The **First Page**, **Other Pages**, and **Last Page** options are as follows:

- **Size is:** drop-down menu
- **Source is:** drop-down menu
- **Type is:** drop-down menu

The **Size is:** driver setting for the first page applies to the entire print job. When this is set, the setting becomes unavailable for all the other **Use Different Paper/Covers** options.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of the **Finishing**, **Effects**, and **Paper/ Quality** tabs.

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Print Quality group box

The **Print Quality** group box contains the **Print Quality** drop-down box and the **EconoMode** check box.

The default setting for **Print Quality** is **FastRes** for theHP PCL 6 Unidriver and **600 dpi** for the HP PCL 5e Unidriver and the PS Emulation Unidriver.

This setting controls resolution, which refers to the number of lines per inch (lpi) used to print the page. As resolution is increased, the quality (clarity and visual appeal) of print on the page is improved. However, higher resolution might also result in longer printing times. The following **Print Quality** options are available in the drop-down box:

- **ProRes 1200 (132 lpi)**
- **ProRes 1200 (170 lpi)**
- **FastRes**
- **600 dpi**

The **EconoMode** check box can be selected in conjunction with any of the print quality settings. When you select EconoMode, the product uses less toner on each page. Using this option might extend the life of your print cartridge and can lower the cost per page, but the option also reduces print quality. Using the EconoMode feature with non-HP print cartridges can result in toner spillage or printer damage.

Effects tab features

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks. The following illustration shows the **Effects** tab.

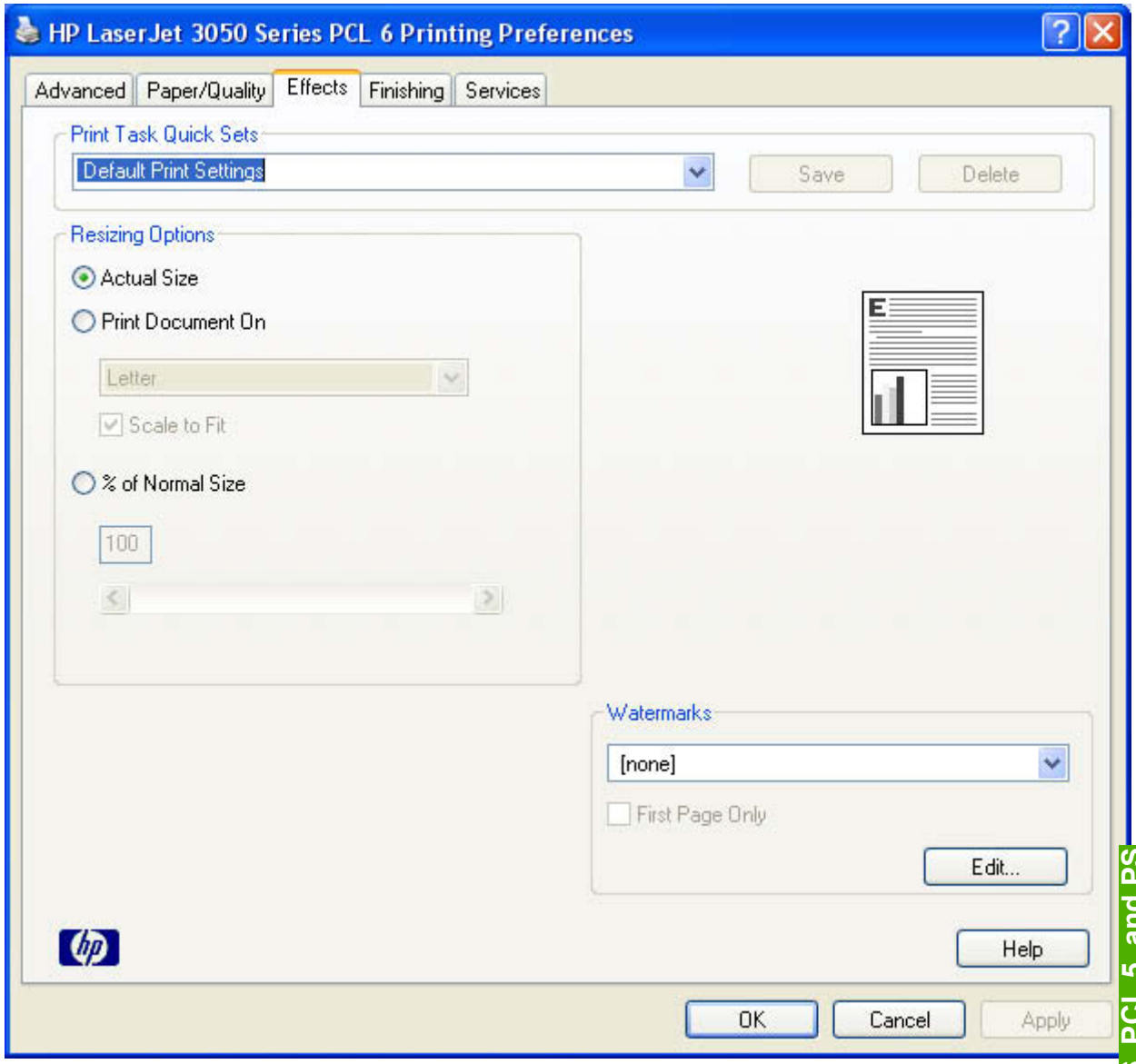


Figure 4-9 **Effects** tab

The **Effects** tab contains the following controls:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Resizing Options group box
- Document preview image
- Watermarks group box

Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see Print Task Quick Sets in the **Paper/Quality** tab section of this STR.

Resizing Options group box

The **Resizing Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Actual Size** (default)
- **Print Document On** setting
- **Scale to Fit** option
- **% of Normal Size** setting

Actual Size setting

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On setting

Select the **Print Document On** option button to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- The **% of Normal Size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per Sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the media sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard media sizes that are supported by the selected media source and any custom sizes that you have created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected.

Scale to Fit option

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following illustration shows preview images for a document that is formatted for legal-size paper and where the **Print Document On** check box is selected, and the target size is specified as **Letter**.

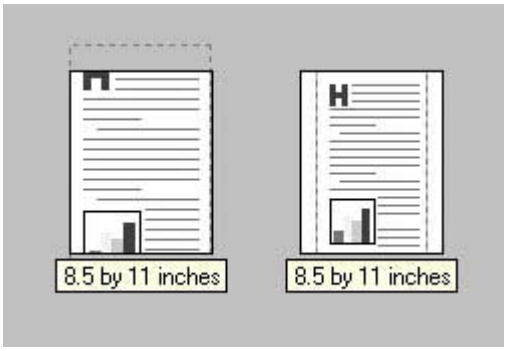


Figure 4-10 Preview images - Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)

When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

% of Normal Size option

The **% of Normal Size** option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of normal size. Normal size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upper-left corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the scroll bar indicator is dragged, and the preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the scroll bar arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

You cannot achieve an exact value by dragging the scroll bar indicator at the default Windows resolution; use the scroll bar indicator to approximate the appropriate value, and then use the scroll bar arrows to refine the value.

The following settings disable **% of Normal Size**:

- **Print Document On** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected
- **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of most **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Finishing**, **Effects** and **Color** tabs).

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the document preview image.

Watermarks group box

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create your own custom watermarks (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system, plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit**, and the **Watermark Details** dialog box appears.

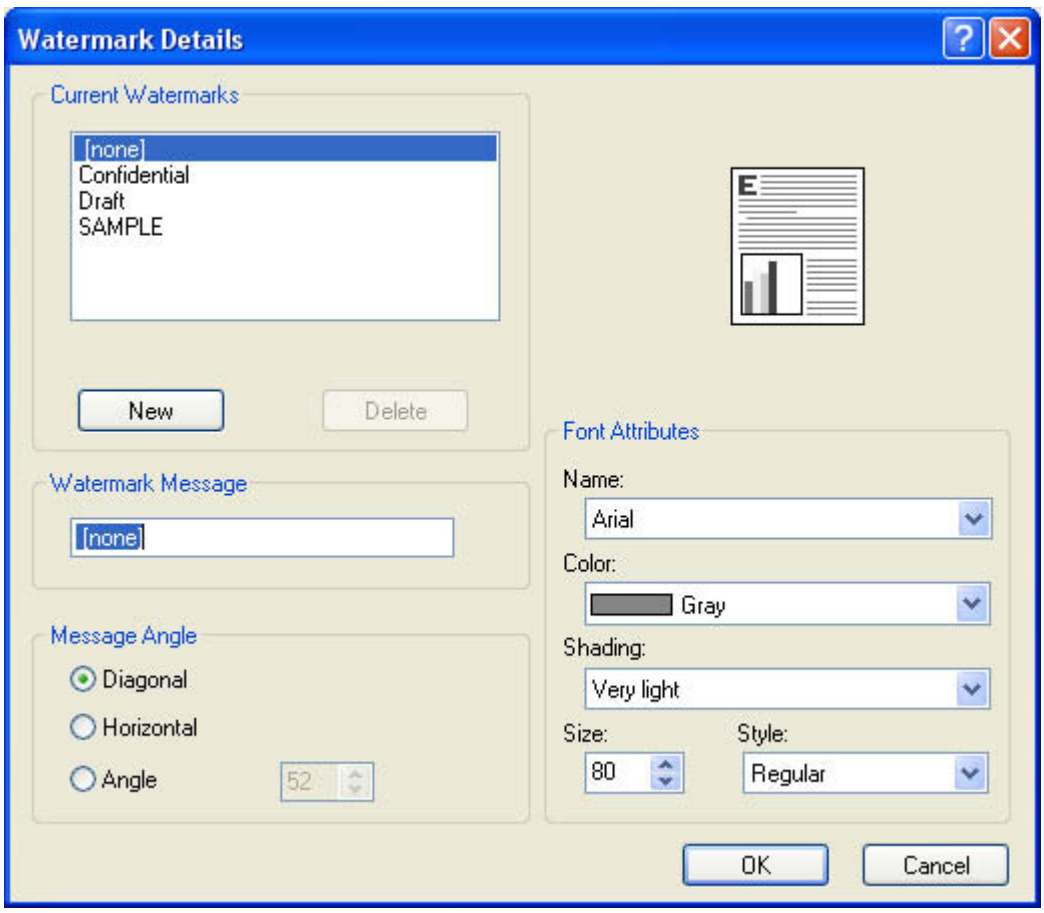


Figure 4-11 **Watermark Details** dialog box

The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes made to the previous watermark are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current Watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that you have created.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "Untitled" until you name it. The name that you type in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box. To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. A warning appears asking whether you are sure you want to delete the selected item. Click **Cancel** if you want to keep the watermark. Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

NOTE You can have no more that 30 watermarks in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When you reach the limit of 30 watermarks, the **New** button is disabled. The **(none)** setting is one of the 30 definable watermarks; you can customize names for the other 29 watermarks.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. If you change the **Watermark Message** for that watermark, you are, in effect, creating a new watermark.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, you might want several different watermarks with the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations in relation to the page's text. The settings are **Diagonal**, **Horizontal**, or **Angle** (custom). The default is **Diagonal**. All three settings automatically center the watermark string within the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement.**Diagonal** places the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.**Horizontal** places the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page. **Angle** places the text at the specified angle across the page.

Font Attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following controls:

- **Name** drop-down menu
- **Color** drop-down menu
- **Shading** drop-down menu
- **Size** spin box
- **Style** drop-down menu

Name

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

Color

The **Color** drop-down menu provides a fixed, unalterable set of color choices, in palette/color name-pair form, for the watermark. The triplet values for these colors are shown in the following table.

Table 4-2 Watermark color values

Setting	Gray	Red	Yellow	Green	Cyan	Blue	Magenta
Lightest	255	255	255	232	232	232	255
	255	232	255	255	255	232	232
	255	232	232	232	2552	255	255
Very Light	224	255	255	224	224	224	255
	224	224	255	255	255	224	224
	224	224	224	224	255	255	255
Light	192	255	255	192	192	192	255
	192	192	255	255	255	192	192
	192	192	192	192	255	255	255
Med Light	160	255	255	160	160	160	255
	160	160	255	255	255	160	160
	160	160	160	160	255	255	255
Medium	128	255	255	128	128	128	255
	128	128	255	255	255	128	128
	128	128	128	128	255	255	255
Med Dark	96	255	255	96	96	96	255
	96	96	255	255	255	96	96
	96	96	96	96	255	255	255
Dark	64	255	255	64	64	64	255
		64	255	255	255	64	64

Table 4-2 Watermark color values (continued)

Setting	Gray	Red	Yellow	Green	Cyan	Blue	Magenta
	64	64	64	64	255	255	255
	64						
Very Dark	32	255	255	32	32	32	255
	32	32	255	255	255	32	32
	32	32	32	32	255	255	255
Darkest	0	255	255	0	0	0	255
	0	0	255	255	255	0	0
	0	0	0	0	255	255	255

Shading

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light** (default)
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. A choice of **Light** produces a lightly saturated gray watermark. A choice of **Lightest** produces the lightest shade of watermark; **Darkest** produces a black watermark.

Size

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is language-dependent. The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu.

Style

The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu. The default **Style** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Regular**.

Default settings

The default settings for new watermarks are **Arial** font, **Gray** color, **Very Light** shading, **80** points, and **Regular** style. The default settings for preset watermarks are **Arial** font, **Very Light** shading, and **Bold** style. The default point size for preset watermarks is language-dependent, and varies.

Finishing tab features

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the media output. The following illustration shows the **Finishing** tab.

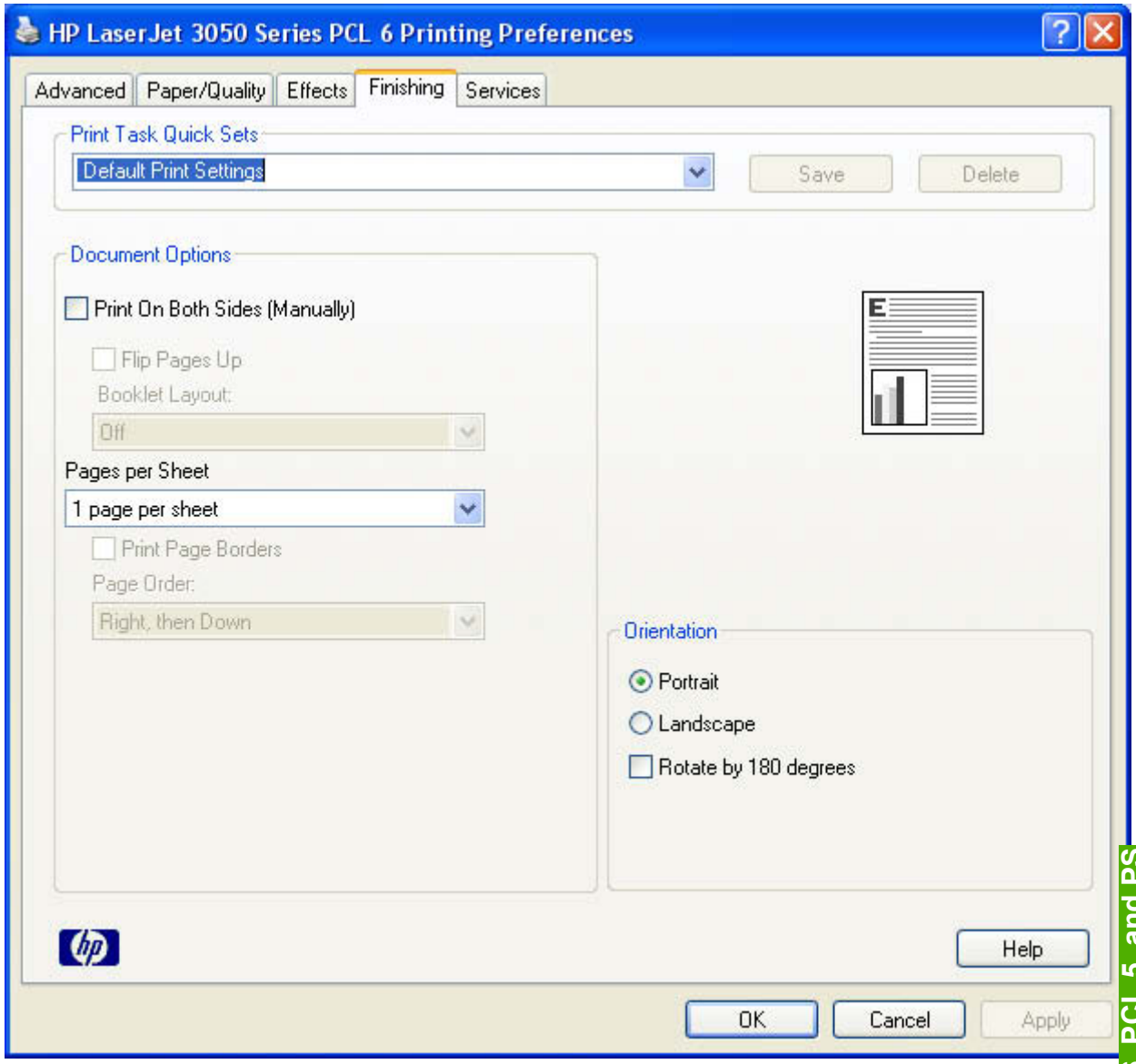


Figure 4-12 **Finishing** tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver

The **Finishing** tab contains the following controls:

- Print Task Quick Sets
- Document Options
- Document preview image
- Orientation group box

Print Task Quick Sets

Use the **Print Task Quick Sets** control to store the current combination of driver settings that are found on all other **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. Print task quick sets are either preset or user-defined printing specifications, such as paper size and pages per sheet. For more information, see Print Task Quick Sets in the **Paper/Quality** tab section of this STR.

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls.

- **Correct Order for Straight Paper Path**
- **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)
- **Flip Pages Up** option (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)
- **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu (HP PCL 6 Unidriver only)
- **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu
- **Print Page Borders** check box
- **Page Order** drop-down menu

Correct Order for Straight Paper Path check box

When you print on heavier media such as cardstock, select the **Correct Order for Straight Paper Path** check box to minimize curl and avoid jams. Open the back cover on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products to allow the paper to exit the product in a straight path. For best results, feed the media into the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products from tray 1.

Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box

The default setting for the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option is off (not selected). Selecting **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** makes the **Flip Pages Up** and **Booklet Printing** options available.

Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055 all-in-one)

To manually print on both sides of the paper, you must send the paper through the printer twice. You can print by using the media output bin or the straight-through output path. HP recommends that you use the media output bin for lightweight paper and use the straight-through output path for any heavy media or media that curls excessively when printed.

Follow these steps to print on both sides manually:

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
   - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up, bottom-edge leading first.
   - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, and the top edge toward the back of the tray.
2. In the print driver, select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option and send the job to print.
3. After the job finishes printing, remove any blank paper from tray 1.

4. Gather the printed pages, keep the printed side facing down, and straighten the stack.

5. Place the stack of media in tray 1again. The printed side should be facing down with the top edge feeding into the all-in-one first.

6. On the computer screen, click **OK** and then wait for the second side to print.

Manually printing on both sides (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one)

To manually print on both sides of the paper, you must send the paper through the printer twice. You can print by using the media output bin or the straight-through output path. HP recommends that you use the media output bin for lightweight paper and use the straight-through output path for any heavy media or media that curls excessively when printed.

Follow these steps to print on both sides manually:

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:

   - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up, bottom-edge leading first.
   - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, and the top edge toward the back of the tray.

2. In the print driver, select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** option and send the job to print.

3. After the job finishes printing, remove any blank paper from tray 1. Insert the printed stack into the tray that is specified on the HP LaserJet all-in-one control panel. Load the paper with the printed side up, and the bottom-edge feeding into the all-in-one first. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears before feeding the output stack for printing the second half of the job.

4. Press Enter to continue printing.

Flip Pages Up

Select the **Flip Pages Up** check box, which is enabled only when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is *not* selected. The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this box, depending on the paper orientation that you select on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Printing** drop-down menu is **Off**.

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

When you select **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. If you change the **Pages per Sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet, the booklet setting is disabled. See the Printing a Booklet section of this chapter for more information.

The **Booklet Layout** setting is disabled when A6 or B6 (JIS) is selected as the media size, and an incompatibility error message appears when you click **OK** to close the driver.

Book and booklet printing

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products support book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages that can have a different media type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, and **Back Cover** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab (available when you select the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box) to select different media for these pages.

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the media type. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Printing a Booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet.

1. Click **File**, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**.
2. Click the **Finishing** tab and select the **Print on Both Sides** check box.
3. In the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want (for example, **Right Edge Binding**).
4. Click **OK** in the print driver.
5. Click **OK** in the **Print** dialog box to print.

Printing a book

You can print a book in which the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover are printed on different media types. For more information, see the Paper/Quality tab features section of this chapter.

Pages per Sheet

Use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages that you want to print on a single sheet of media. If you choose to print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are

arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- 1 page per sheet (this is the default)
- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

NOTE When you select an option other than **2 pages per sheet**, booklet printing is unavailable.

Print Page Borders

Related controls indented beneath the **Pages per Sheet** edit box are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

Page Order

The **Page Order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect alterations in these settings, as shown by the examples in the following illustration.

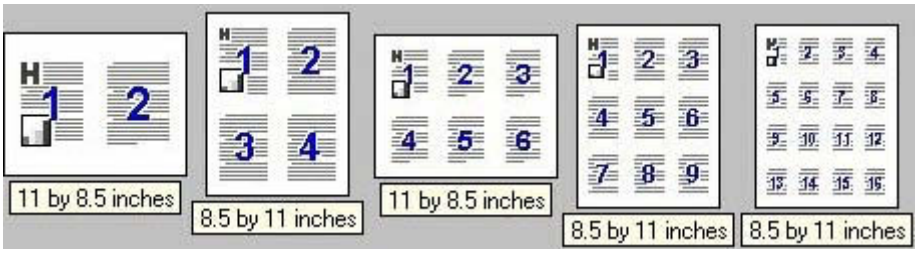


Figure 4-13 Page-order preview images

- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**

- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up. The document preview image appears in the upper-right corner of most **Printing Preferences** driver tabs (the **Paper/Quality**, **Effects**, and **Finishing** tabs).

Switching between tabs does not change the location or appearance of the document preview image. When you move the mouse over the document preview image, the mouse cursor changes from an arrow to a gloved hand. You can toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the document preview image.

Orientation group box

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait** option button
- **Landscape** option button
- **Rotate 180 degrees** check box

Portrait option button

Select this feature to print your document in **Portrait** orientation. This is the default setting.

Landscape option button

Select this feature to print your document in **Landscape** orientation.

Rotate by 180 degrees check box

Select this feature to rotate the document image on the paper 180°. For example: If the return address on an envelope is smudged, try using this setting and feed the envelope so that the return address area is fed into the product first.

Device Settings tab features

The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for media-handling devices and controls for managing the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products.

Various options are available on the **Device Settings** tab depending on whether you are using the HP PCL 6 Unidriver or the PS Emulation Unidriver. The following illustrations show the **Device Settings** tab for each of these drivers.

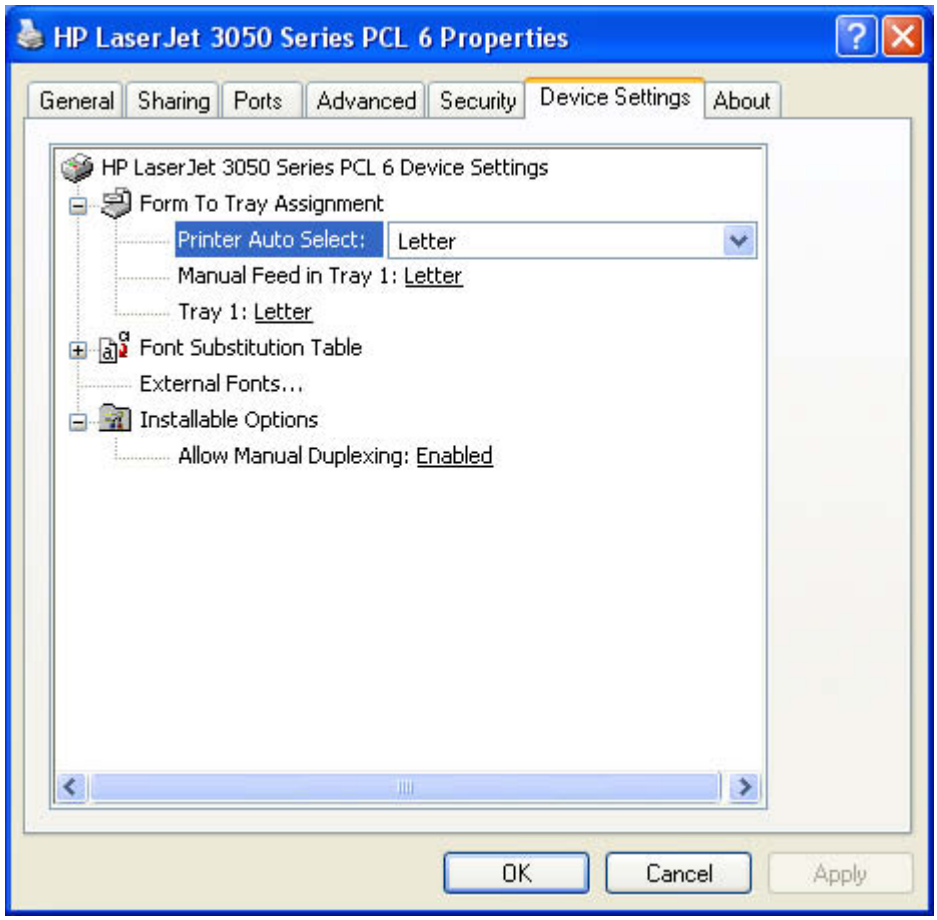


Figure 4-14 **Device Settings** tab - HP PCL 6 Unidriver

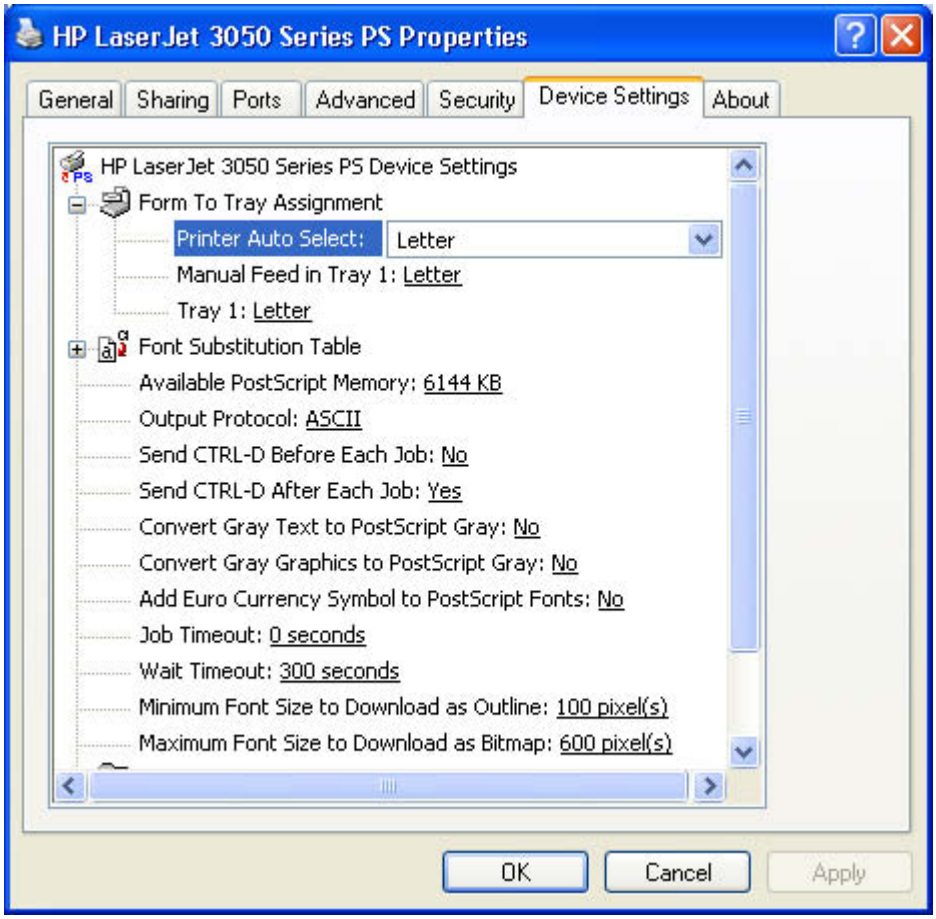


Figure 4-15 **Device Settings** tab - PS Emulation Unidriver

The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- **Form to Tray Assignment** options
- **Font Substitution Table** options
- **Installable Options** options

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the media size in each input tray.

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products support more than one source of media. You can assign a form (which defines the media size and margins) to each of your printer media sources. When a form is matched to a source, you can select the form when you print. The product prints from the tray to which that form is assigned.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the media size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the media-size list on the **Advanced** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tab set. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the printer with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting. For

example, for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products, tray 2 is listed in both the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting and the **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting are also listed as media sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the media size (form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable your settings, or, if necessary, click the **Cancel** button to reconfigure all the trays, and remove the size and type constraints that you have specified on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Clicking this option opens the **Font Substitution Table** and makes available the options for changing the TrueType-to-PostScript font mapping. The following illustration shows the **Device Settings** tab with the **Font Substitution Table** open.

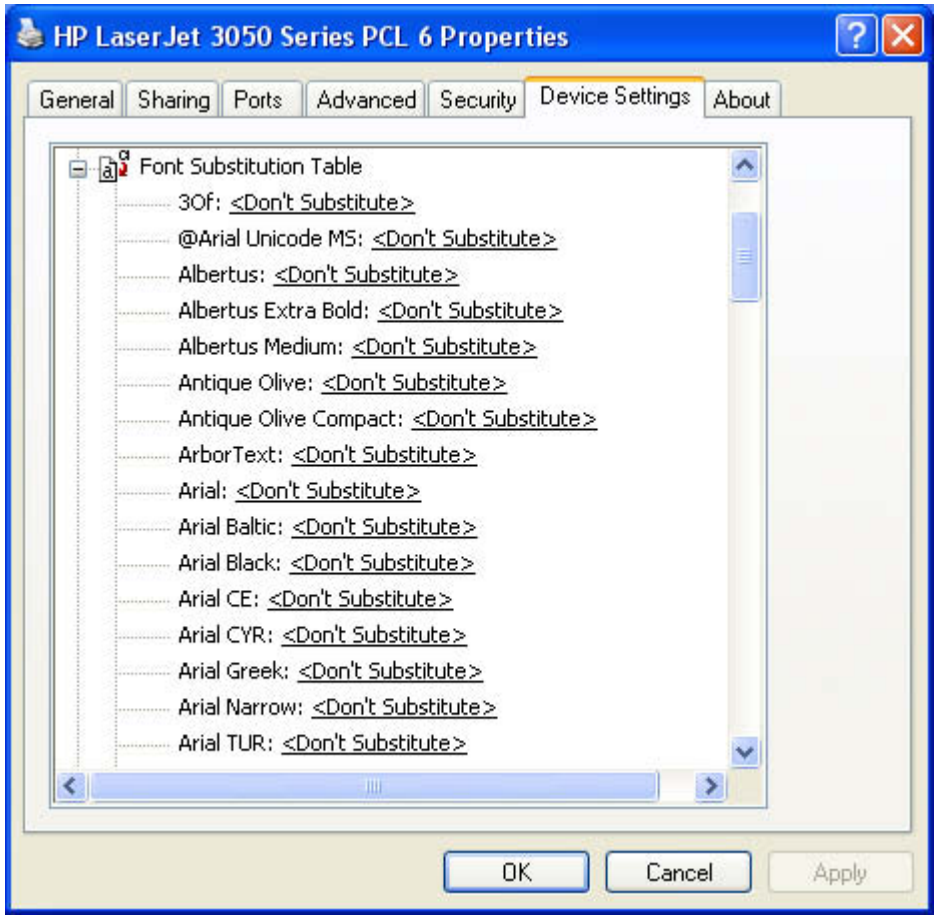


Figure 4-16 Font Substitution Table

Installable Options

This section provides information to configure the printing options that you can install for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products. The following controls are available:

- **Tray 2**
- **Allow Manual Duplexing**
- **Printer Memory**
- **PostScript Passthrough** (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

Tray 2

This control specifies whether you have an additional 250-sheet **Tray 2** installed on your printer. The default setting is **Not Installed**. In order to use **Tray 2**, you must change this setting to **Installed**.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Use this setting to allow printing on both sides of a page using manual two-sided printing.

Printer Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the printer. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the printer can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the print driver uses the printer memory.

PostScript Passthrough (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

PostScript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. This option provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a PostScript driver.

Options such as watermarks, n-up printing, and booklet printing might not print correctly from some software programs when PostScript Passthrough is enabled because such programs send PostScript information to the printer that the driver cannot control. Other software programs might print using these options without problems.

If you encounter problems while printing, select **Disabled** and print your document again. In some cases, disabling PostScript Passthrough might cause unexpected behavior in the software program.

Additional Device Settings options (PS Emulation Unidriver only)

In addition to these options, the **Device Settings** tab for the PS Emulation Unidriver also includes the following options:

- **Available PostScript Memory** options
- **Output Protocol** options
- **Send CTRL-D Before Each Job** options
- **Send CTRL-D After Each Job** options
- **Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray** options
- **Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray** options

- **Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts** options
- **Job Timeout** options
- **Wait Timeout** options
- **Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline** options
- **Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline** options

Available PostScript Memory

This option specifies the amount of available PS memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available PS memory is a subset of the product's total physical memory. The default PS memory setting for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products is 2048 KB. It is usually best to set the PS memory to match what is shown on the configuration page. To print a configuration page from the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product control panel, follow these steps:

1. At the product control panel, press Menu.
2. Press the < or > button to scroll to **Reports** and then press Enter.
3. Press the < or > button to scroll to **Config Report** and then press Enter.

Output Protocol

This option specifies the protocol that the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product uses for print jobs. The following options are available.

- **ASCII** (default)
- **TBCP**
- **Binary**

When you click **ASCII**, data is sent in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a USB or network port.

When you click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol), all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over USB or serial communications ports at a faster rate than by sending data in ASCII format.

When you click **Binary**, all data except special control characters is sent in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over USB communications ports at a faster rate than by sending data in ASCII format.

Send CTRL-D Before Each Job

This option specifies whether the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products will be reset at the beginning of every .PS document. The default setting is **No**. Ctrl-D resets the printer to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the printer is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a printer connected through a USB port, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send CTRL-D After Each Job

This option specifies whether the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products will be reset at the end of every .PS document. The default setting is **Yes**. Ctrl-D resets the product to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the printer is connected through a network. If your document fails to print when sent to a network printer, change **Yes** to **No**.

Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This option specifies whether to convert the true gray (RGB value) in text to the gray that the PS Emulation Unidriver provides. The default setting is **No**.

Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This option specifies whether to convert the true gray (RGB value) in graphics to the gray that the PS Emulation Unidriver provides. The default setting is **No**.

Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This option specifies whether to augment the device fonts with the euro character. The default setting is **Yes**.

Job Timeout

This option specifies how long the document can take to get from the computer to the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one before the product stops trying to print the document. If you specify 0 seconds, the product continues trying to print indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767** seconds.

Wait Timeout

This option specifies how long the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product waits to get more PS information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the printer stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. If you are trying to print a very complicated document, you might want to increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the printer waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This option specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the HP PCL 6 Unidriver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. A font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. The default setting is **100 pixels**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 pixels**.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Outline

This option specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the HP PCL 6 Unidriver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. A font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab on the **Printing Preferences** tab set. The default setting is **600 pixels**. You can use the spin box to change this value to a maximum of **32,767 pixels**.

About tab features

The **About** tab provides detailed information about the driver. It contains an overall build number (in parentheses after the model name) along with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one model number, driver, date, and version numbers. The **About** tab is shown in the following illustration.

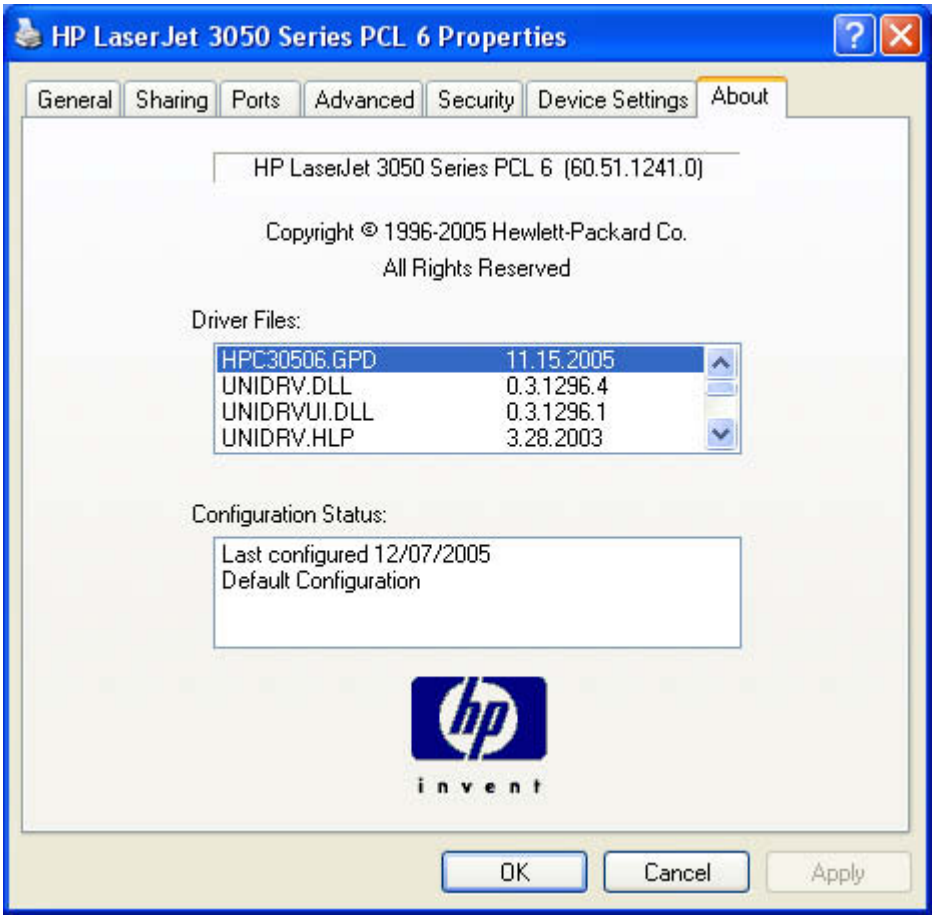


Figure 4-17 About tab

The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

5 The HP ToolboxFX

This section provides information about the following topics:

- Overview of the HP ToolboxFX
- Key features
- The HP ToolboxFX folders
- Other screens

Overview of the HP ToolboxFX

NOTE The HP ToolboxFX is available for Windows 2000 and Windows XP operating systems only.

The HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products use V1.0 of the HP ToolboxFX. There are many differences between the HP ToolboxFX and previous versions of the HP Toolbox.

Use the HP ToolboxFX software program to communicate with and manage your HP LaserJet all-in-one. The HP ToolboxFX provides the following capabilities:

- Check the HP LaserJet all-in-one status.
- Receive alert messages for error conditions on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products.
- Configure the HP LaserJet all-in-one settings.
- View troubleshooting information.
- View online documentation.
- Access the following HP LaserJet all-in-one software functionality:
  - Fax Receive to PC
  - Fax Phone Book
  - Fax Send and Receive Logs

You can view HP ToolboxFX when the HP LaserJet all-in-one is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to the network. You must perform a Typical installation to install HP ToolboxFX.

Starting the HP ToolboxFX

Open HP ToolboxFX in one of these ways:

- Double-click the **HP ToolboxFX** icon in your Windows system tray or on your desktop.

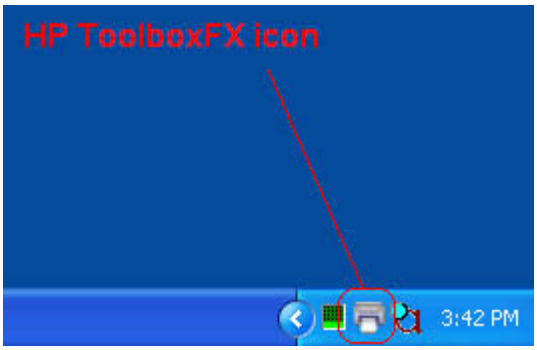


Figure 5-1 HP ToolboxFX – Windows system tray icon

- Click **Start**, select **Programs** or **All Programs**, select **HP**, select **HP LaserJet 3050, 3052, 3055, 3390, 3392**, and then click **HP ToolboxFX**.

Structure

HP ToolboxFX contains two main sections: the Devices section and the main content section. The Devices section lists all devices that HP ToolboxFX is monitoring. Expand the folder structure under the device that you want to view information about or change settings on. Click on the information or device settings sub-folder to gain access to that screen, which appears in the main content section. In addition to these two sections, the HP ToolboxFX has an Other Links section as well as other pages that are accessible from various points within HP ToolboxFX.

Key features

This section provides information about the following topics:

- Receive faxes to this computer
- Receive Alert messages for device events

Receive faxes to this computer

This feature of the HP ToolboxFX allows you to receive incoming faxes to the computer, rather than printing them or forwarding them to another fax number.

NOTE If the host computer is turned off or disconnected from the HP LaserJet all-in-one when a fax is received, the fax is stored on the all-in-one until the host computer is turned on and reconnected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Laptop users must shut down and disconnect the computer instead of undocking from a docking station. Laptop users cannot receive faxes when the laptop is undocked or not connected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one. The HP LaserJet All-in-One stores the received faxes until the laptop is turned on and reconnected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Follow these steps to enable the **Receive faxes to this computer** feature.

1. Open the HP ToolboxFX.
2. Navigate to the **Fax Tasks** page under the **Fax** folder.
3. On the **Fax Tasks** screen, select the **Receive faxes to this computer** option, and then click **Apply**.
4. Incoming faxes are uploaded to the computer where you can view them from the **Fax Receive Log** screen. If your computer is turned off when faxes arrive, they are stored in the HP LaserJet all-in-one memory and are automatically uploaded to your computer when you turn it on again.

NOTE The **Receive faxes to this computer** option can only be set for one computer at a time. If a computer has enabled the **Receive faxes to this computer** option, then that option is not available for any other computers.

The **Fax Tasks** screen also contains the **Display a message when a fax is received to this computer.** option. Select this option and then click **Apply** to receive a pop-up message when a fax is uploaded to the computer. You can view the fax by clicking **View fax**.

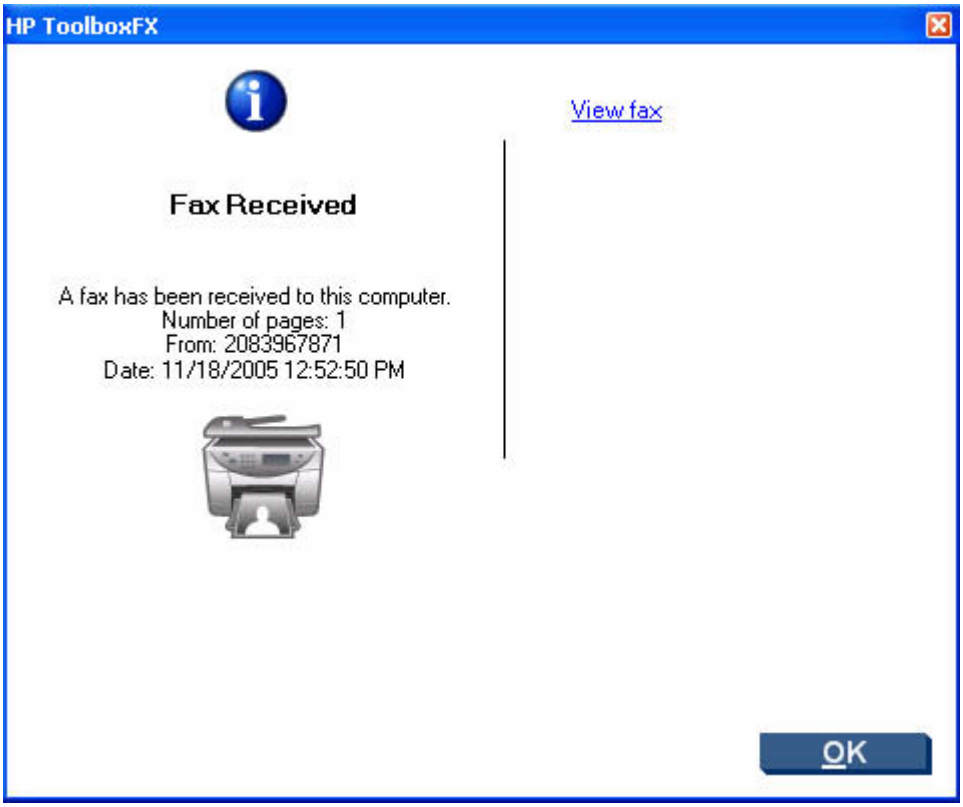


Figure 5-2 HP ToolboxFX – Fax Received pop-up message

Receive Alert messages for device events

By using HP ToolboxFX, you can be alerted when certain events occur at the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products. You can receive pop-up dialogs (Status Alerts) or automatically generated e-mail messages (E-mail Alerts) for certain events. In addition, alerts are shown as a taskbar icon or as a desktop message. Some of the alert events include:

- Cartridge low (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)
- Replace cartridge (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)
- Non-HP or unauthorized supply installed (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)
- Close door
- Paper out
- Paper jam
- Manual feed
- Device errors (such as insufficient memory)

For status alerts, a group of errors or a group of print-cartridge warnings can be selected, but not specific items within those groups. To configure alerts, use the **Set up Status Alerts** screen in the **Alerts** folder in HP ToolboxFX.

The following alert messages are available:

- HP Device pop-up alert messages

- System-tray icon alert
- Desktop alert
- E-mail alert

HP Device pop-up alert messages

Pop-up alert messages notify you immediately when an error or print-cartridge warning occurs in the device. An error, such as a paper jam, halts device operation and requires correction before the device continues operation. The alert condition can be corrected at any time. Alerts are sent only to the specific computer that is used to print to the device. This feature is provided through HP ToolboxFX and is turned on by default.

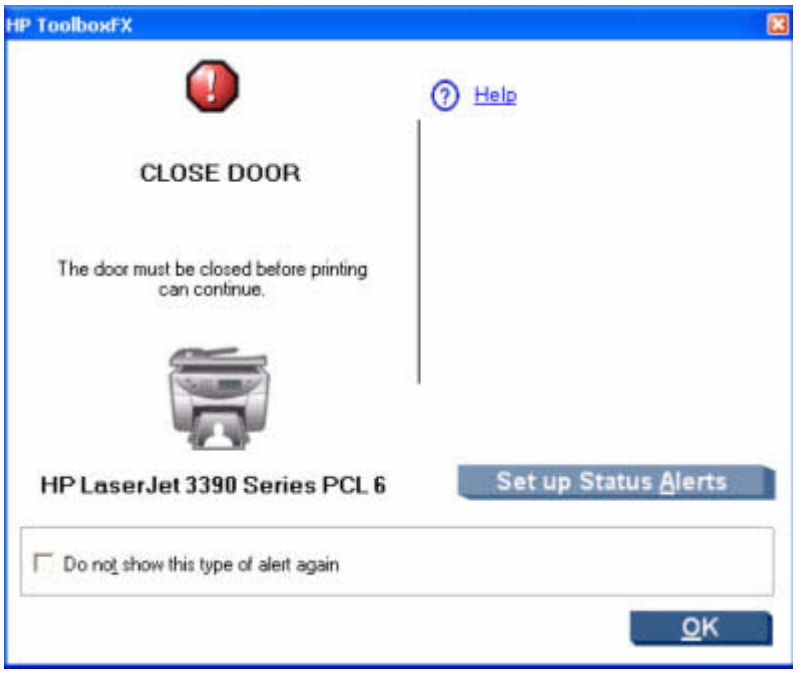


Figure 5-3 HP Device Alert – CLOSE DOOR pop-up message

System-tray icon alert

The system-tray icon feature shows information about all of the current alert conditions for the device. An **HP Device Alert** icon appears in the Windows system tray when an alert condition occurs. This feature is provided through HP ToolboxFX and is turned on by default.

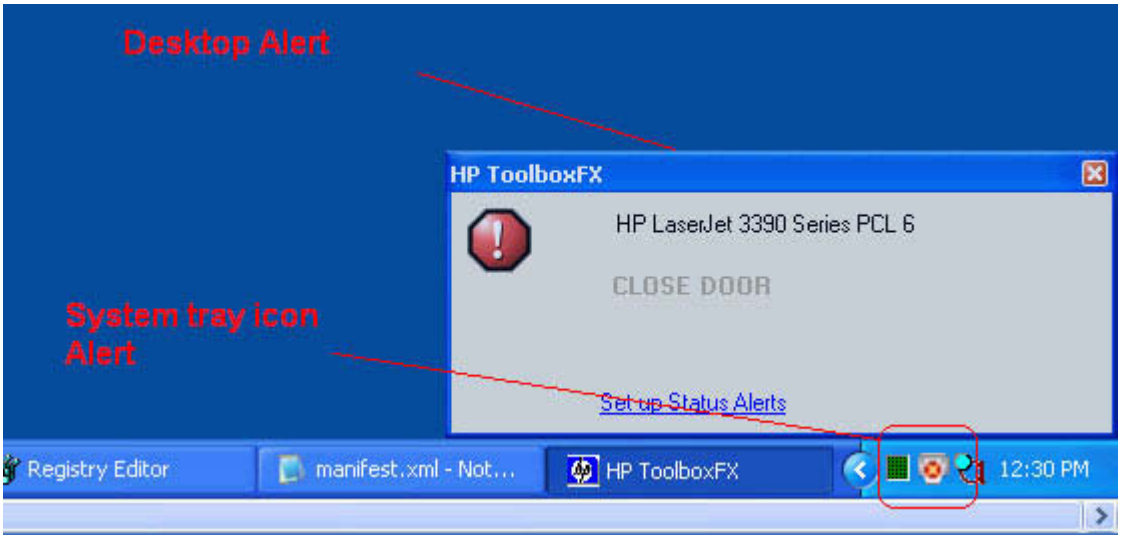


Figure 5-4 HP Device Alert – CLOSE DOOR System Tray and Desktop pop-up message

Desktop alert

Desktop alert messages notify you immediately when an error or print-cartridge warning occurs in the device. Desktop alerts only appear for a few seconds, and then automatically disappear. This feature is provided through HP ToolboxFX and is turned off by default.

E-mail alert

E-mail alert messages notify up to two users when a specific alert condition occurs in the device. The alert condition can be a specific error alert or print-cartridge warning. This feature can be used to alert administrators or service providers that the device requires attention. For instance, when the toner low alert occurs, the person in charge of ordering print cartridges can be notified by e-mail.

This feature is provided through HP ToolboxFX and is turned off by default. To use this feature, you must set up your e-mail address, select the events for which you want notification, configure the SNMP e-mail server, and enable the feature in HP ToolboxFX.

The HP ToolboxFX folders

The HP ToolboxFX folders section describes the following folders:

- Status folder
- Alerts folder
- Fax folder
- Help folder
- System Settings folder
- Print Settings folder
- Network Settings folder

Status folder

The **Status** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- Device Status
- Supplies Status (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)
- Device Configuration
- Network Configuration
- Print Info Pages
- Event Log

Device Status

The **Device Status** screen shows device status messages from the product.

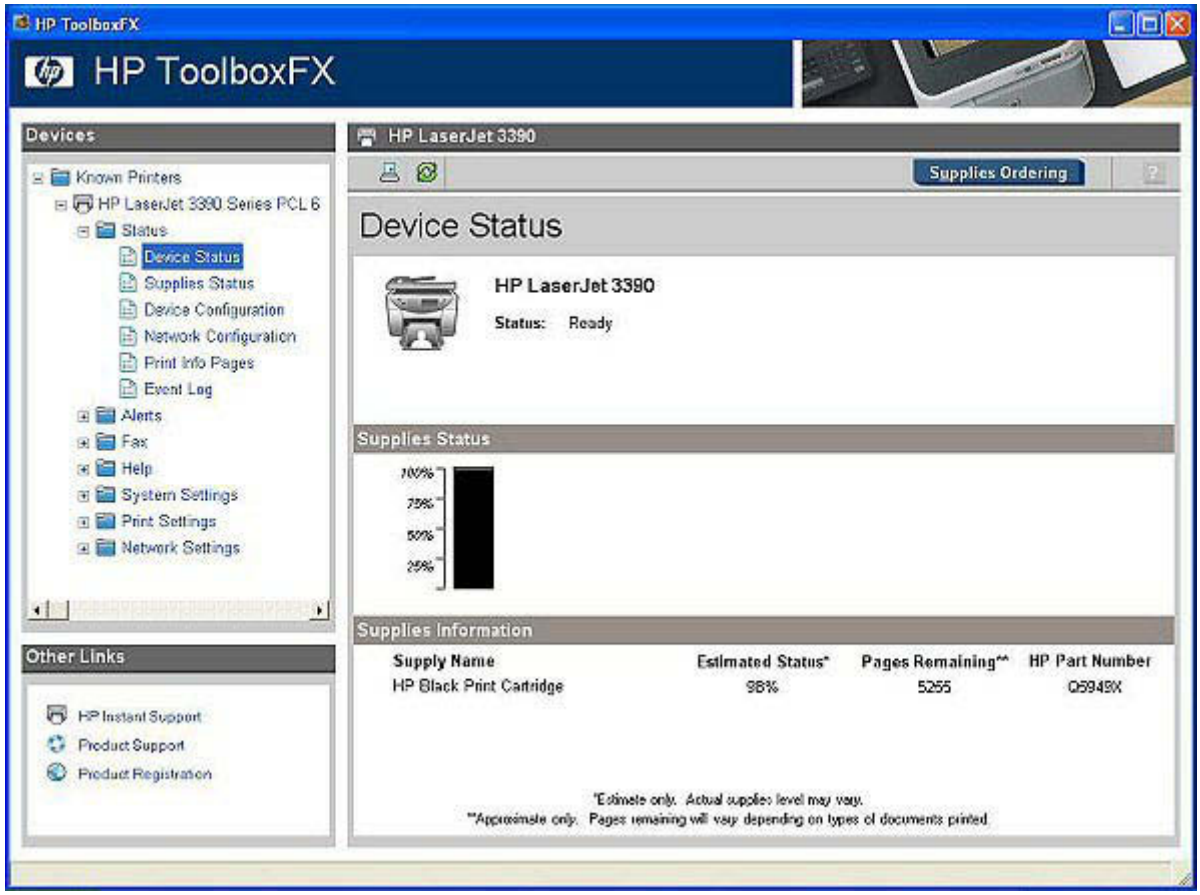


Figure 5-5 **Device Status** screen

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one products include a Supplies Status section and a Supplies Information section on the **Device Status** screen which provide information about the estimated toner level, the approximate pages remaining based on the estimated toner level, and the HP part number for easy reference when ordering new consumables.. These sections are not available for the HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one and the HP LaserJet 3052/3055 all-in-one.

Supplies Status (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)

The **Supplies Status** screen provides detailed information about the black print cartridge. This information is not available if a non-HP cartridge is installed in the product.

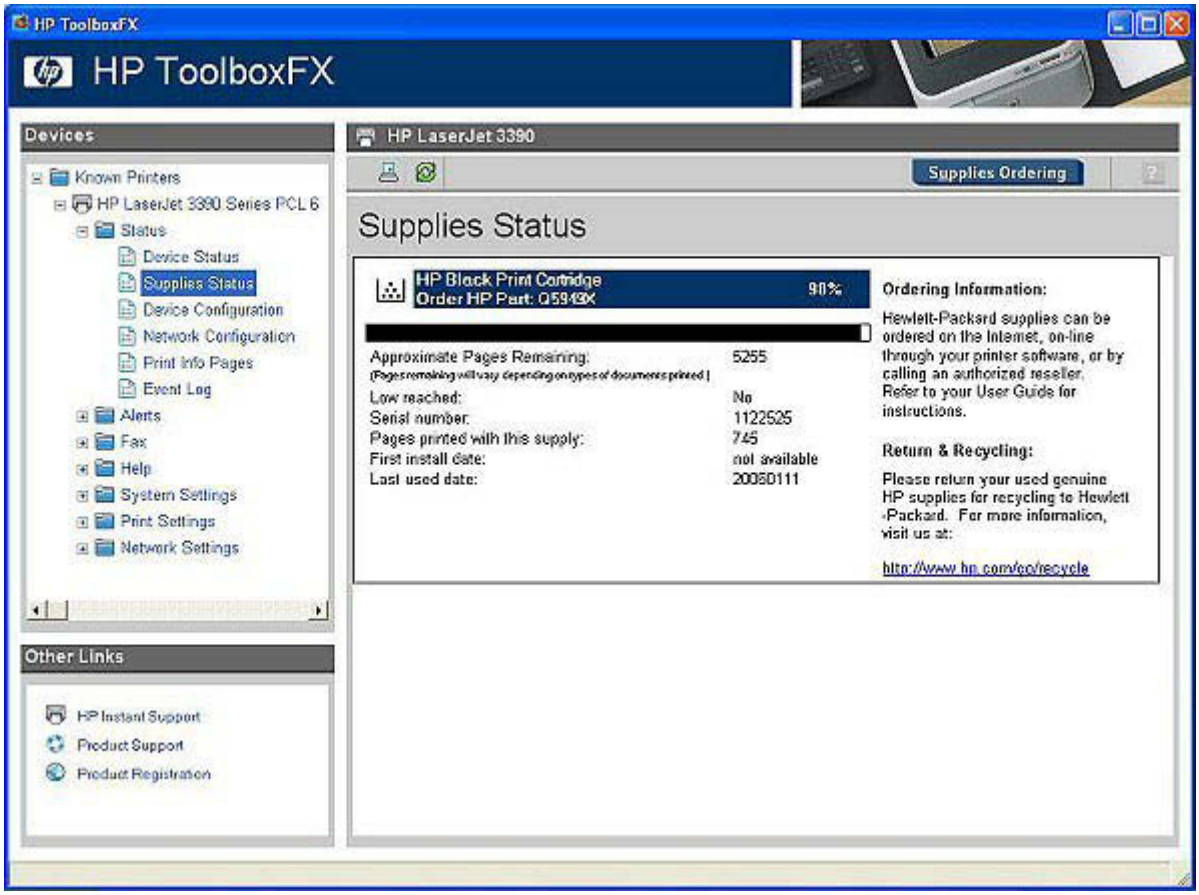


Figure 5-6 **Supplies Status** screen

Device Configuration

The **Device Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the settings available for the product and other configuration items, such as installed DIMMs, personalities, and page counts. The contents of this screen should be consistent with the configuration page that the product generates.

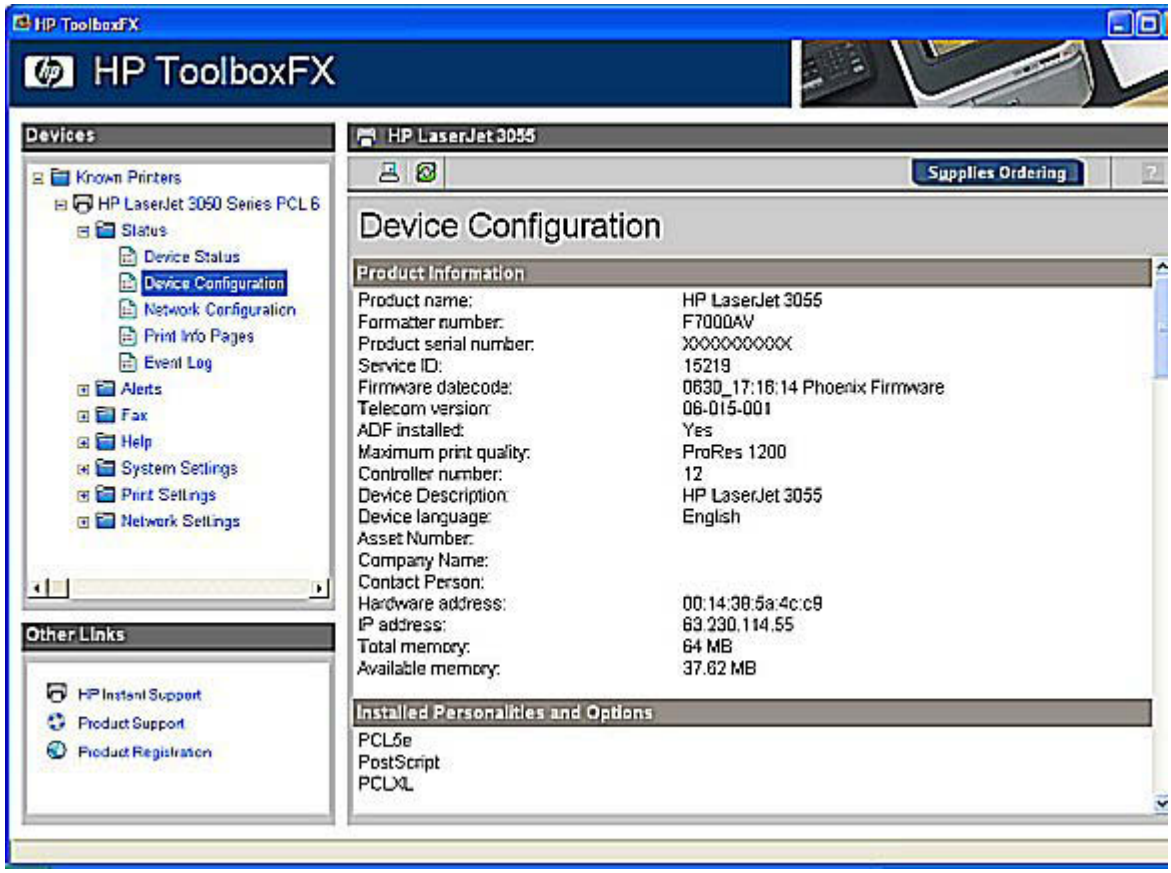


Figure 5-7 **Device Configuration** screen – 1 of 5

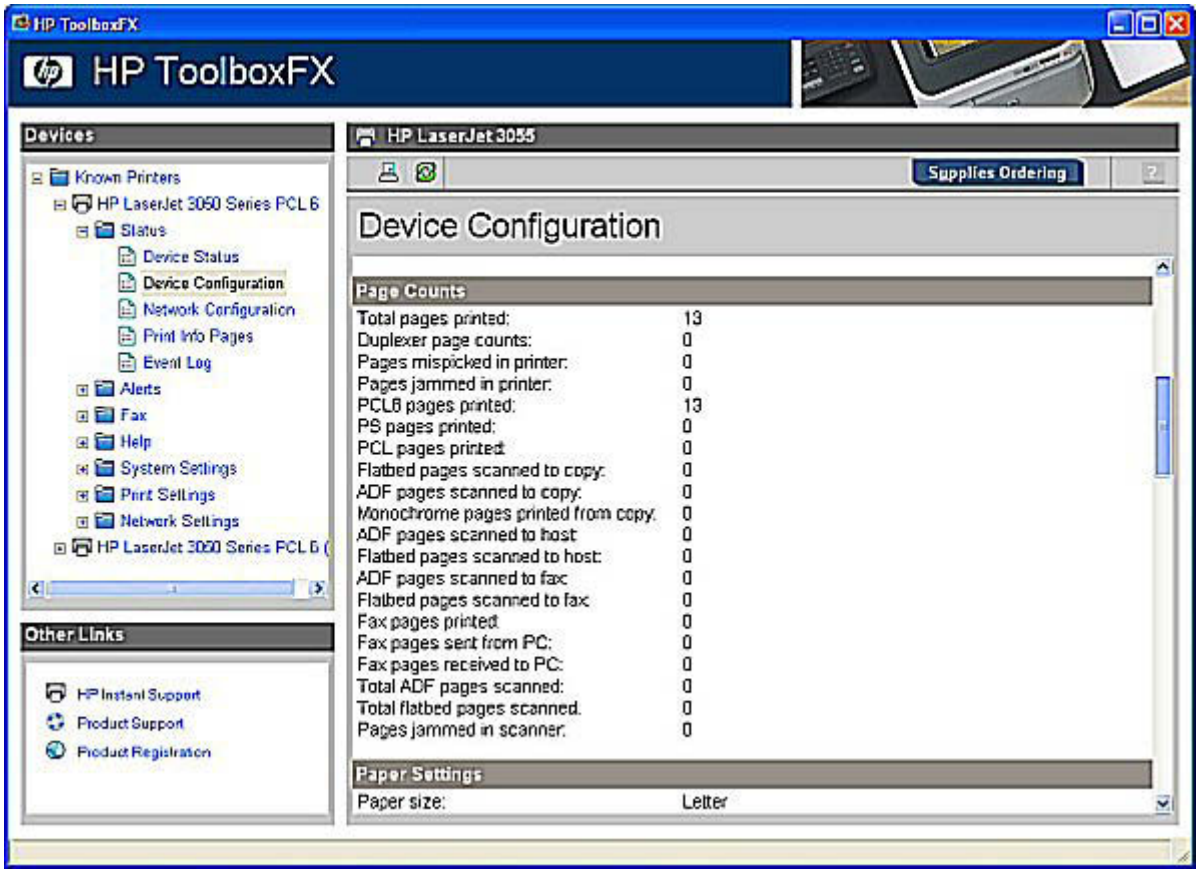


Figure 5-8 **Device Configuration** screen – 2 of 5

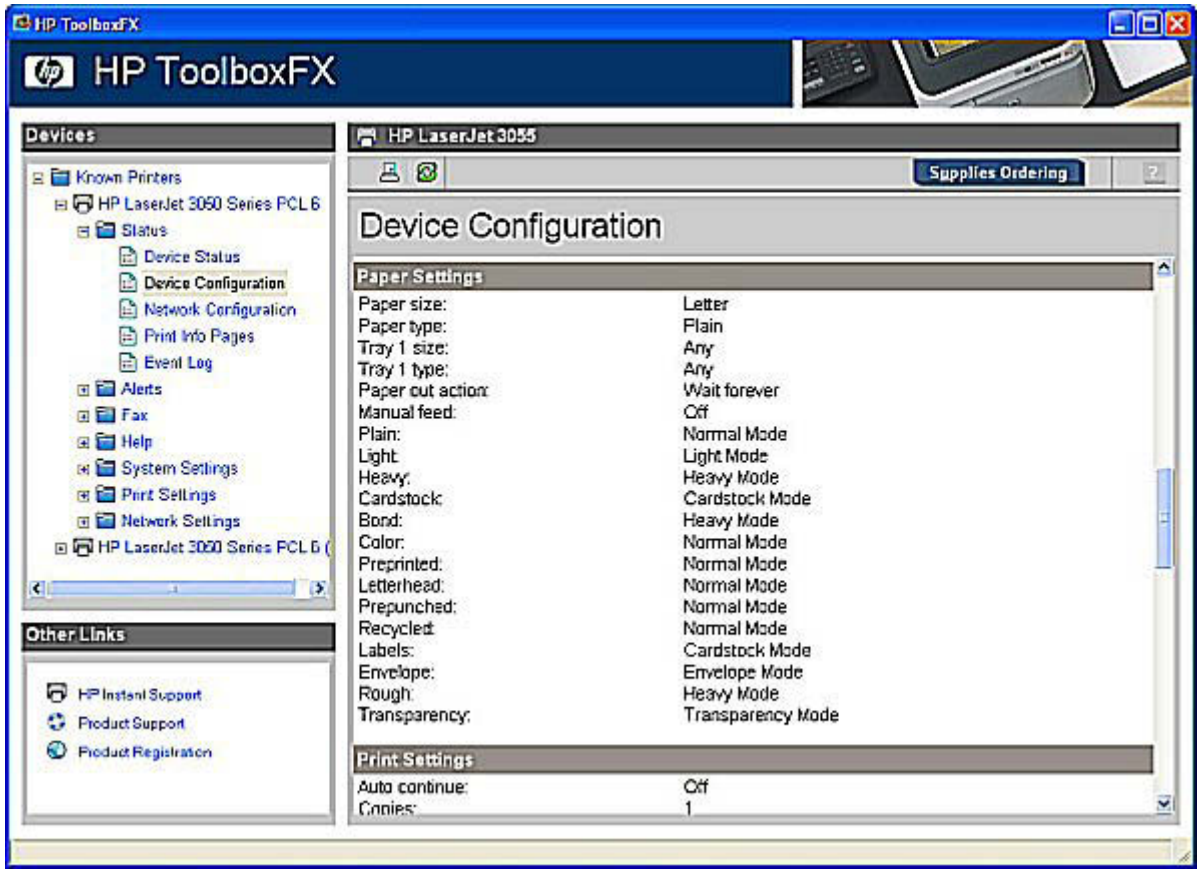


Figure 5-9 **Device Configuration** screen – 3 of 5

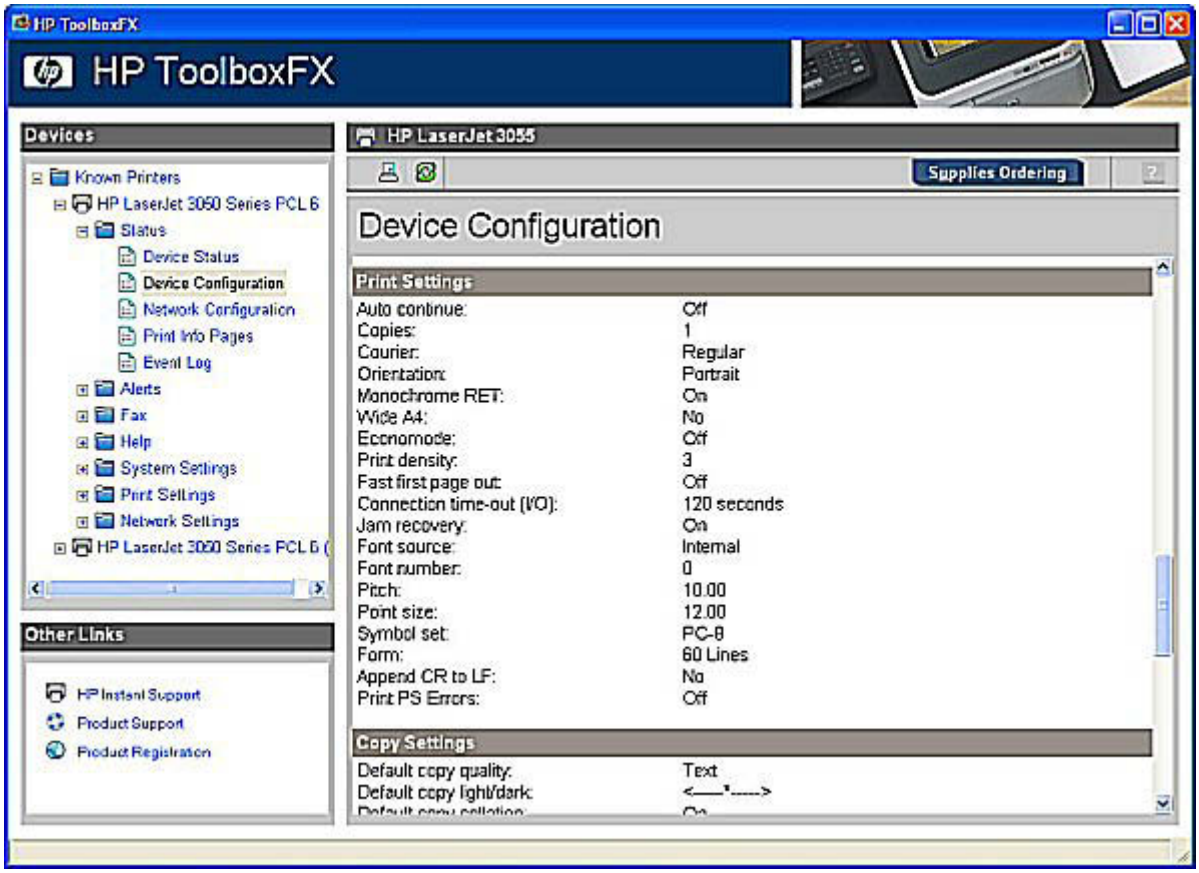


Figure 5-10 **Device Configuration** screen – 4 of 5

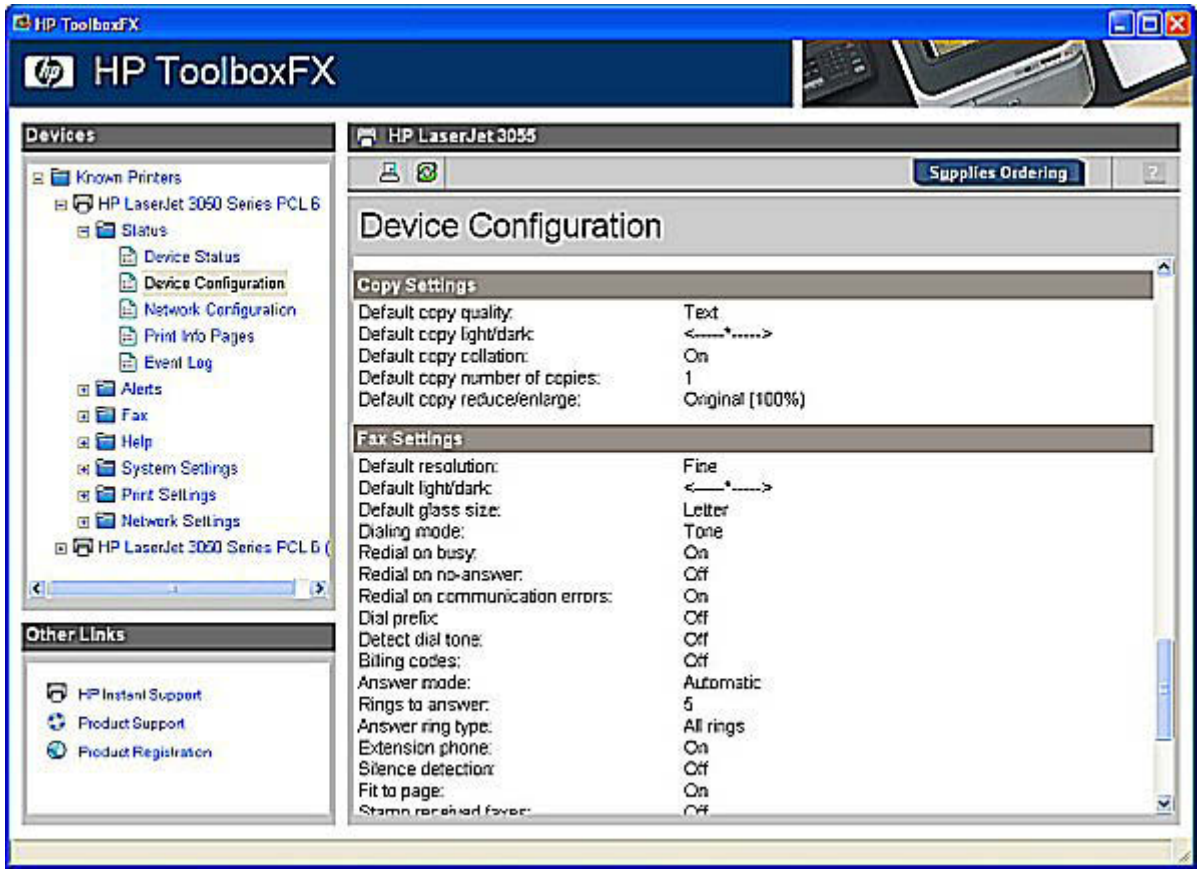


Figure 5-11 **Device Configuration** screen – 5 of 5

Network Configuration

The **Network Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the network settings that are available for the product. The contents of this screen should be consistent with the configuration that the product generates.

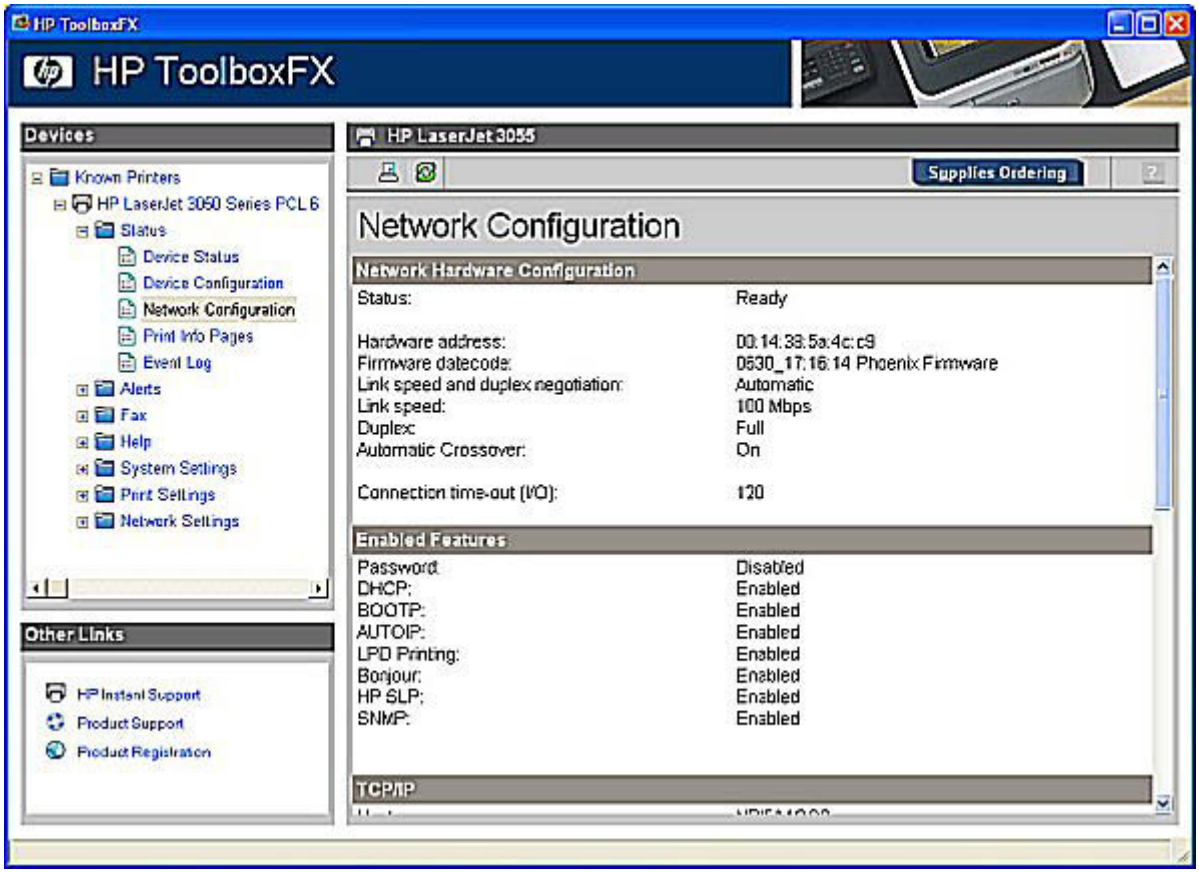


Figure 5-12 **Network Configuration** screen – 1 of 3

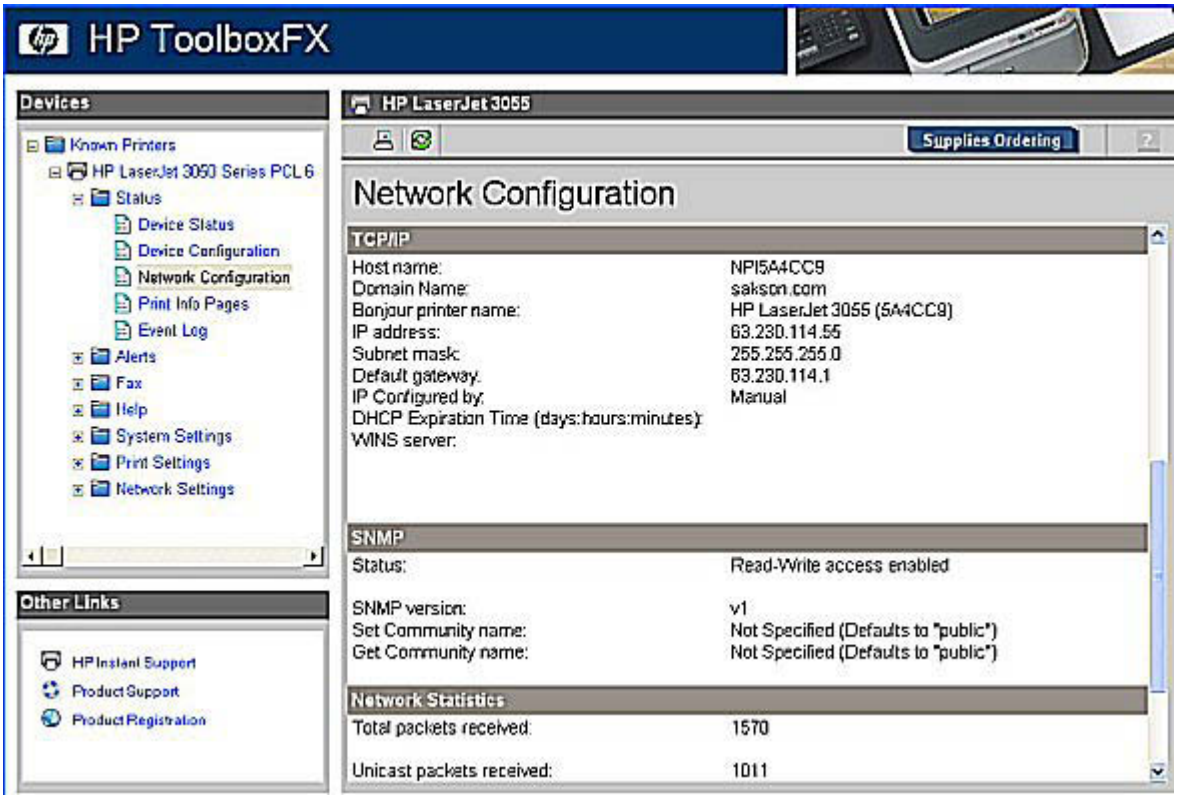


Figure 5-13 **Network Configuration** screen – 2 of 3

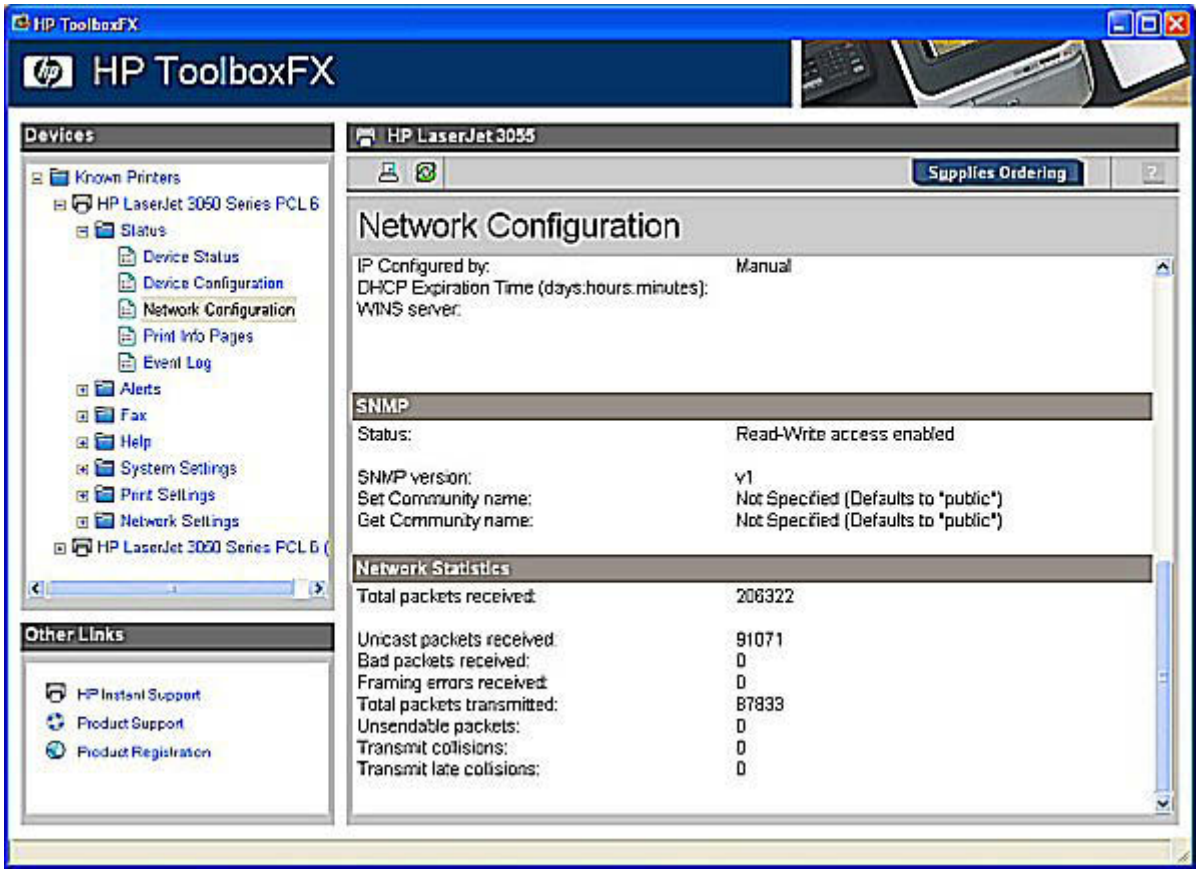


Figure 5-14 **Network Configuration** screen – 3 of 3

Print Info Pages

Use the **Print Info Pages** screen to print out the internal special pages that the product generates. Click **Print** next to the name of the page that you want to print.

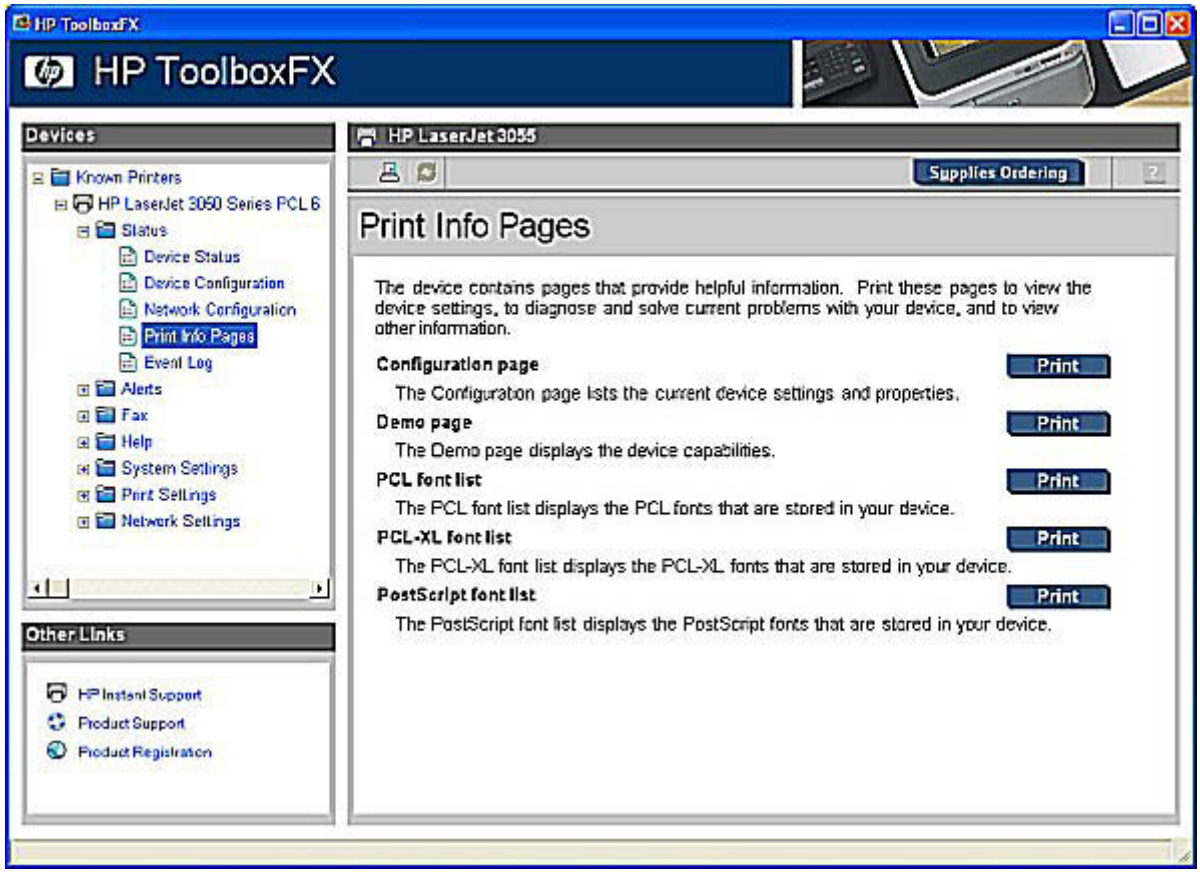


Figure 5-15 Print Information Pages screen

The contents of these reports are generated by the product firmware, and *not* by the HP ToolboxFX.

Event Log

Use the **Event Log** screen to monitor events for your HP LaserJet all-in-one. Up to ten events can appear on this screen. If this screen is empty, no events have occurred on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

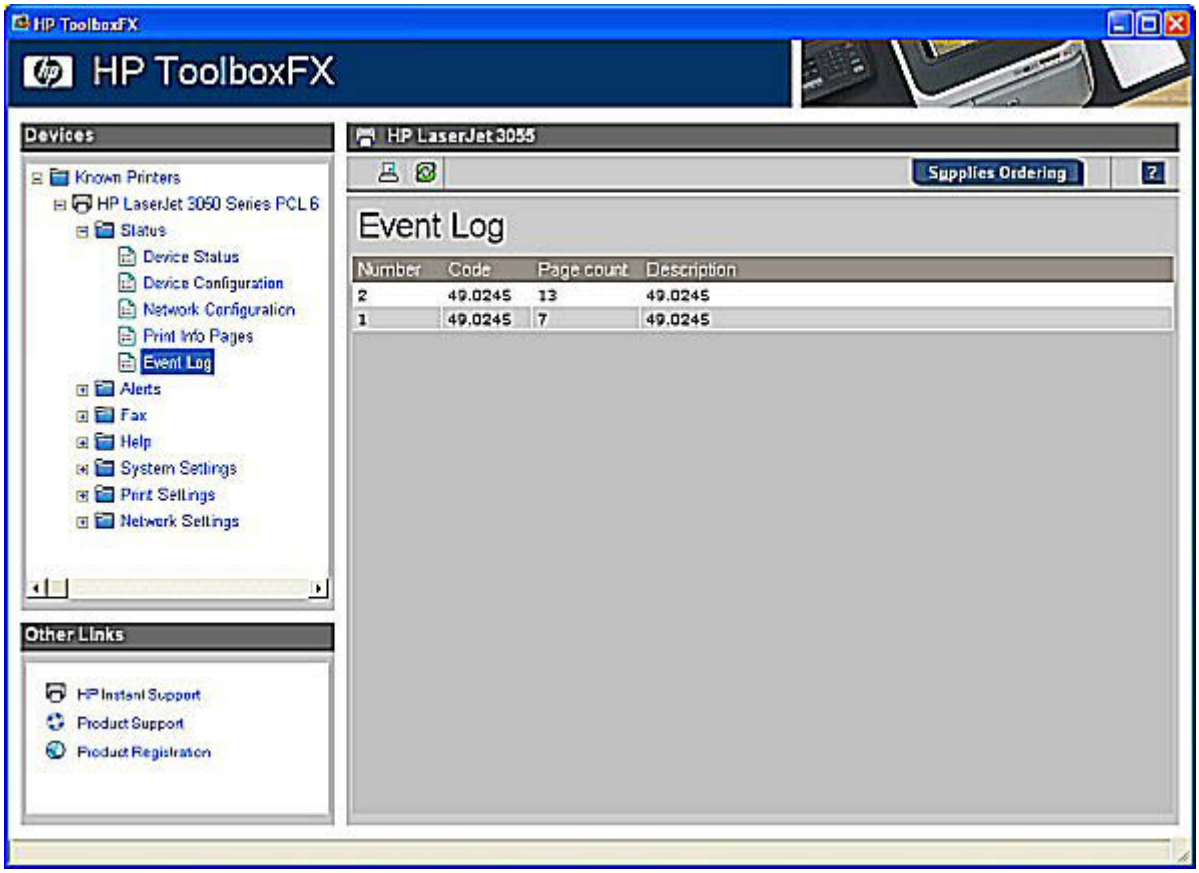


Figure 5-16 **Event Log** screen

Alerts folder

The **Alerts** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- Set up Status Alerts
- Set up E-mail Alerts

Set up Status Alerts

Use the **Set up Status Alerts** screen to set up status alerts on the for the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Select the **Turn on alerts** option and then click **Apply** to turn on alerts.

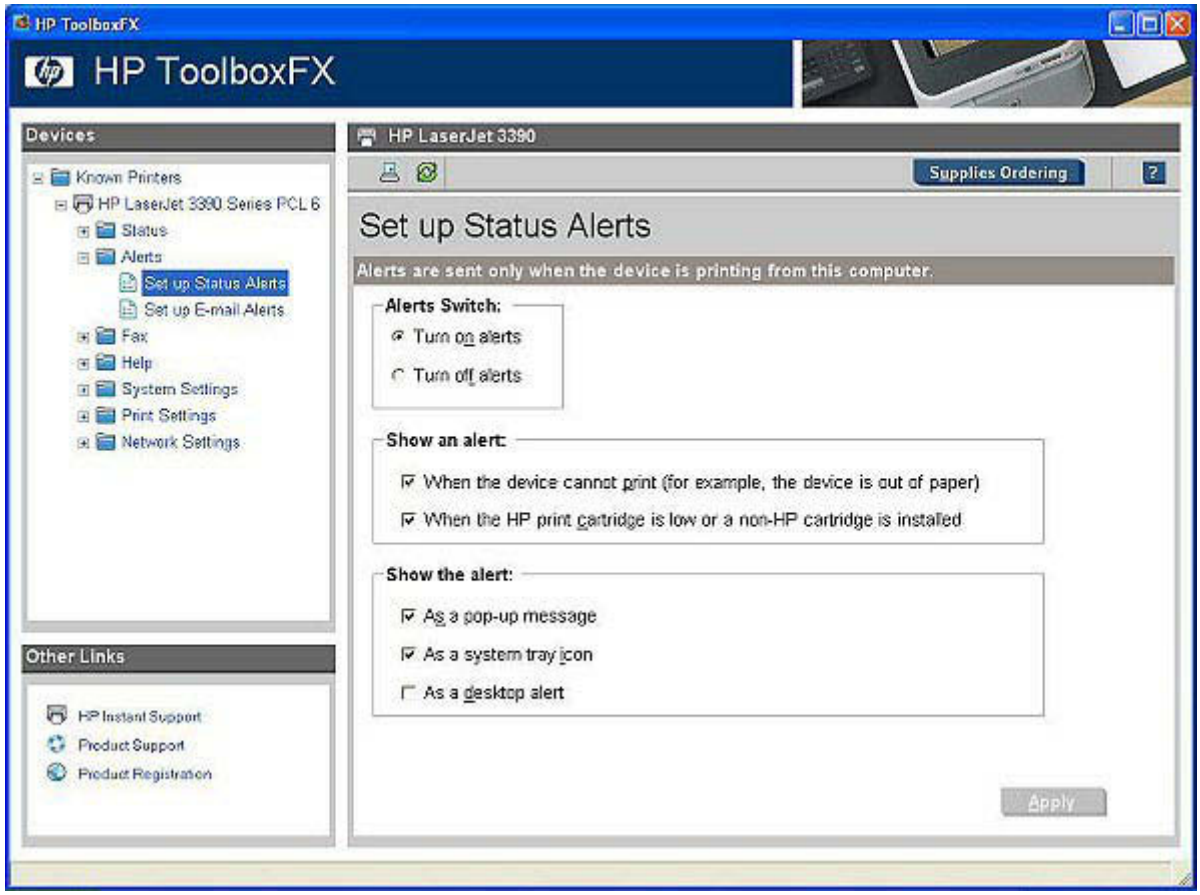


Figure 5-17 **Set up Status Alerts** screen

By selecting the options under **Show an alert**, you can receive the alerts like those listed in the following table.

Table 5-1 Alerts

Setting	Alerts
When the device cannot print	• Close Door • Manual Feed • Paper Out • Paper Jam • Device errors (for example, insufficient memory)
When the HP print cartridge is low or a non-HP cartridge is installed (HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one only)	• Cartridge Low • Replace Cartridge • Non-HP cartridge installed • Unauthorized Supply Installed
When the device cannot scan	• ADF Door Open • ADF Jam

By selecting the options under **Show the alert**, you can receive the alerts in one or all of three forms:

- As a pop-up message
- As a system tray icon
- As a desktop alert

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Set up E-mail Alerts

Use the **Set up E-mail Alerts** screen to set up e-mail alerts for the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

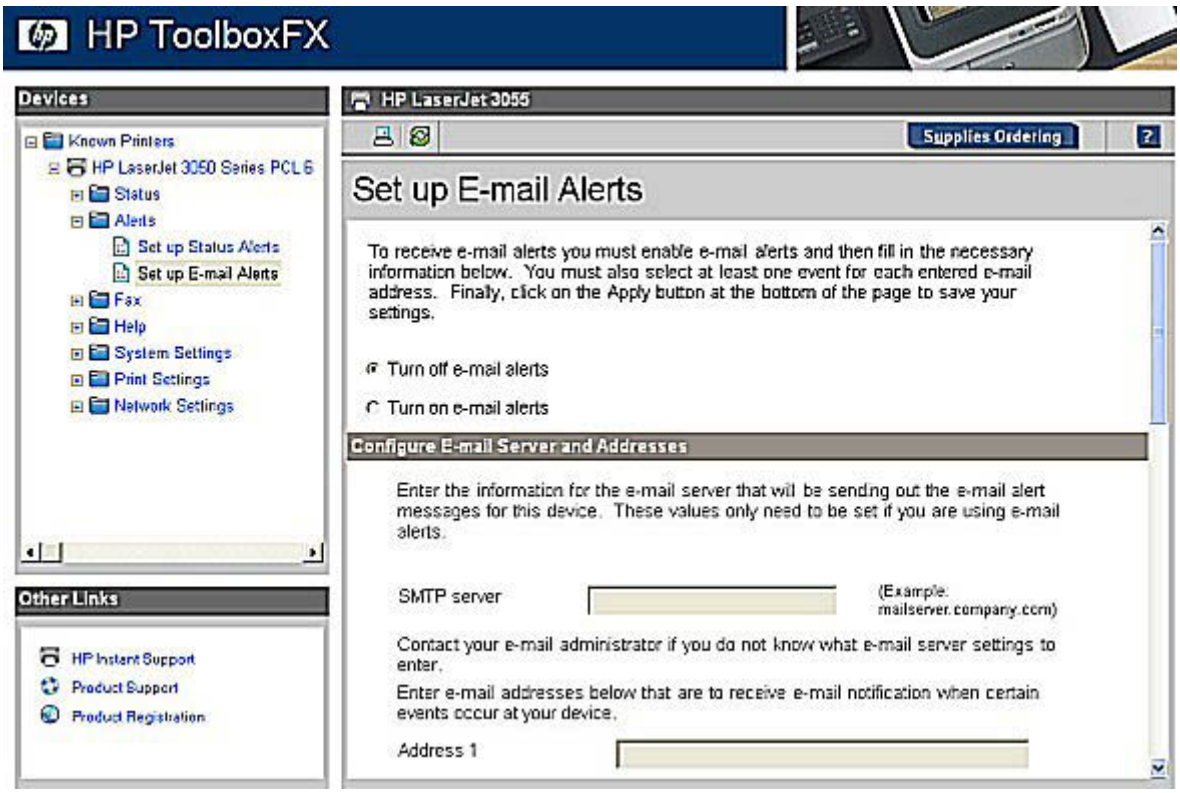


Figure 5-18 **Set up E-mail Alerts** screen – 1 of 3

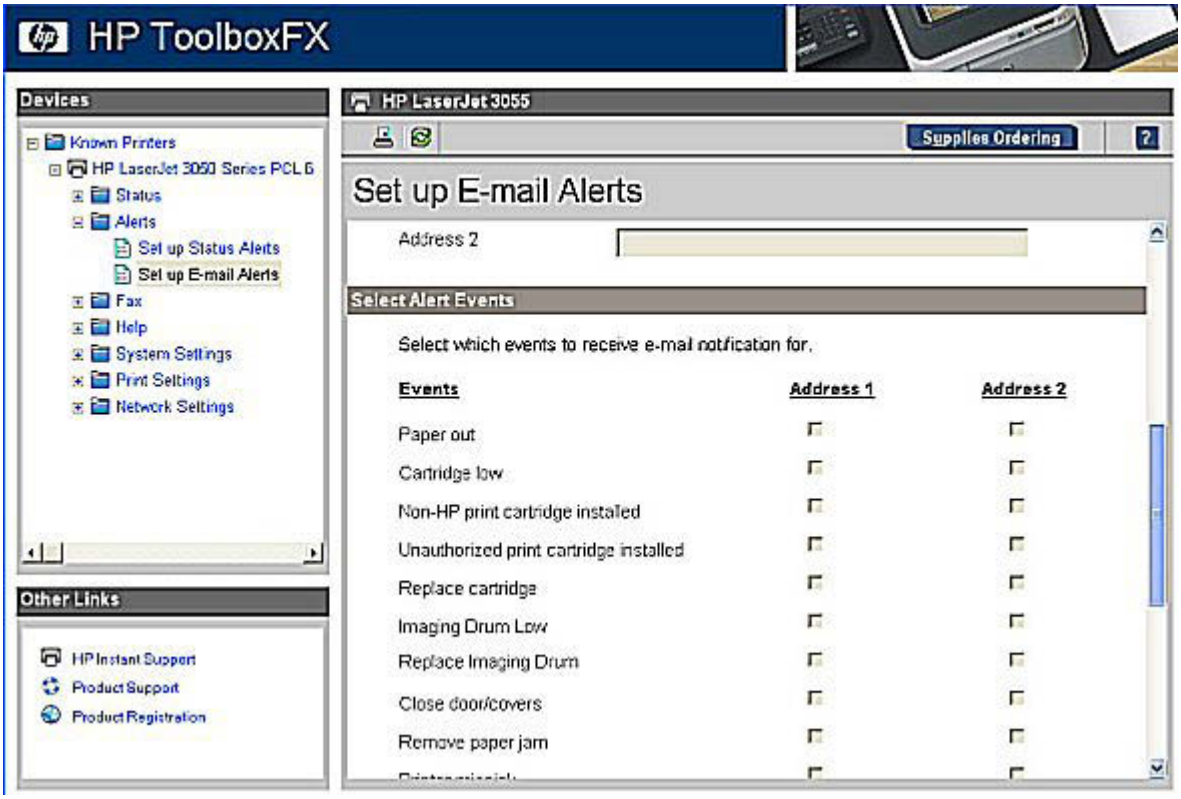


Figure 5-19 **Set up E-mail Alerts** screen – 2 of 3

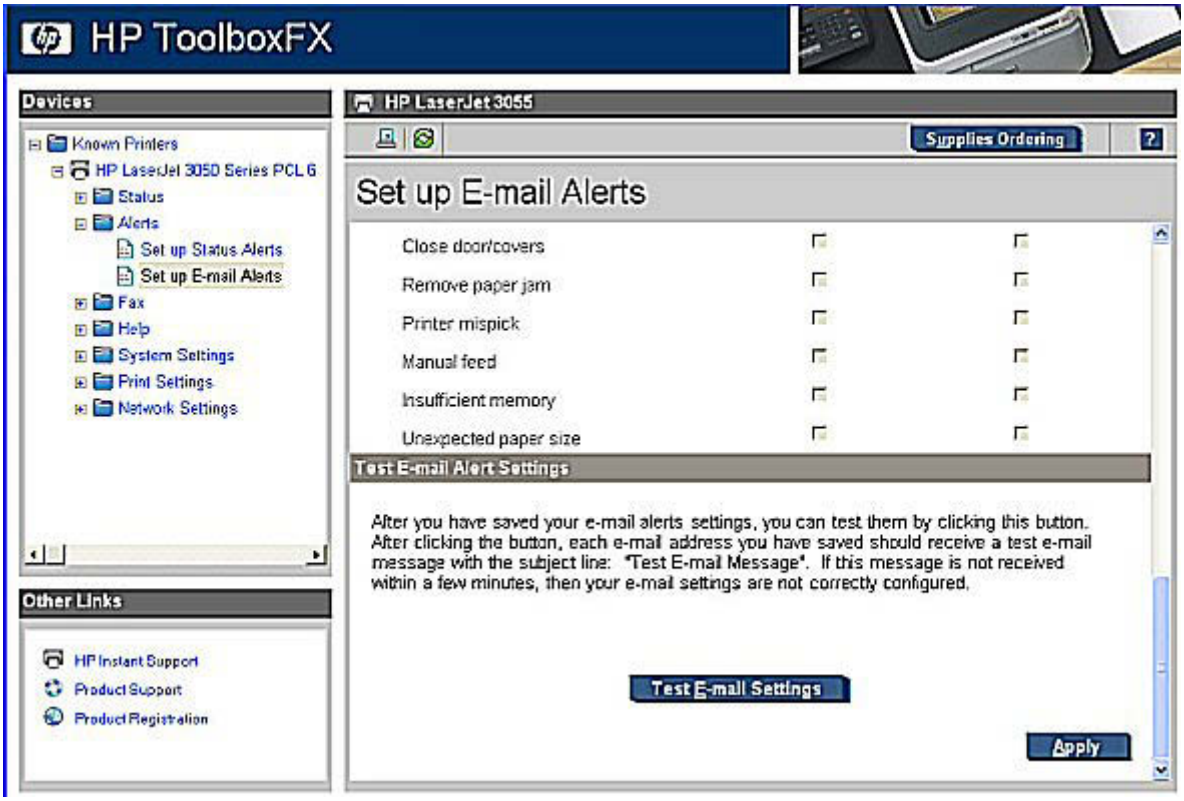


Figure 5-20 **Set up E-mail Alerts** screen – 3 of 3

E-mail messages can be sent to you when certain events occur at the product. You can select the specific events about which you want to be notified.

To use this feature, you must use a valid e-mail address, select the events for which you want notification, configure the SNMP e-mail server that will be used to send the e-mail message, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.

Up to two e-mail addresses can be configured to receive separate e-mail messages for separate events.

To ensure that the proper e-mail addresses have been used and that the SNMP server information is valid, click the **Test E-mail Settings** button.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Fax folder

The **Fax** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- Fax Tasks
- Fax Phone Book
- Fax Send Log and Fax Receive Log
- Fax Data Properties

Fax Tasks

The **Fax Tasks** screen provides access to common fax related functionality and settings.

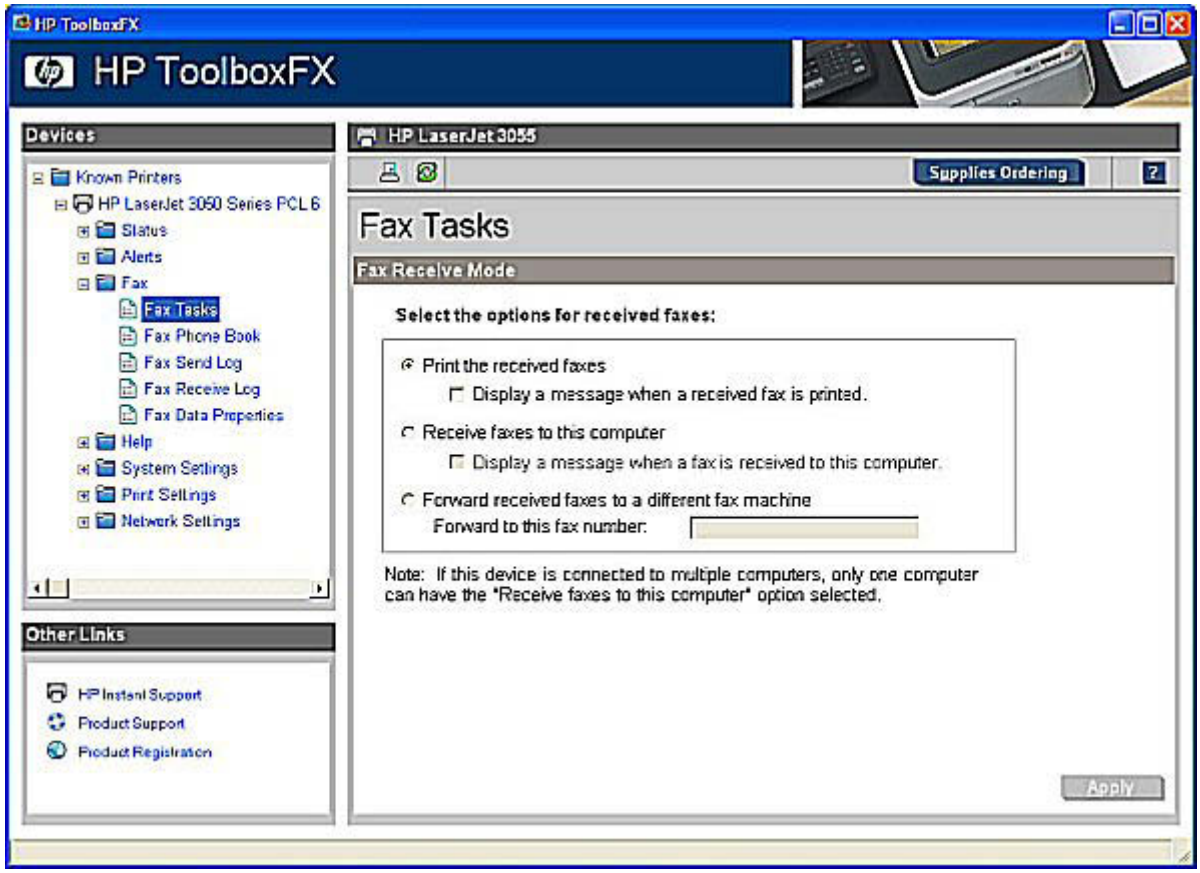


Figure 5-21 **Fax Tasks** screen

The options in the **Fax Functions** section send fax- related commands to the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

The **Fax Receive Mode** section lists options for receiving faxes:

- **Print the Received Faxes.** This is the default selection. If you select this option, you also have the option to receive a notification (pop-up) message when a fax is printed.
- **Receive faxes to this computer.** If you select this option, you also have the option to receive a notification (pop-up) message when a fax is received.

  NOTE The **Receive faxes to this computer** option can only be set for one computer at a time.

- **Forward received faxes to a different fax machine.** If you select this option, you also must type a fax number for the machine to which the fax is forwarded.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Fax Phone Book

The **Fax Phone Book** screen shows the product phone book data.

The maximum number of characters that a name can have in a phone book entry is 16. Only 12 of these characters are displayed on the product control panel, because 4 characters are used to display the phone-book entry number (for example, 001:).

The maximum number of characters that a telephone number can have is 50. This includes special characters that are used to insert pauses in the dial sequence.

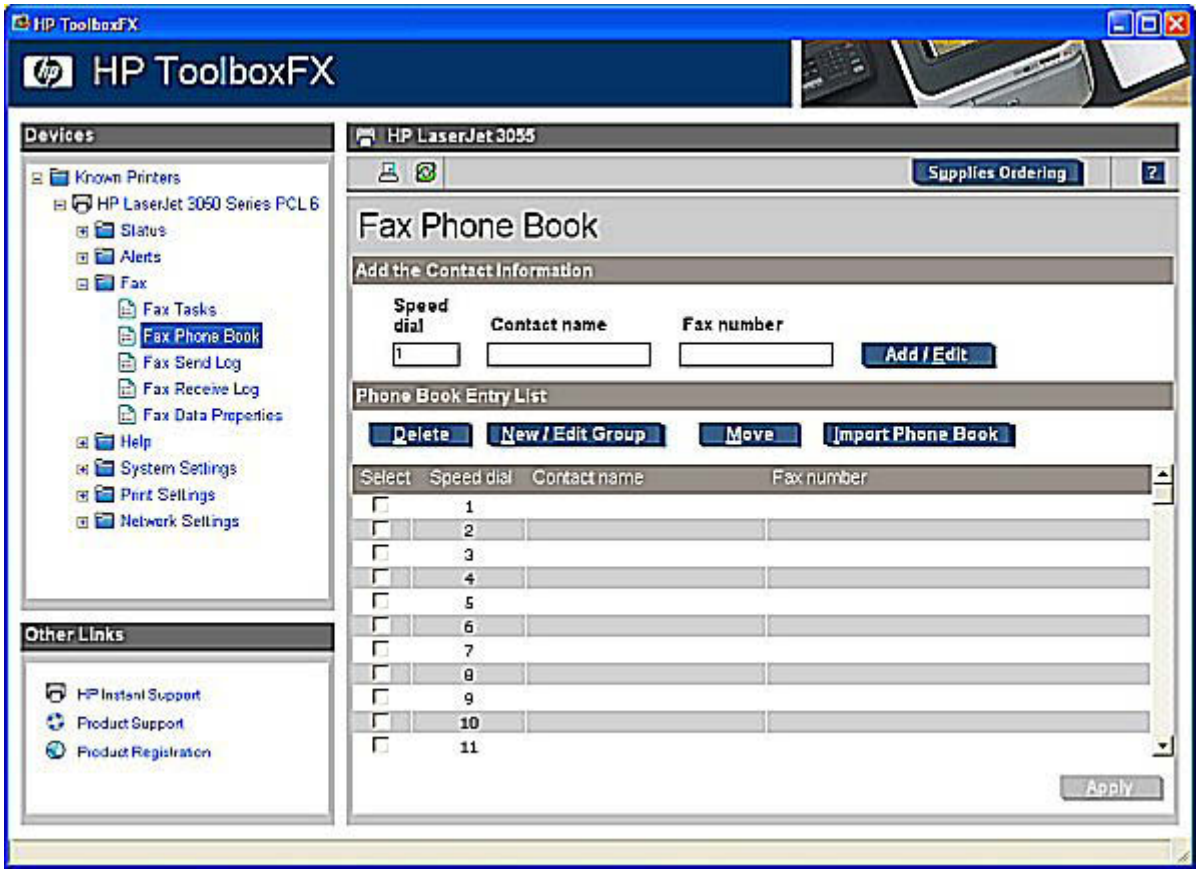


Figure 5-22 Fax Phone Book screen

Use the **Fax Phone Book** screen to add and remove individuals or groups on your speed-dial list, import phone books from a variety of sources, and update and maintain your contact list.

- To add an individual contact to your speed-dial list, select the check box next to the speed-dial number that you want to specify, type the contact name in the **Contact name** window, type the fax number in the **Fax number** window, and then click **Add/Edit**.
- To add a group of contacts to your speed-dial list, select the check box next to the speed-dial number that you want to specify, and then click **New/Edit Group**. Double-click a contact name from the list on the left to move it to the group list on the right, or select a name on the left and then click the appropriate arrow to move it to the group list on the right. You can also use those two methods to move names from right to left. When you have created a group, type a name in the **Group name** window and then click **OK**.
- To edit an existing individual speed-dial entry, click anywhere on the row containing the contact name to select it, type changes in the appropriate windows, and then click **Add/Edit**. You can also make changes directly in the phone book directory list by clicking the entry and typing your changes. Make sure that you do not have a check mark in the **Select** column.
- To edit an existing group speed-dial entry, click anywhere on the row containing the group name to select it, and then click **New/Edit Group**. Make any required changes and then click **OK**. You can make changes to the name of the group directly in the phone book directory list by clicking the entry and typing your changes. Make sure that you do not have a check mark in the **Select** column.

- To delete an entry from the speed-dial list, select the item and then click **Delete**.
- To move speed-dial entries, you can select the entry and then click **Move**, or you can click **Move** and then specify the entry in the dialog box. Either select **Next empty row** or specify the number of the row where you want to move the entry.

  NOTE If you specify a row that is occupied, then the new entry will overwrite the existing entry.

- To import contacts from a phone book that exists in Lotus Notes, Outlook, or Outlook Express, click **Import Phone Book**. Select the appropriate software program, navigate to the appropriate file, and then click **OK**. You can select individual entries from the phone book instead of importing the entire phone book.
- To select all of the entries in your speed-dial list, click the **Select** column heading.

In addition to numerical digits, the following are valid characters for fax numbers:

- (
-)
- +
- -
- *
- #
- R
- W
- .
- ,
- <space>

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Fax Send Log and Fax Receive Log

The **Fax Send Log** and the **Fax Receive Log** screens list the faxes that have been sent and received by the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

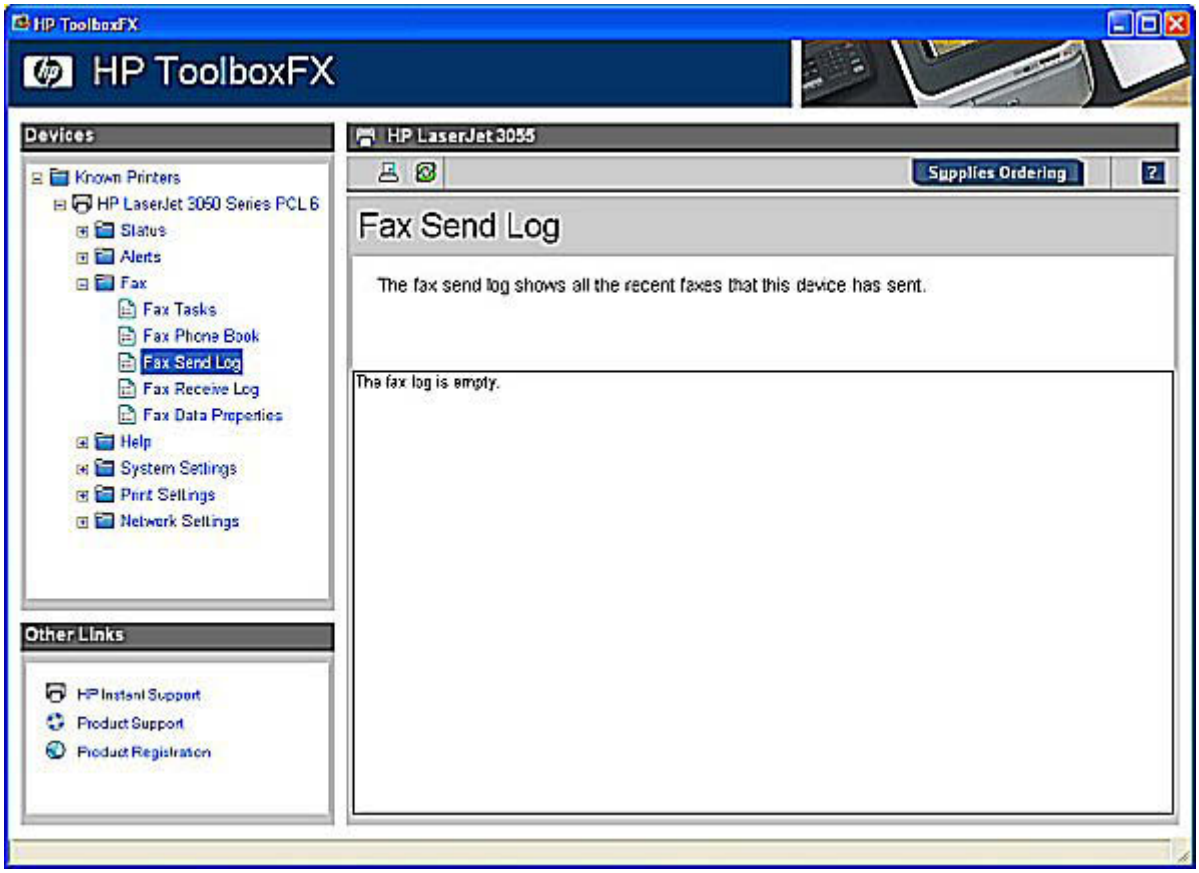


Figure 5-23 **Fax Send Log** screen

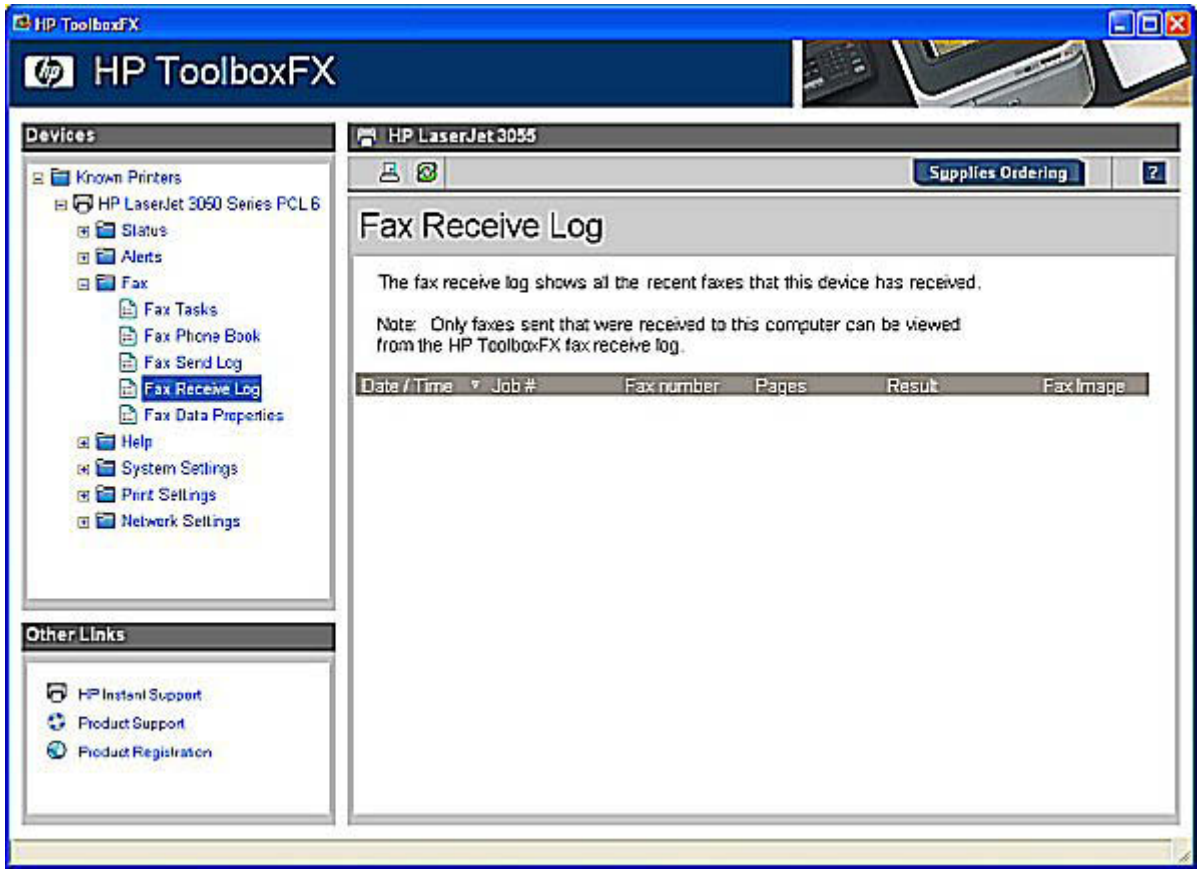


Figure 5-24 Fax Receive log screen

Click (the refresh button) to see new fax data from the HP LaserJet all-in-one. The following information for each fax is displayed in the logs:

- Date and time
- Job number
- Fax number
- Pages
- Result

Sort the fax logs by any of these columns by clicking on the appropriate column name. A triangle that designates ascending or descending order appears next to the column heading. To change the order from ascending to descending, or vice versa, click the column heading again. The last sort column and the sort order that you use is saved when you closethe screen.

If the fax was received at the computer (rather than at the HP LaserJet all-in-one), that fax entry also has a **View** option in the Fax Image column. Click **View** to see the fax in a new window. Faxes that have not yet been viewed appear in bold type.

A maximum of 40 fax log entries are listed.

Fax Data Properties

Use the **Fax Data Properties** settings to manage the space used to store faxes on your computer. You can save more faxes if you specify a larger total data size.

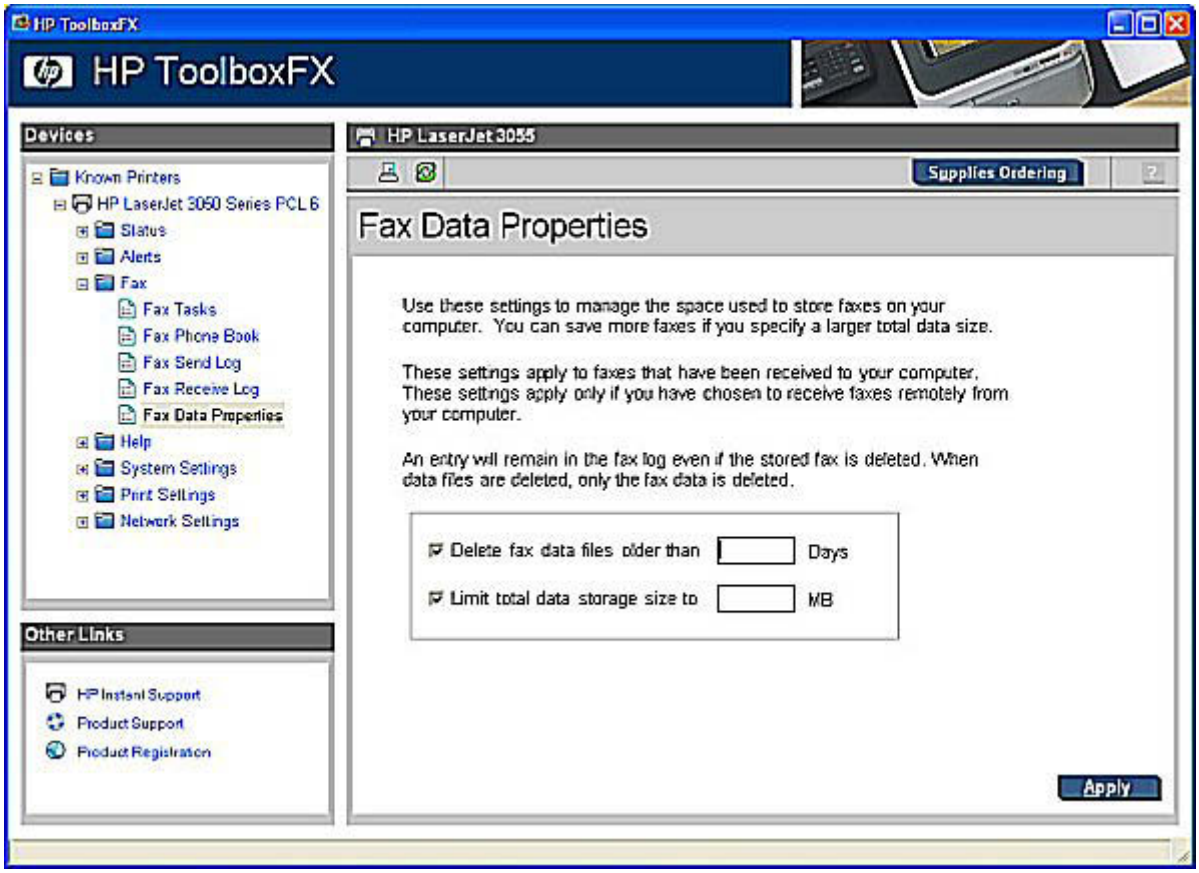


Figure 5-25 **Fax Data Properties** screen

These settings apply to faxes that have been received to your computer. These settings apply only if you have chosen to receive faxes to your computer.

If you select either the **Delete fax data files older than** check box or the **Limit total data storage size to** check box, you must type a corresponding value in the **Days** or **MB** field, and then click **Apply** to save the settings. If you do not type a value in the **Days** or the **MB** field, an error message appears, stating: **Invalid entry. Please enter a valid value.**

An entry will remain in the fax log even if the stored fax is deleted. When data files are deleted, only the fax data is deleted.

Help folder

The **Help** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- Troubleshooting
- How do I...?
- Animated Demonstrations
- User Guide

- Readme

All of the content in the **Help** folder is static HTML content, except for the animated demonstrations. This content contains hyperlinks, and **Next** and **Previous** buttons, which allows users to navigate through the various sections of the Help content.

Troubleshooting

Figure 5-26 Troubleshooting sub-folder

Click **Troubleshooting** on the Troubleshooting screen to gain access to the Troubleshooting chapter of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

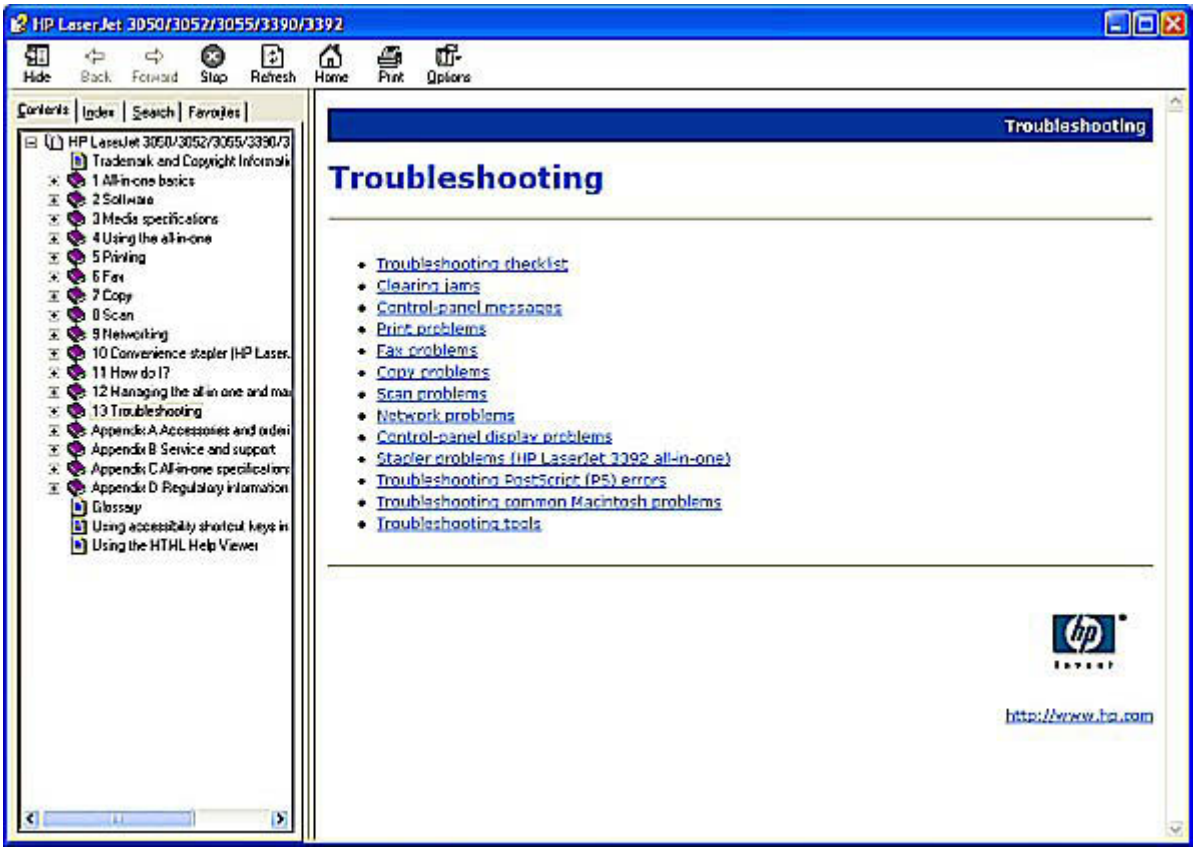


Figure 5-27 Troubleshooting – *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*

How do I...?

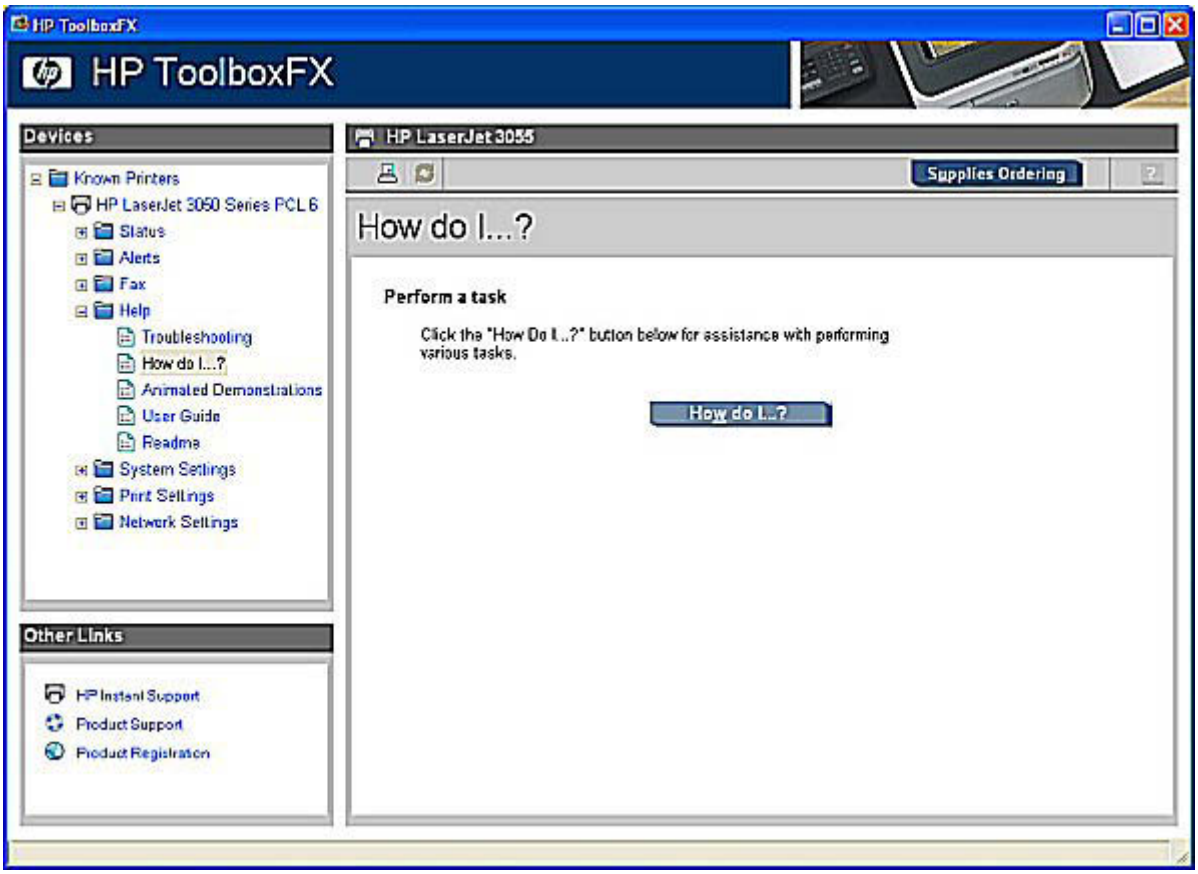


Figure 5-28 How do I...? sub-folder

Click **How do I... ?** on the How do I... ? screen to gain access to the How do I... ? chapter of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

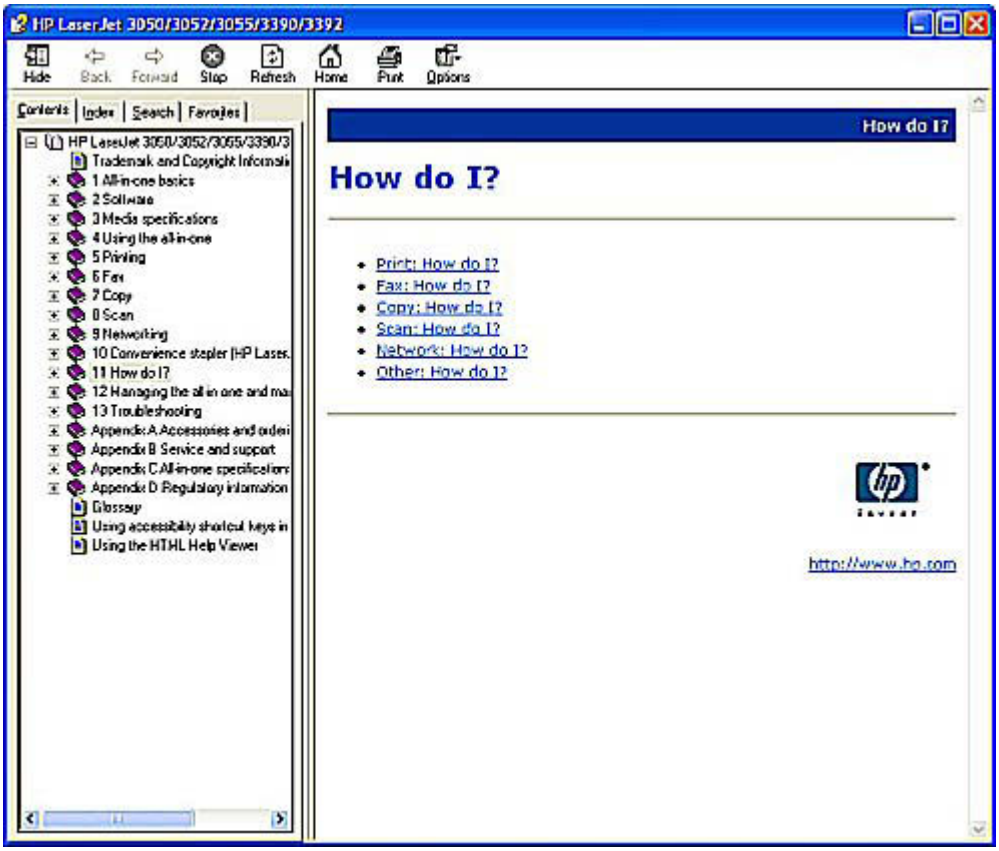


Figure 5-29 **How do I... ?** – HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide

Each of the How do I...? screens (Print, Fax, Copy, Scan, Network, and Other), contains set of links. Each link corresponds to a particular task. Click these links to open a new window that provides content about the given task.

Animated Demonstrations

Figure 5-30 Animated Demonstrations screen

Click the links on the **Animated Demonstrations** screen to view animated demonstrations about removing paper jams in your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

User Guide

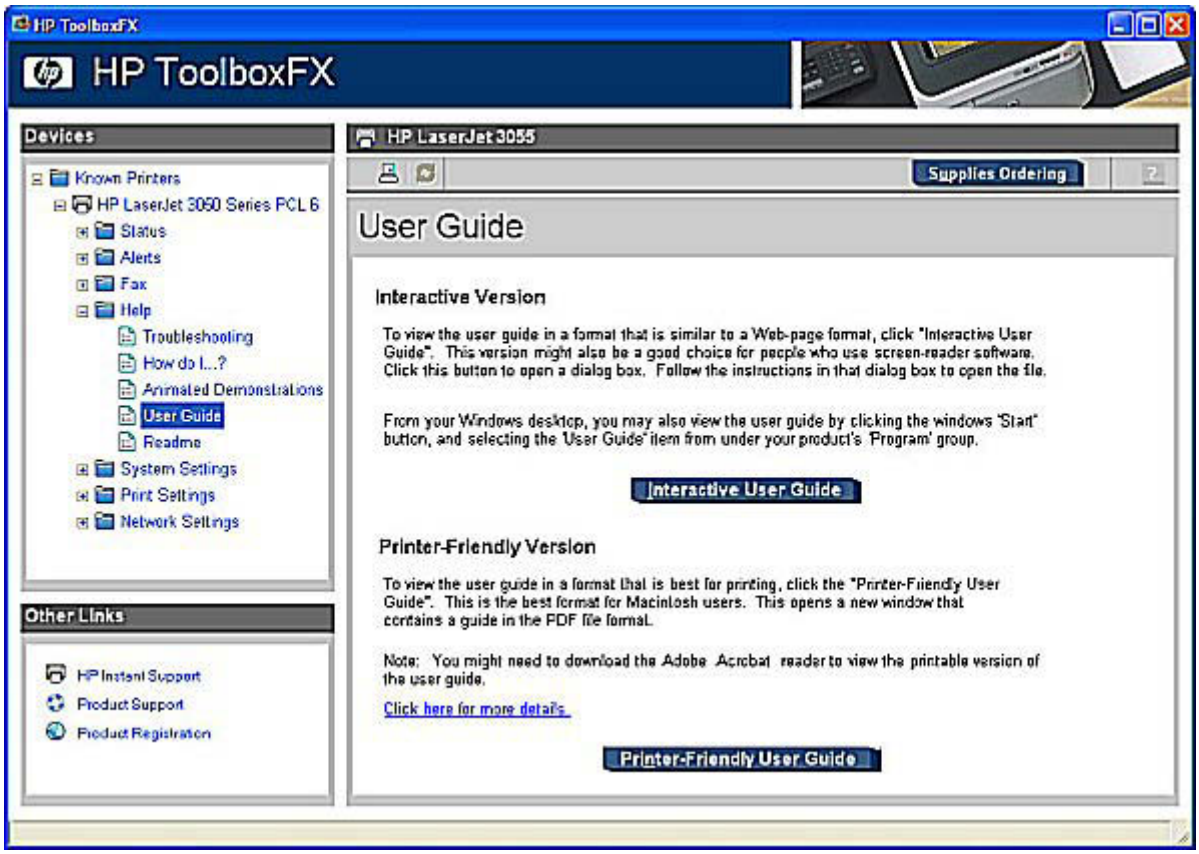


Figure 5-31 *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*

Use the **User Guide** screen to gain access to the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

Readme

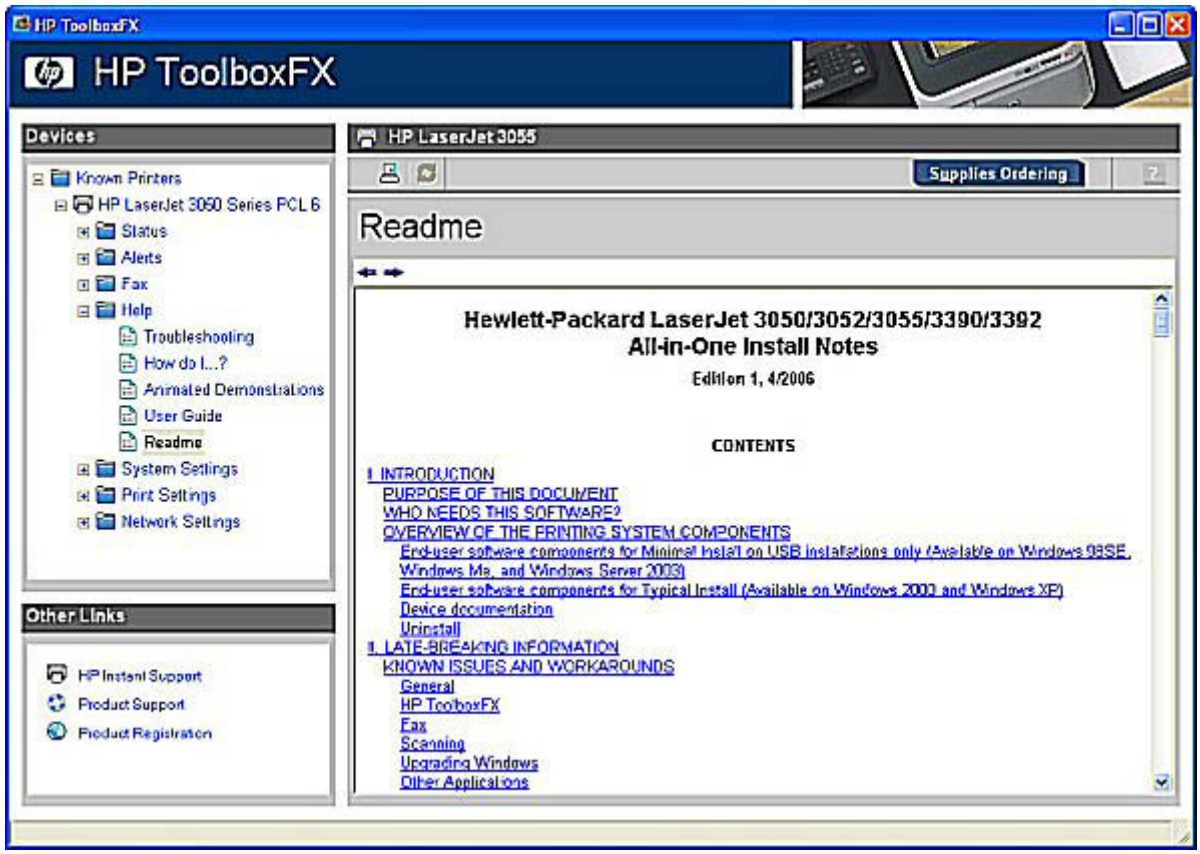


Figure 5-32 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 Readme

Use the **Readme** screen to gain access to the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One Install Notes.

System Settings folder

The **System Settings** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- Device Information
- Paper Handling
- Print Quality
- Paper Types
- System Setup
- Service
- Device Polling
- Save/Restore Settings

Device Information

Use the **Device Information** screen to add or change information about your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

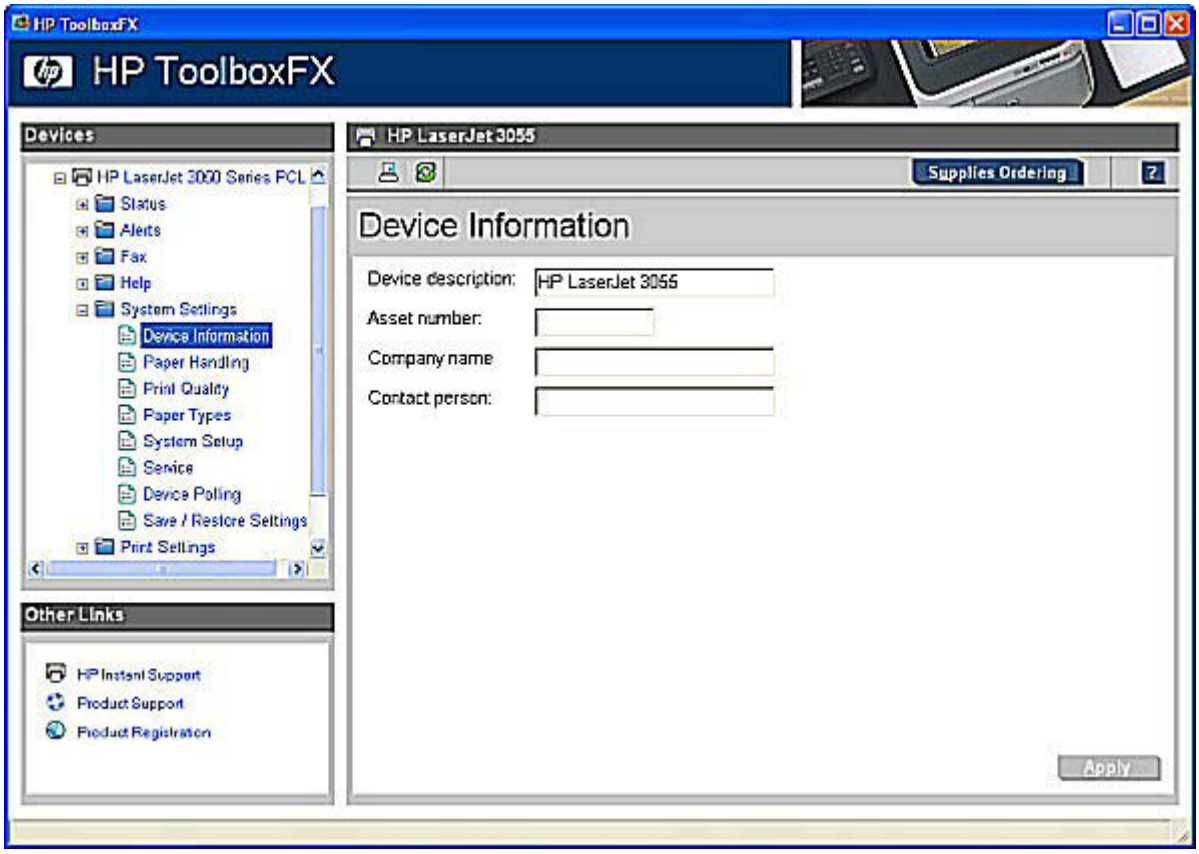


Figure 5-33 Device Information screen

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Paper Handling

Use the **Paper Handling** screen to change the paper-handling defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

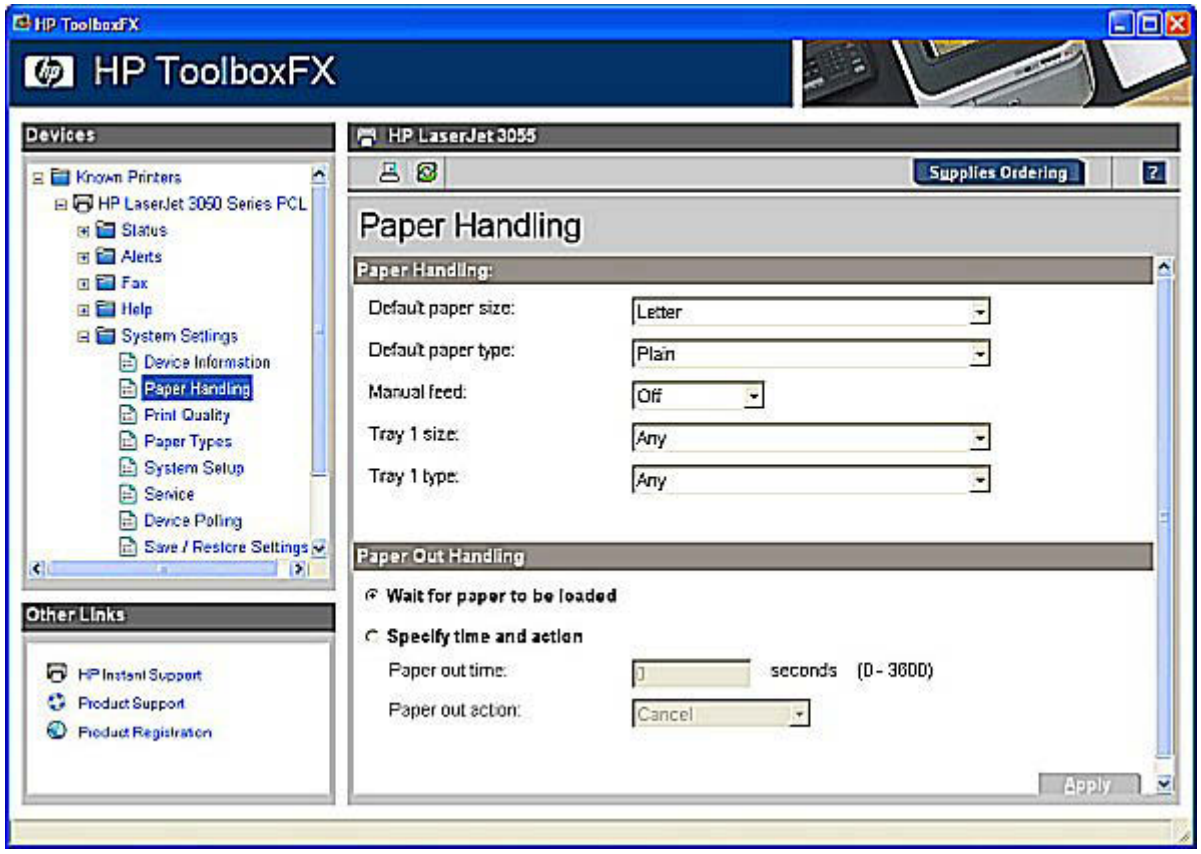


Figure 5-34 **Paper Handling** screen

The following table shows the **Paper Handling** settings that are available.

Table 5-2 Paper Handling options and settings

Option	Settings
Default paper size	• Letter; default setting • Legal • A4 • Executive • B5 (ISO) • Envelope #10 • Envelope Monarch • Envelope C5 • Envelope DL • Envelope B5 • Custom • B5 (JIS) • Postcard (JIS)

Table 5-2 Paper Handling options and settings (continued)

Option	Settings
	• Double Postscard (JIS) • A5 • 8.5x13 (Foolscap) • 16K
Default paper type	• Bond • Cardstock (106–163 g/m2) • Colored • Envelope • Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy (90-105g/m2) • Labels • Letterhead • Light (<75gm2) • Plain; default setting • Preprinted • Prepunched • Recycled • Tough Paper • Transparency • Vellum
Manual feed	• Off; default setting • On
Tray 1 size	• Any; default setting • Letter • Legal • A4 • Executive • B5 (ISO) • Envelope #10 • Envelope Monarch • Envelope C5 • Envelope DL

Table 5-2 Paper Handling options and settings (continued)

Option	Settings
	• Envelope B5 • Custom • B5 (JIS) • Postcard (JIS) • Double Postscard (JIS) • A5 • 8.5x13 (Foolscap) • 16K
Tray 1 type	• Any; default setting • Bond • Cardstock (106–163 g/m2) • Colored • Envelope • Glossy • Heavy Glossy • Heavy (90-105g/m2) • Labels • Letterhead • Light (<75gm2) • Plain • Preprinted • Prepunched • Recycled • Tough Paper • Transparency
Tray 2 size	• Any; default setting • Letter • Legal • A4 • Executive • B5 (ISO) • B5 (JIS)

Table 5-2 Paper Handling options and settings (continued)

Option	Settings
	• A5 • 8.5x13 (Foolscap)
Tray 2 type	• Any; default setting • Bond • Colored • Heavy (90-105g/m2) • Letterhead • Light (<75gm2) • Plain • Preprinted • Prepunched • Recycled

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Print Quality

Use the **Print Quality** screen to change the print-quality defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

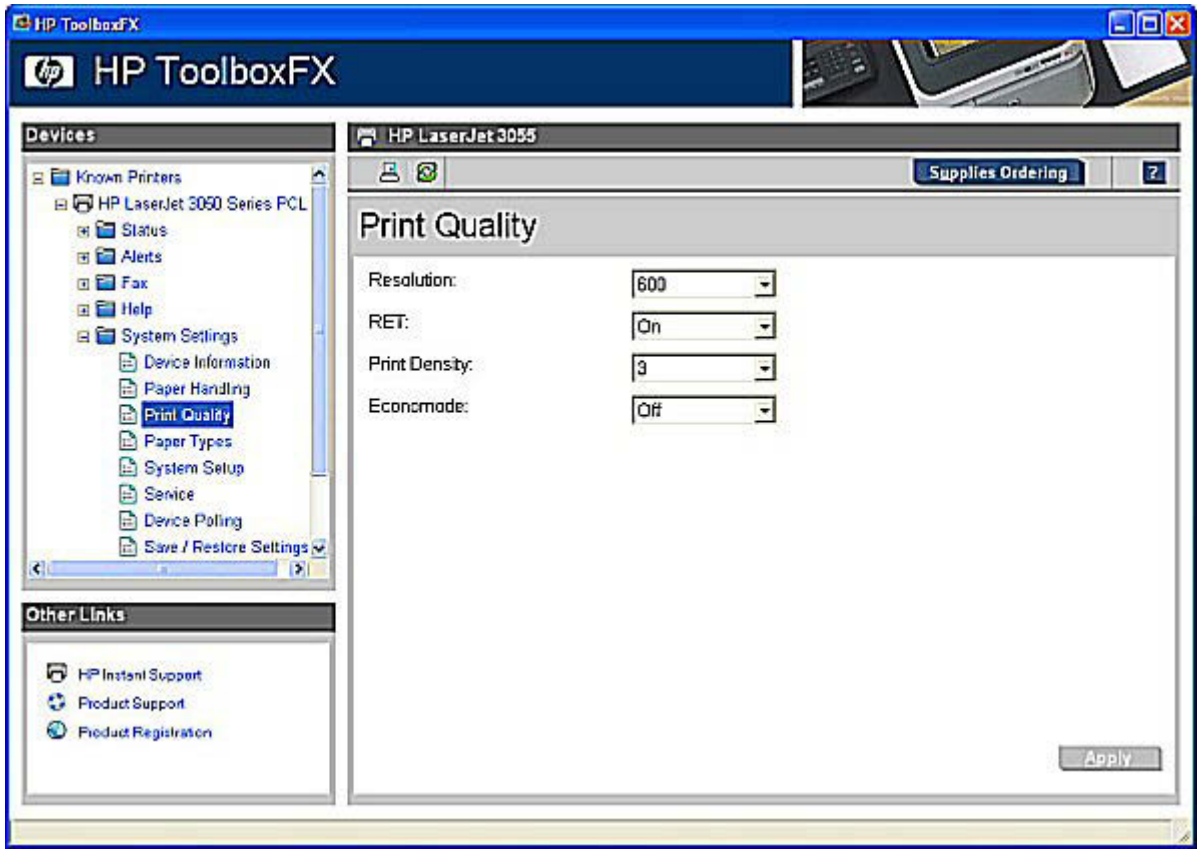


Figure 5-35 **Print Quality** screen

The following table shows the options and settings for the **Print Quality** screen.

Table 5-3 Print Quality options and settings

Option	Settings
Resolution	• 600 • ProRes 1200
RET	• On (default) • Off
Print Density	• 1 • 2 • 3 (default) • 4 • 5
Economode	• On • Off (default)

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Paper Types

Use the **Paper Types** screen to configure print modes that correspond to the various media types.

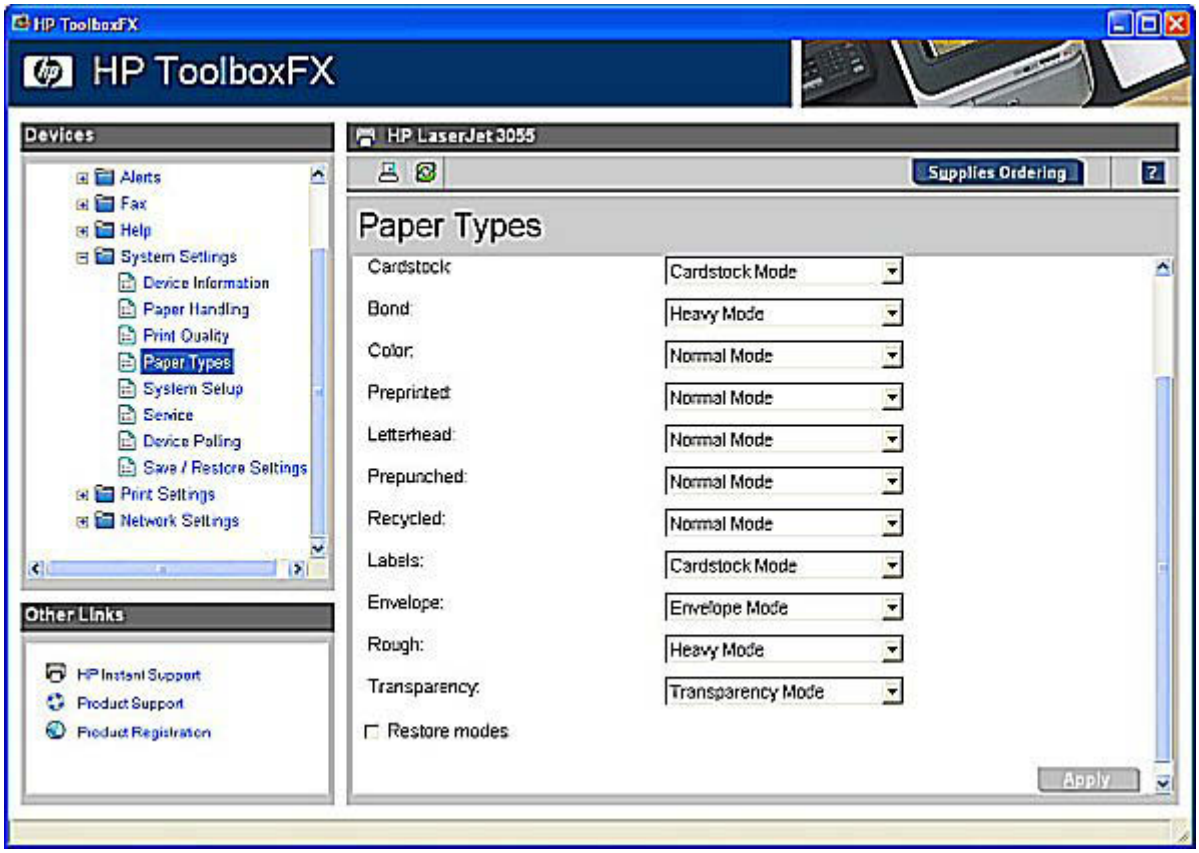


Figure 5-36 Paper Types screen

A print mode is a special setting that controls the print speed and the fuser temperature of the HP LaserJet all-in-one. The product speed and fuser temperature are adjusted to match the print mode that you select, which can result in better print quality when printing on certain media types. The following list shows the print modes listed in the drop-down menu for each media type:

NOTE Not all of the paper types listed in the driver can be adjusted from the **Print Types** screen.

- Heavy Mode
- Normal Mode
- Light Mode
- Cardstock Mode
- Transparency Mode
- Envelope Mode
- Label Mode

- Glossy Mode
- Heavy Glossy Mode
- Tough Paper Mode
- Extra Heavy Mode
- Toner Mode
- Slow/Less Toner Mode
- Dry Media Mode
- Humid Mode
- Heavy/Humid Mode
- Dry/Light Mode
- Dry/Less Toner Mode
- Heavy Gloss Offset Mode
- Heavy Gloss/Less Toner Mode
- OHT High Mode
- Light Media Waves Mode
- Gloss Offset Mode

The following table shows the media types that the HP LaserJet all-in-one supports and the default fuser mode for each type.

Table 5-4 Print mode settings and default fuser modes

Media type	Fuser mode default setting
Plain	Normal Mode
Preprinted	Normal Mode
Letterhead	Normal Mode
Transparency	Transparency Mode
Prepunched	Normal Mode
Labels	Label Mode
Bond	Heavy Mode
Recycled	Normal Mode
Color	Normal Mode
Light <75 g/m^2	Light Mode
Heavy (90 to 105 g/m^2)	Heavy Mode
Cardstock (105 to 163 g/m^2)	Cardstock Mode
Glossy (75-105 g/m^2	Glossy Mode

Table 5-4 Print mode settings and default fuser modes (continued)

Media type	Fuser mode default setting
Heavy Glossy (106-163 g/m^2	Heavy Glossy Mode
Tough Paper	Tough Paper Mode
Envelope	Envelope Mode

NOTE Narrow and heavy media can cause the HP LaserJet all-in-one to print more slowly.

Clicking **Restore Modes** and then clicking **Apply** causes the HP LaserJet all-in-one to set all of the print modes to the original factory defaults.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

System Setup

Use the **System Setup** screen to change the system defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

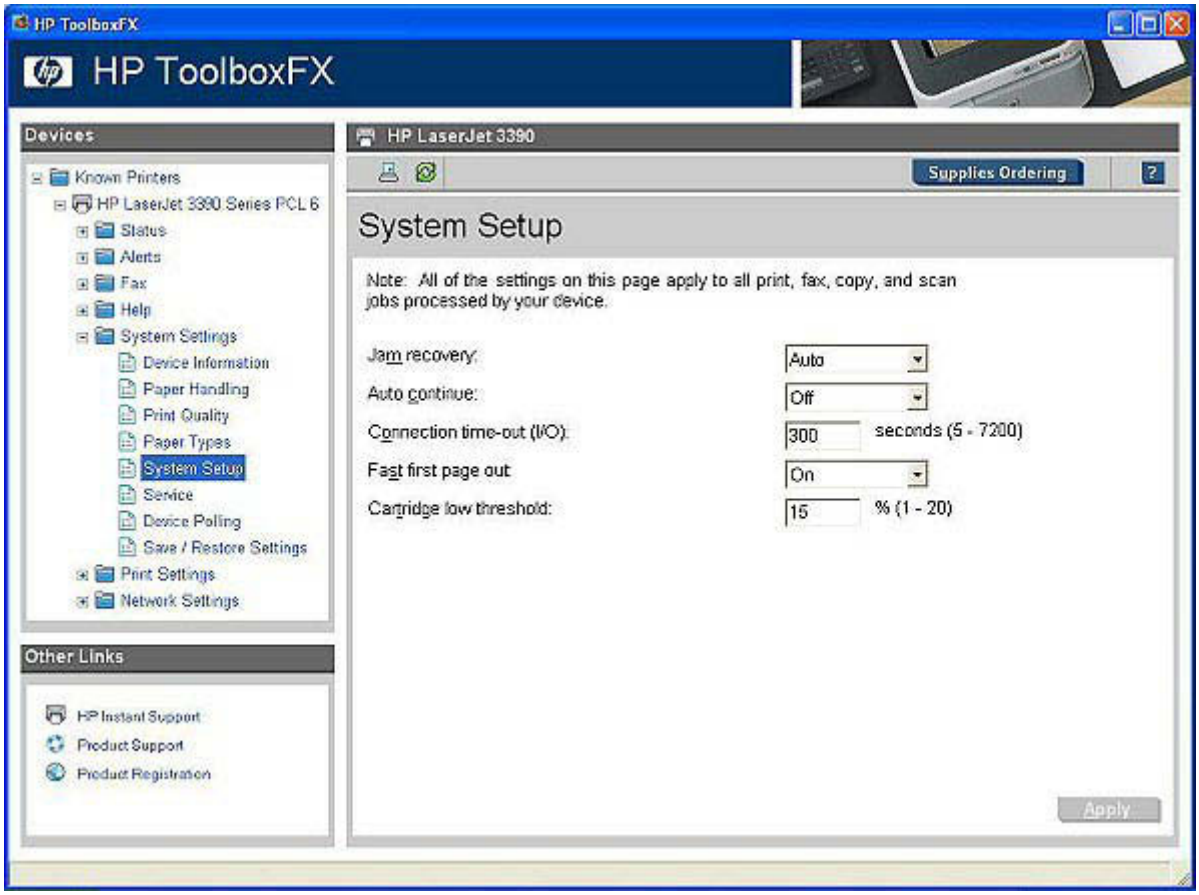


Figure 5-37 **System Setup** screen

The following **Jam recovery** settings are available:

- Auto (default)
- On
- Off

The following **Auto continue** settings are available:

- On
- Off (default)

You can set the **Connection time-out (I/O)** setting to any value from 5 to 7200 seconds.

The following **Fast first page out** settings are available:

- On (default)
- Off

You can set the **Cartridge low threshold** setting to any value from 1 to 20%. The **Cartridge low threshold** option sets the percentage threshold that triggers a toner low alert in HP ToolboxFX.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Service

Use the **Service** screen to start the cleaning mode procedure on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

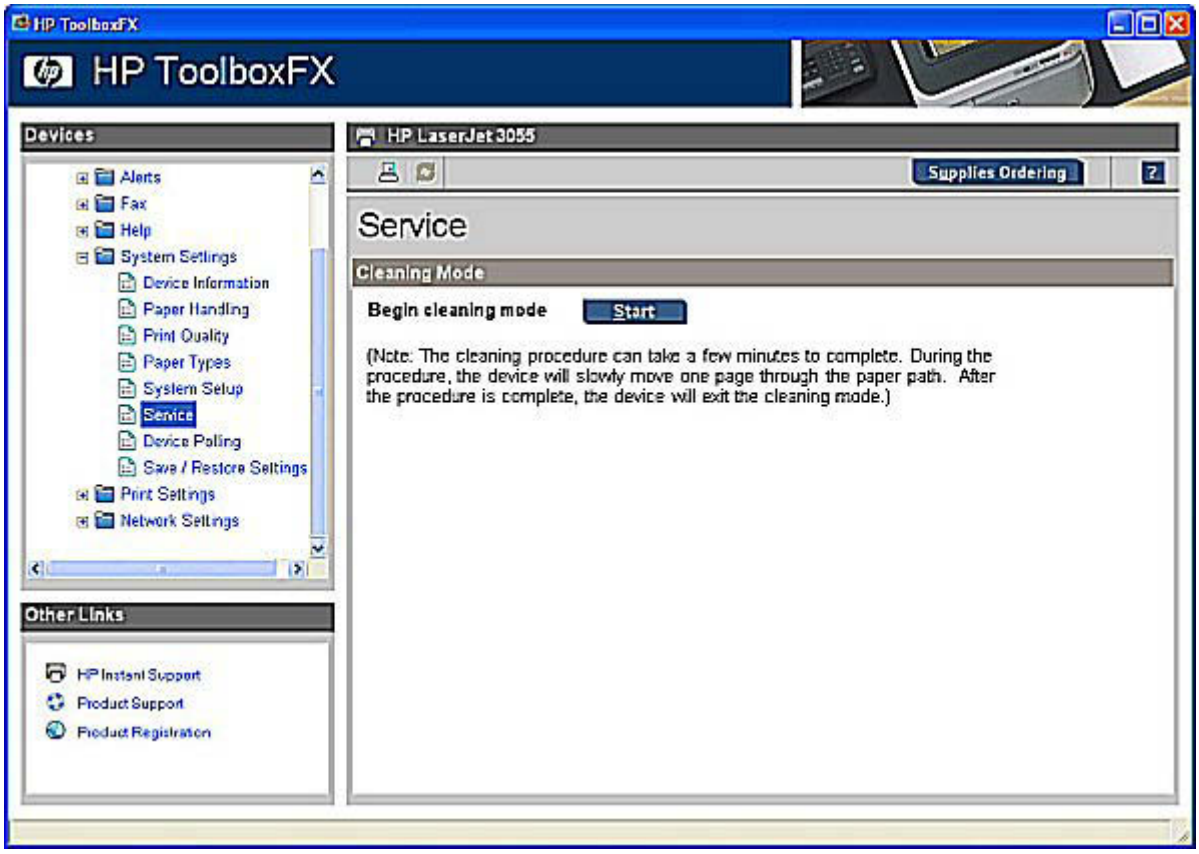


Figure 5-38 **Service** screen

During the printing process, paper, toner, and dust particles accumulate inside the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Over time, this buildup can cause print-quality problems such as toner specks or smearing. Click **Start** to run the cleaning mode procedure on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Device Polling

Use the **Device Polling** screen to control device polling on your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

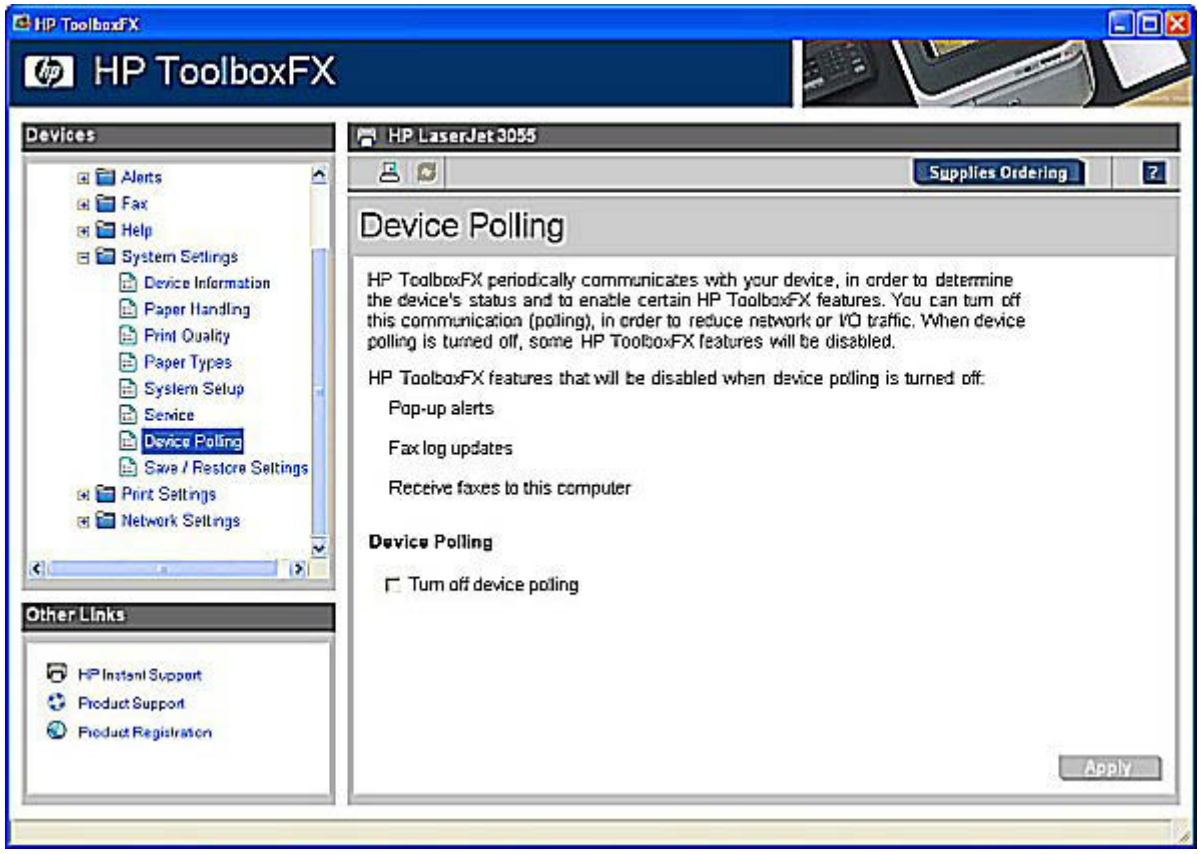


Figure 5-39 Device Polling Settings screen

Selecting **Turn off device polling** on the **Device Polling** screen and then clicking **Apply** does not turn off the HP ToolboxFX, but acts like a master switch to turn off all polling. You can then go back into the HP ToolboxFX and turn off individual components such as the Scan-to functionality or some fax functionality.

Save/Restore Settings

Use the **Save/Restore Settings** screen to save all of the device settings to a file on your computer. You can also load the settings that have been saved into your HP LaserJet all-in-one from this screen.

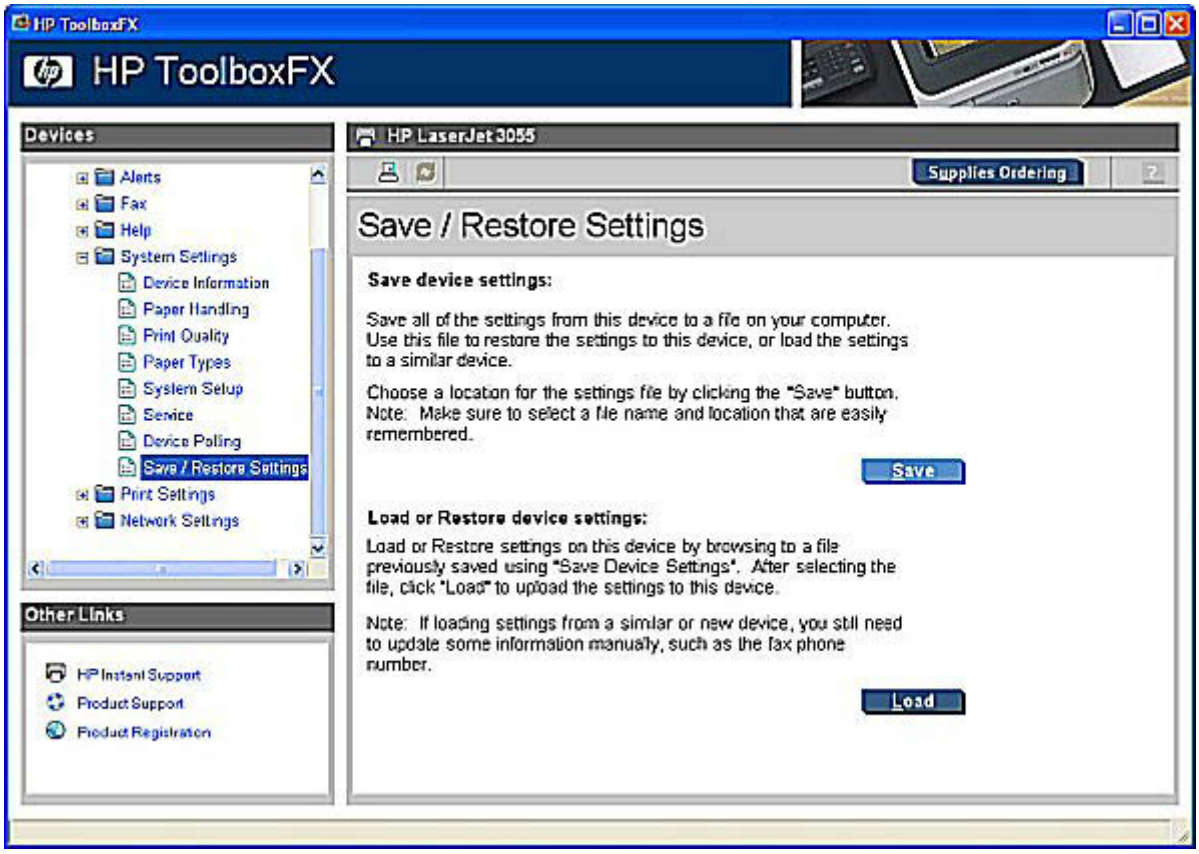


Figure 5-40 **Save / Restore Settings** screen

When you click **Save**, the **Save as** dialog box might be hidden. Look behind your browser window or on the task bar.

You cannot restore settings that were saved from a previous HP product. You can restore only settings that were saved from an HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

NOTE The HP ToolboxFX will not function until settings have been fully loaded and the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one control panel returns to the **Ready** state.

Print Settings folder

The **Print Settings** folder contains the following sub-folders:

- Printing
- PCL5e
- PostScript

Printing

Use the **Printing** screen to change the printing defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

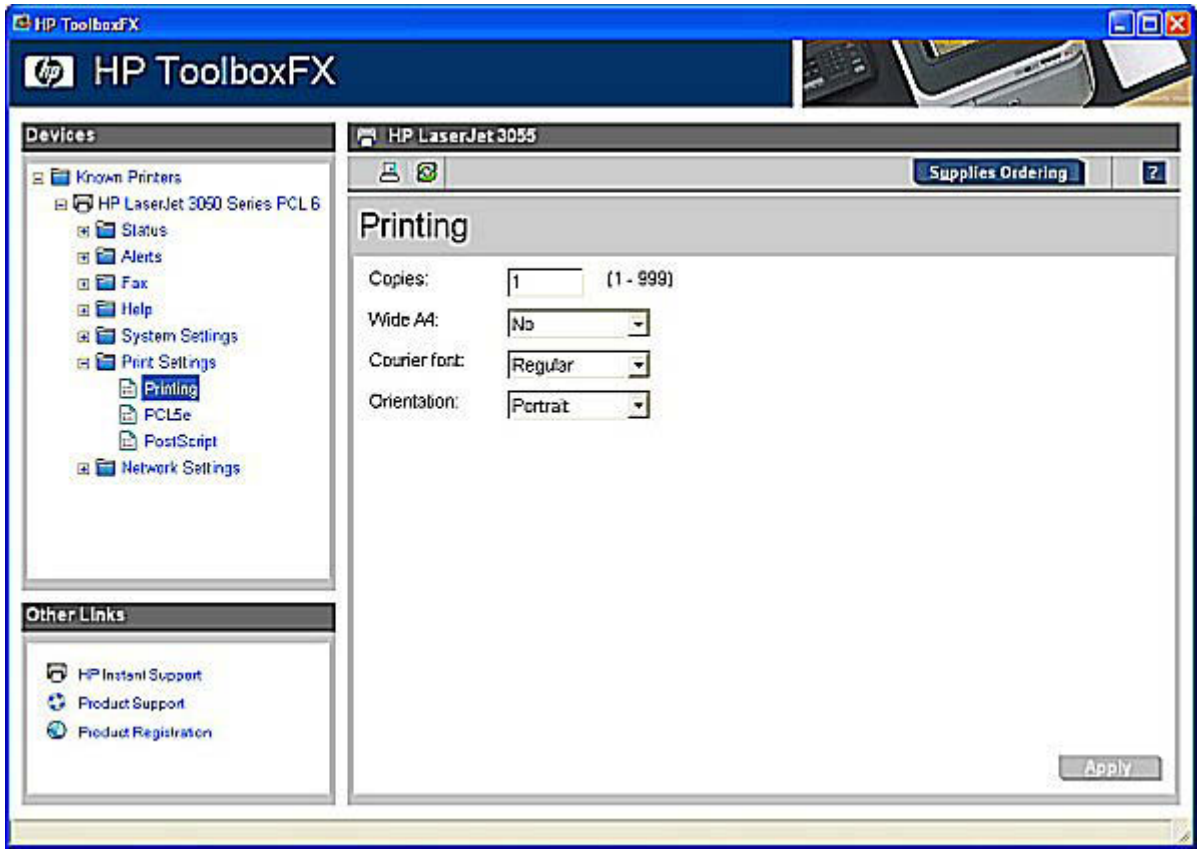


Figure 5-41 **Printing** screen

The following table shows the options and settings available on the **Printing** screen.

Table 5-5 **Printing** options and settings

Option	Settings
Copies	Type a value from 1 to 999.
Wide A4	• Yes • No (default)
Courier font	• Dark • Regular (default)
Orientation	• Landscape • Portrait (default)

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

PCL5e

Use the **PCL5e** screen to change the PCL defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

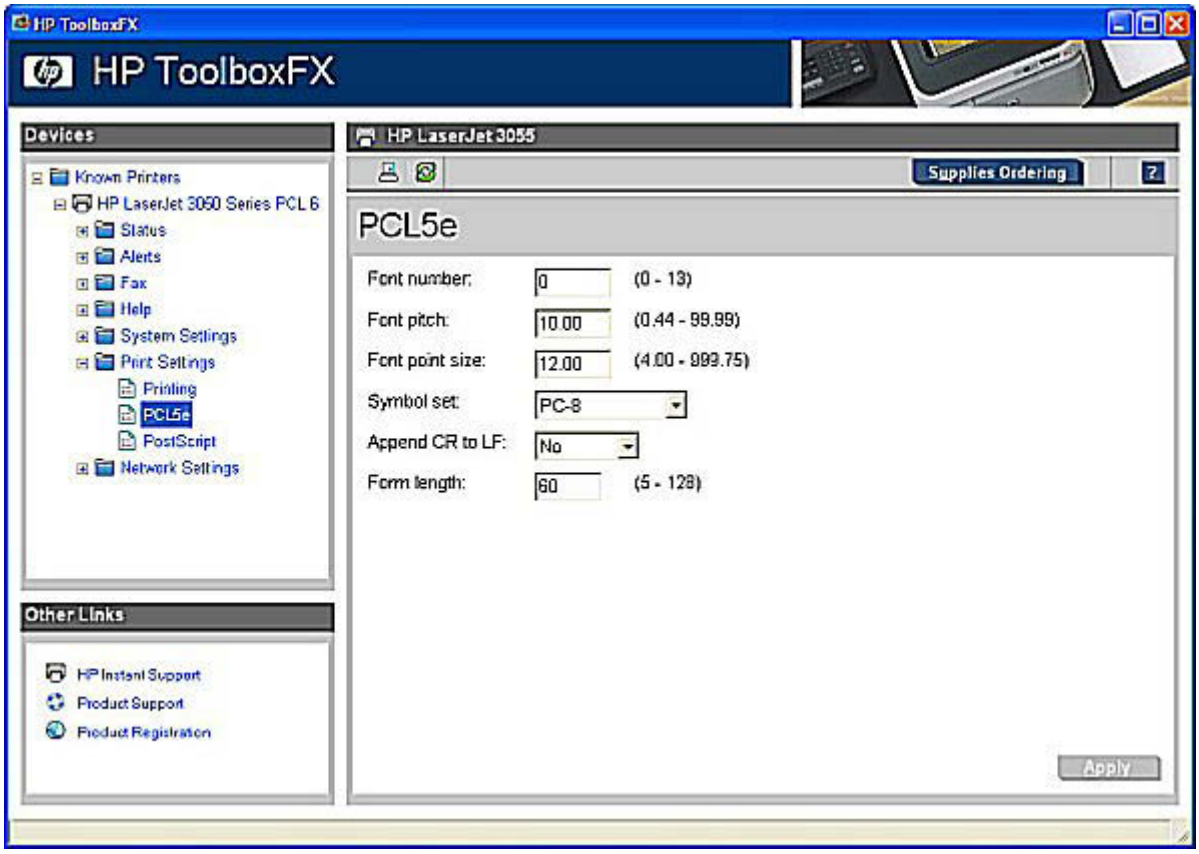


Figure 5-42 **PCL5e** screen

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

PostScript

Use the **PostScript** screen to change the PostScript defaults for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

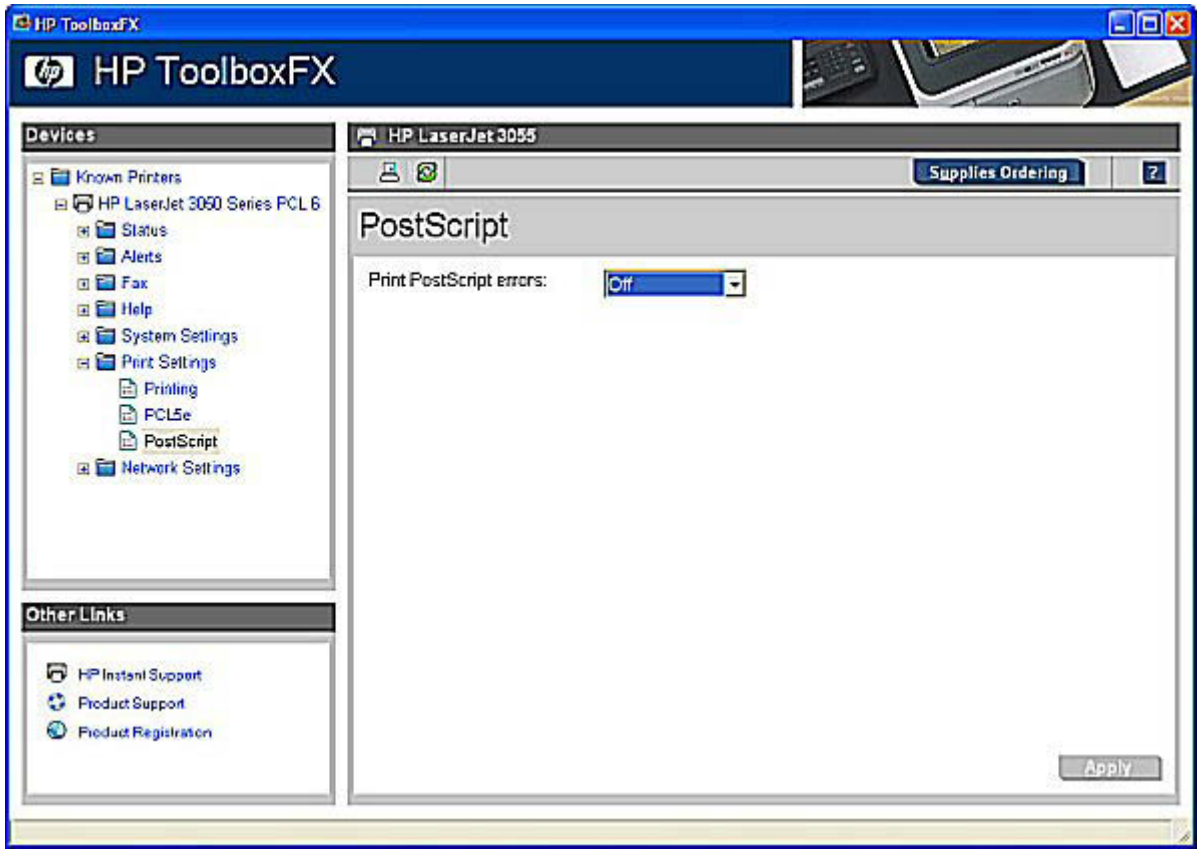


Figure 5-43 **PostScript** screen

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Network Settings folder

The HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one, HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one, HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one, and the HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one contain on-board networking support. They do not require the use of an external Jetdirect box for network connectivity. By using the **Network Settings** options, you can configure the network settings for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one does not contain on-board networking support for TCP/IP. It requires the use of an external Jetdirect box for network connectivity.

See the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 Advanced Network Reference Guide* for more information about the settings in the **Network Settings** folder.

For network installations, the HP ToolboxFX communicates with the HP LaserJet all-in-one by using the network settings that appear on the following **Network Settings** sub-folder screens:

- IP Configuration
- Advanced
- SNMP
- Network Configuration

- Password

CAUTION Changing network settings can cause communication problems between HP ToolboxFX and your product.

IP Configuration

The **IP Configuration** screen shows the settings for basic TCP/IP network configuration. After you change these settings, you must click **Apply** to save the changes. Changing these settings causes the HP LaserJet all-in-one to restart.

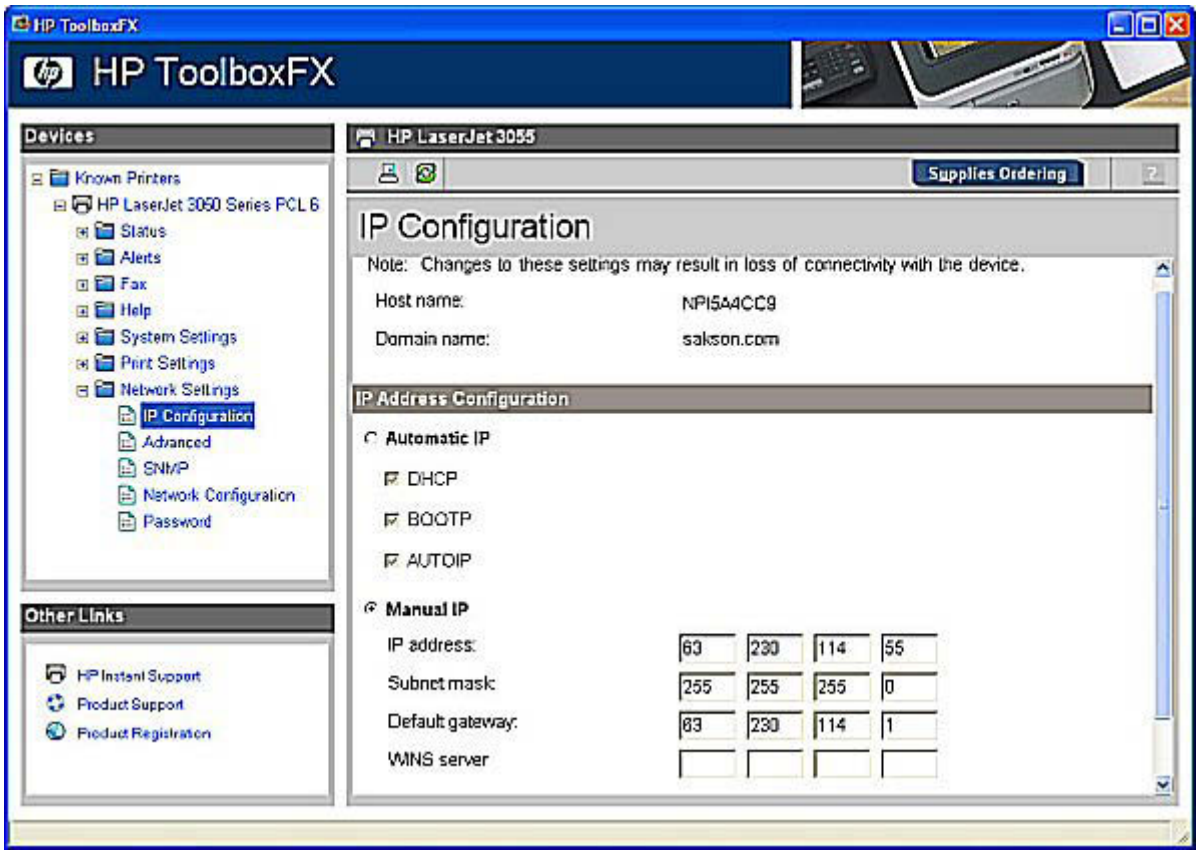


Figure 5-44 IP Configuration screen

The **IP Configuration** screen shows the host name and domain of the HP LaserJet all-in-one. By default, the HP LaserJet all-in-one uses automatic IP configuration and DNS Server. Use this screen to configure the TCP/IP address and DNS Server manually.

The following **IP Address Configuration** options are available:

- **Automatic IP**. This option is selected by default. It causes the HP LaserJet all-in-one to obtain a TCP/IP address from a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, BOOTP server, or AUTOIP.
- **Manual IP**. Select Manual IP to manually specify an Internet Protocol (IP) address (also known as a static IP address). If you select this option, you must specify an IP address in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields.

The following **DNS Address Configuration** options are available:

- **Automatic DNS Server**. This option is selected by default. It causes the HP LaserJet all-in-one to automatically obtain network addresses for DNS servers from the network. If you select this option, a DHCP server provides this information.
- **Manual DNS Server**. Select this option to manually specify network addresses for DNS servers used by the computer. If you select this option, you must type the IP address for your DNS server in **Preferred DNS server** field. If you are not sure which IP address to use, contact your network administrator.

  In the **Alternate DNS server** field, you can also specify the IP address for the alternate or secondary DNS server for this computer. This server is used if the DNS server specified in Preferred DNS server is unavailable.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Advanced

Use the **Advanced** screen to set advanced networking features for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

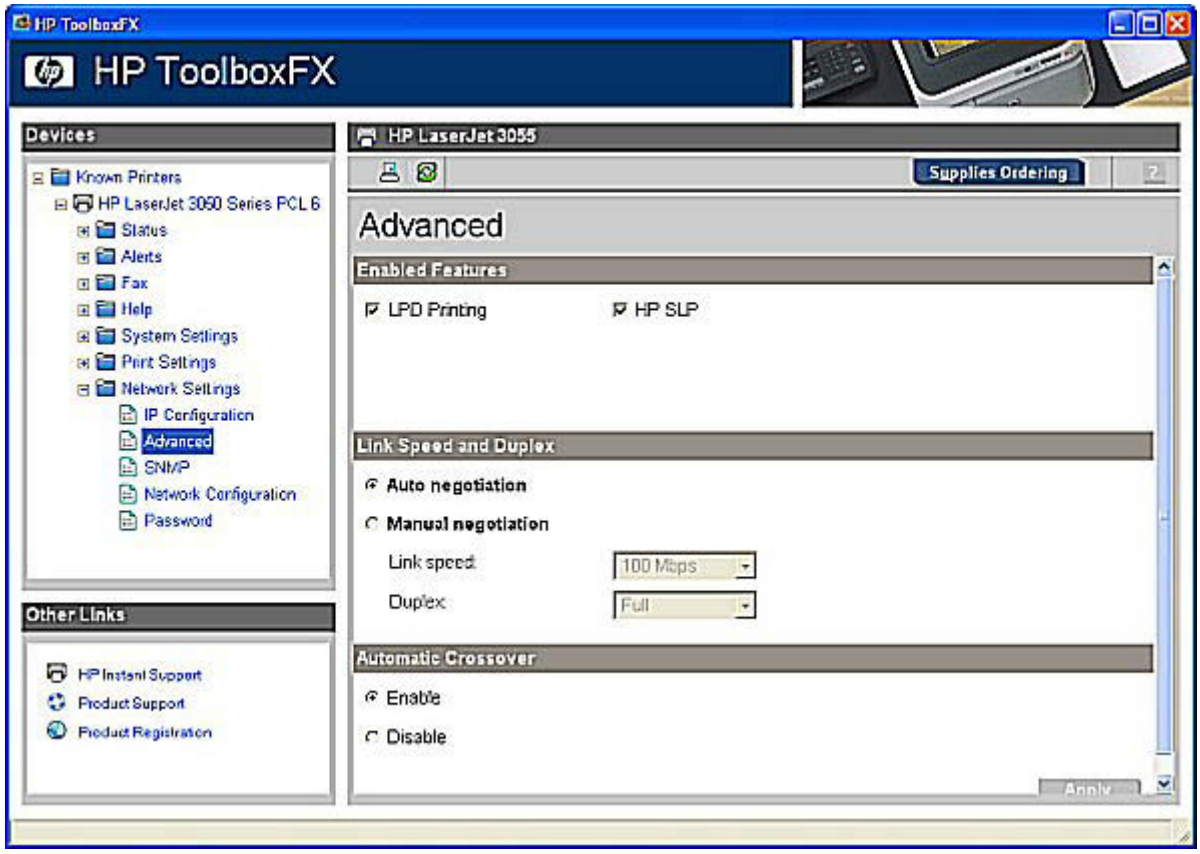


Figure 5-45 Advanced Network Settings screen

The following table shows the options and settings that are available for the **Advanced** screen.

Table 5-6 Advanced Network Settings options and settings

Option	Settings
Enabled Features	• LPD Printing (enabled by default) • HP SLP Discovery (enabled by default)

Link Speed and Duplex	• Auto negotiation (default setting)
	• Manual negotiation
	  • Link speed: 10 megabits per second (Mbps) or 100 Mbps
	  • Duplex: Full or Half

Automatic Crossover	• Enable (default) • Off

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

SNMP

Use the **SNMP** screen to set SNMP networking features for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

CAUTION If you set a community name to anything other than “public”, scanning will not function on your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

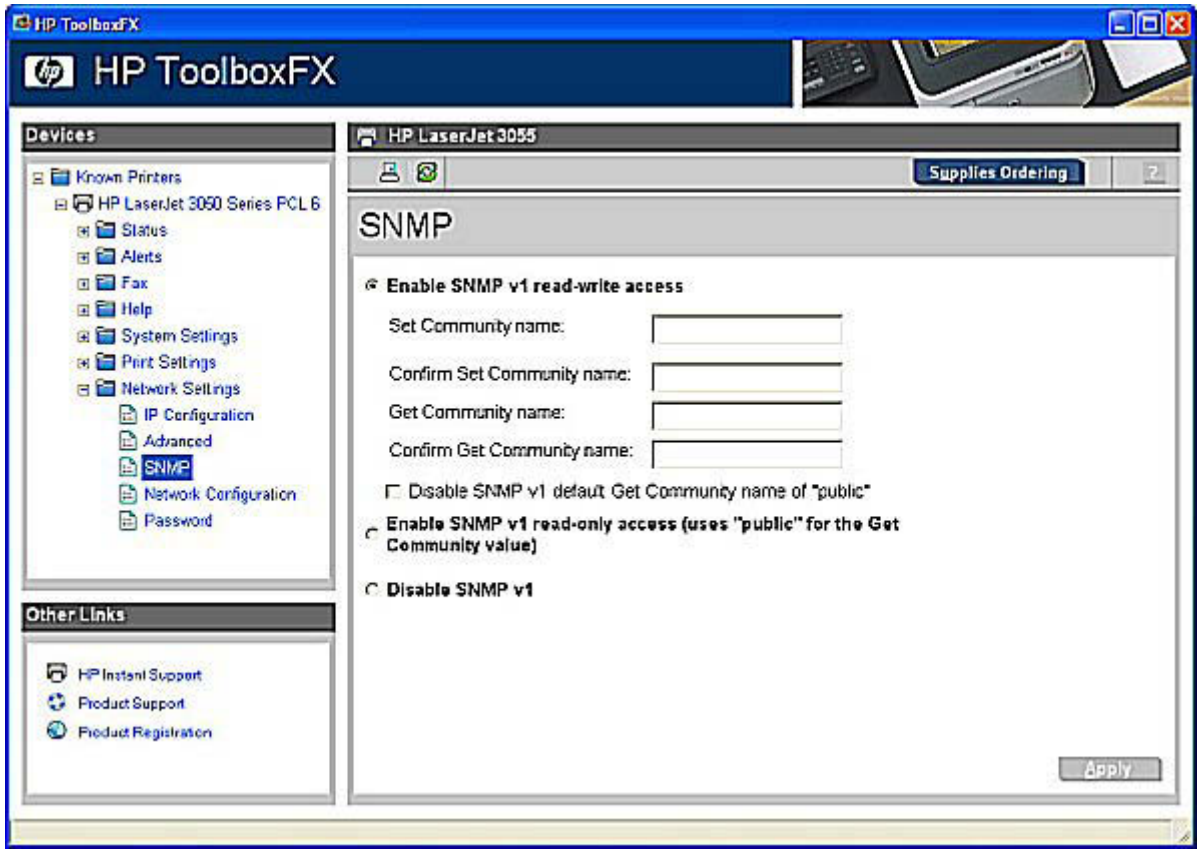


Figure 5-46 SNMP screen

The following options are available on the **SNMP** screen:

- **Enable SNMP v1 read-write access**. Select this option to enable SNMP V1 agents on the HP LaserJet all-in-one. Custom community names can be configured to control management access to the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
  - **Set Community name:** Type the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
  - **Confirm Set Community name:** Retype the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
  - **Get Community name:** Type the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

- **Confirm Get Community name:** Retype the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the HP LaserJet all-in-one.
- **Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of “public”**. Select this option to disable the default Get community name "public". If you select this option, you will need to type values in the **Get Community name** and **Confirm Get Community name** fields.

- **Enable SNMP v1 read-only access (uses “public” for the Get Community value)**. Select this option to enable the SNMP V1 agents on the HP LaserJet all-in-one, but limit access to read-only. Write-access is disabled. The default **Get Community name** "public" is automatically enabled.
- **Disable SNMP v1**. Select this option to disable the SNMP V1 agents on the HP LaserJet all-in-one, which is recommended for secure environments. If SNMP V1 is disabled, some port monitors or discovery utilities might not operate properly.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Network Configuration

The **Network Configuration** screen provides an overview of the network settings that have been enabled for the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

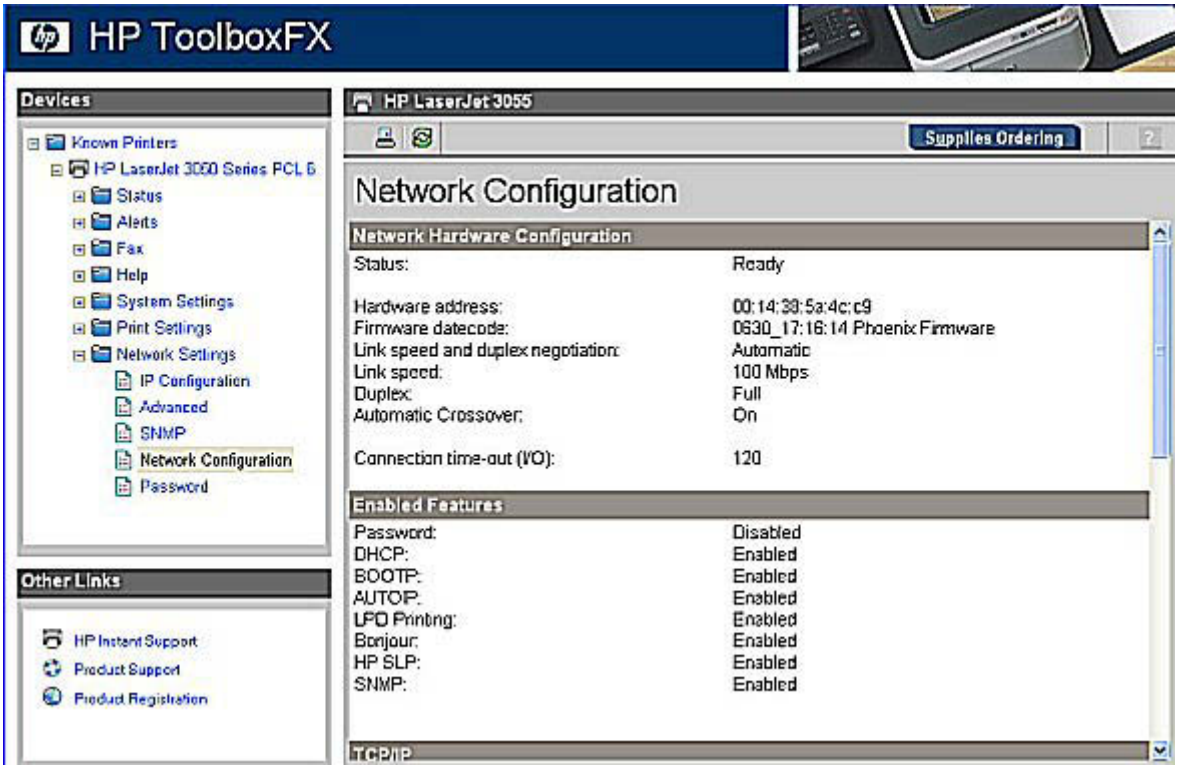


Figure 5-47 Network Configuration screen – 1 of 3

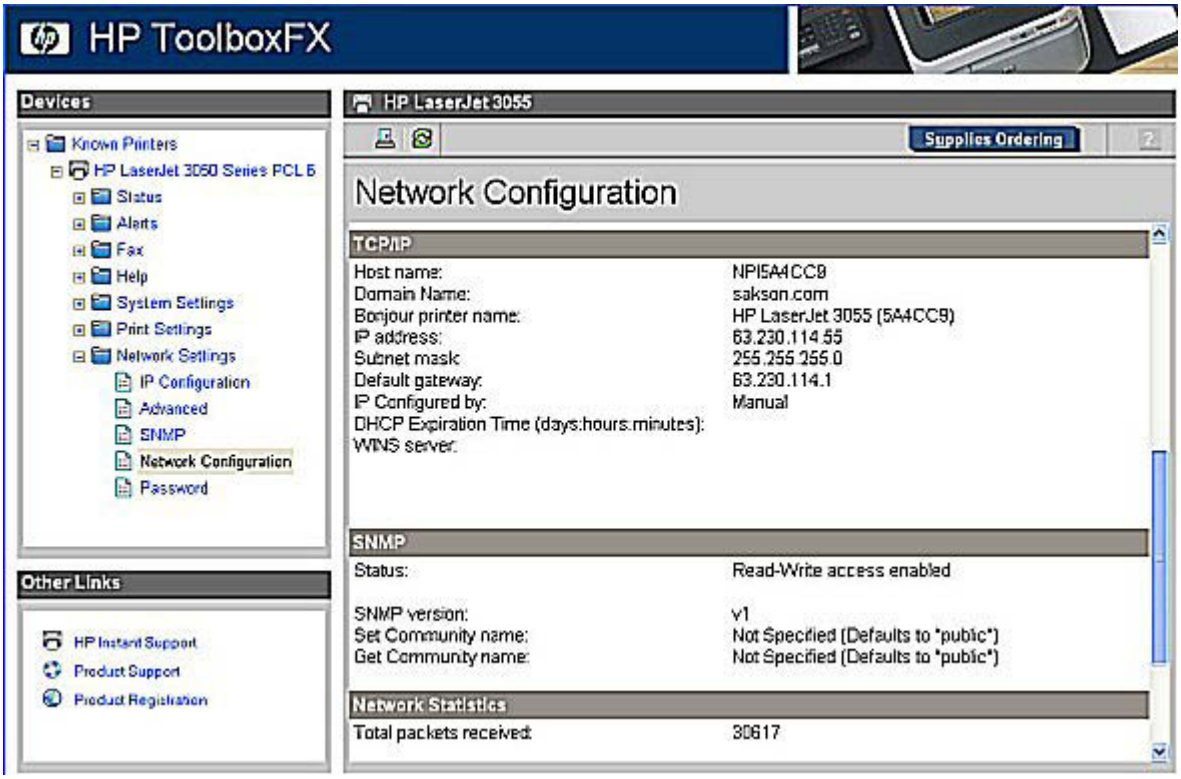


Figure 5-48 **Network Configuration** screen – 2 of 3

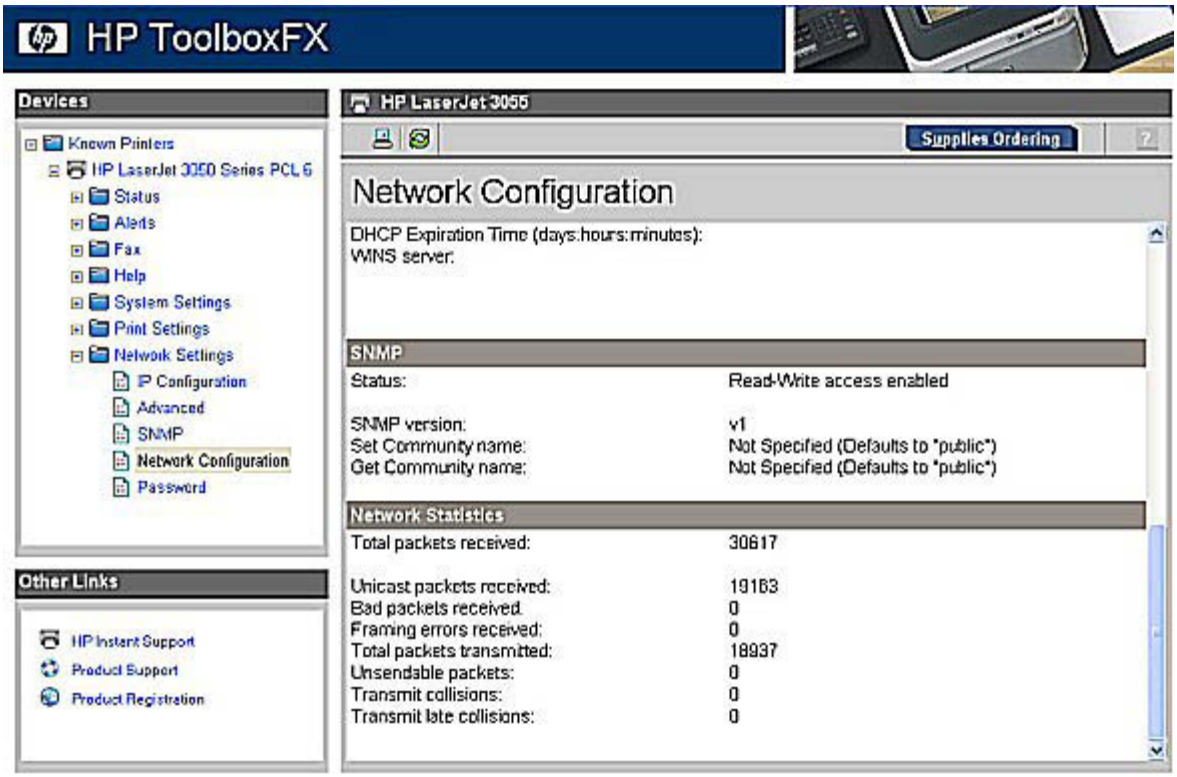


Figure 5-49 **Network Configuration** screen – 3 of 3

The settings appear under the following headings:

- Network Hardware Configuration
- Enabled Features
- TCP/IP
- SNMP
- Network Statistics

Password

Use the **Password** screen to set a password for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

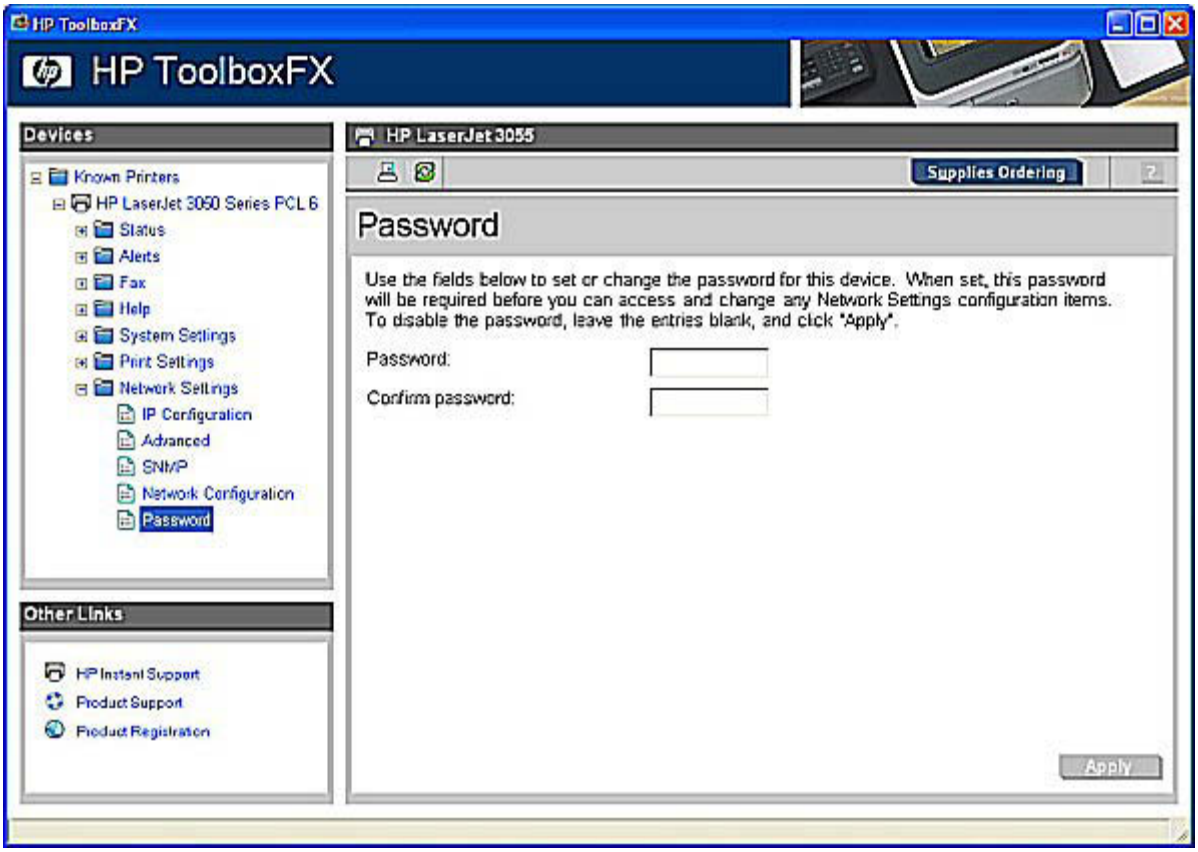


Figure 5-50 Password screen

Network administrators can set user passwords to protect network settings. Once a password is set, only users who know the password have access to the **Network Settings** folder. If a password has been set, users are prompted to type the password. If the typed-in password matches the password stored in the HP LaserJet all-in-one, users can navigate through the **Network Settings** screens and make changes to the settings. Users who do not type the correct password within three attempts are not allowed access to the **Network Settings** screens.

If the password is lost or forgotten, the factory settings for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one must be restored and a new password must be assigned.

NOTE You must click **Apply** for your changes to take effect.

Other screens

The following table lists screens that are also available through the HP ToolboxFX.

Screen	Access
About HP ToolboxFX screen	Click the **HP** logo that appears in the upper-left corner of the HP ToolboxFX screens.
HP Instant Support	Click the **HP Instant Support** link in the **Other Links** box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
Product Support screen	Click the **Product Support** link in the **Other Links** box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
Product Registration screen	Click the **Product Registration** link in the **Other Links** box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
Supplies Ordering screen	Click the **Supplies Ordering** link in upper-right corner on all HP ToolboxFX screens.

About HP ToolboxFX dialog box

Click the HP logo in the HP ToolboxFX heading banner on any HP ToolboxFX screen to gain access to the **About HP ToolboxFX** dialog box. This dialog box shows the software version number and a copyright notice. This dialog box also shows the version number for each HP ToolboxFX product that is installed.

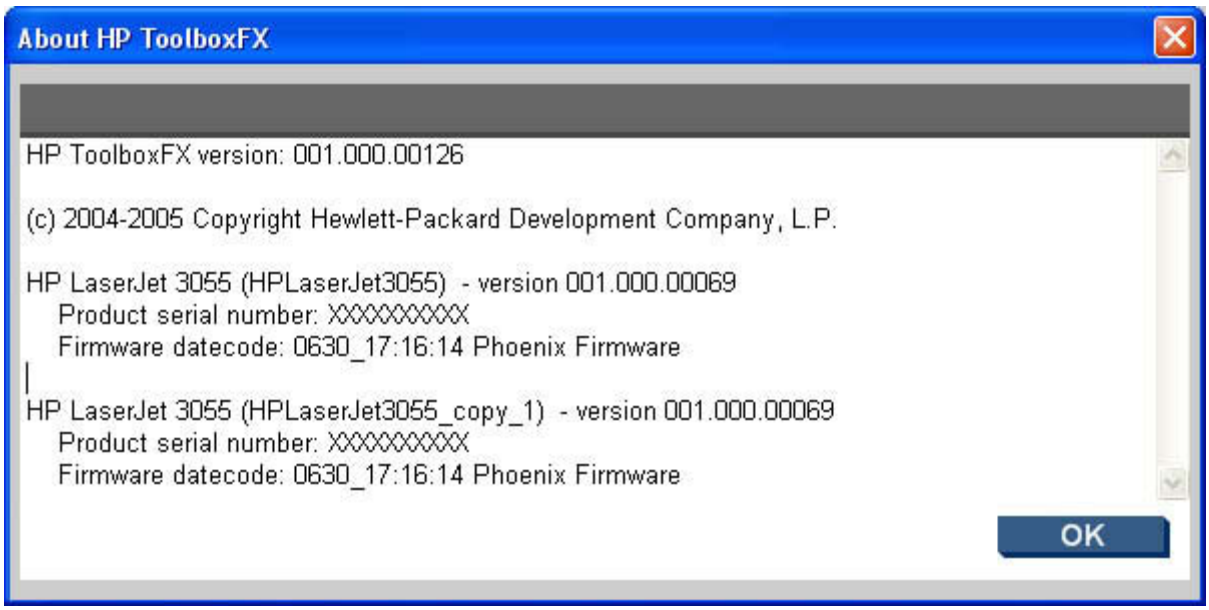


Figure 5-51 **About HP ToolboxFX** dialog box

HP Instant Support

Click **HP Instant Support** to access self-help based on information sent from the product to the HP Web site. The help includes recommendations for troubleshooting, firmware upgrades, and reference documentation that is customized to respond to the most recent events that have occurred on your product.

Product Support

The **Product Support** link connects you to a Web page that contains links to online support for your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

Product Registration

The **Product Registration** link connects you to a Web page that helps you register your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

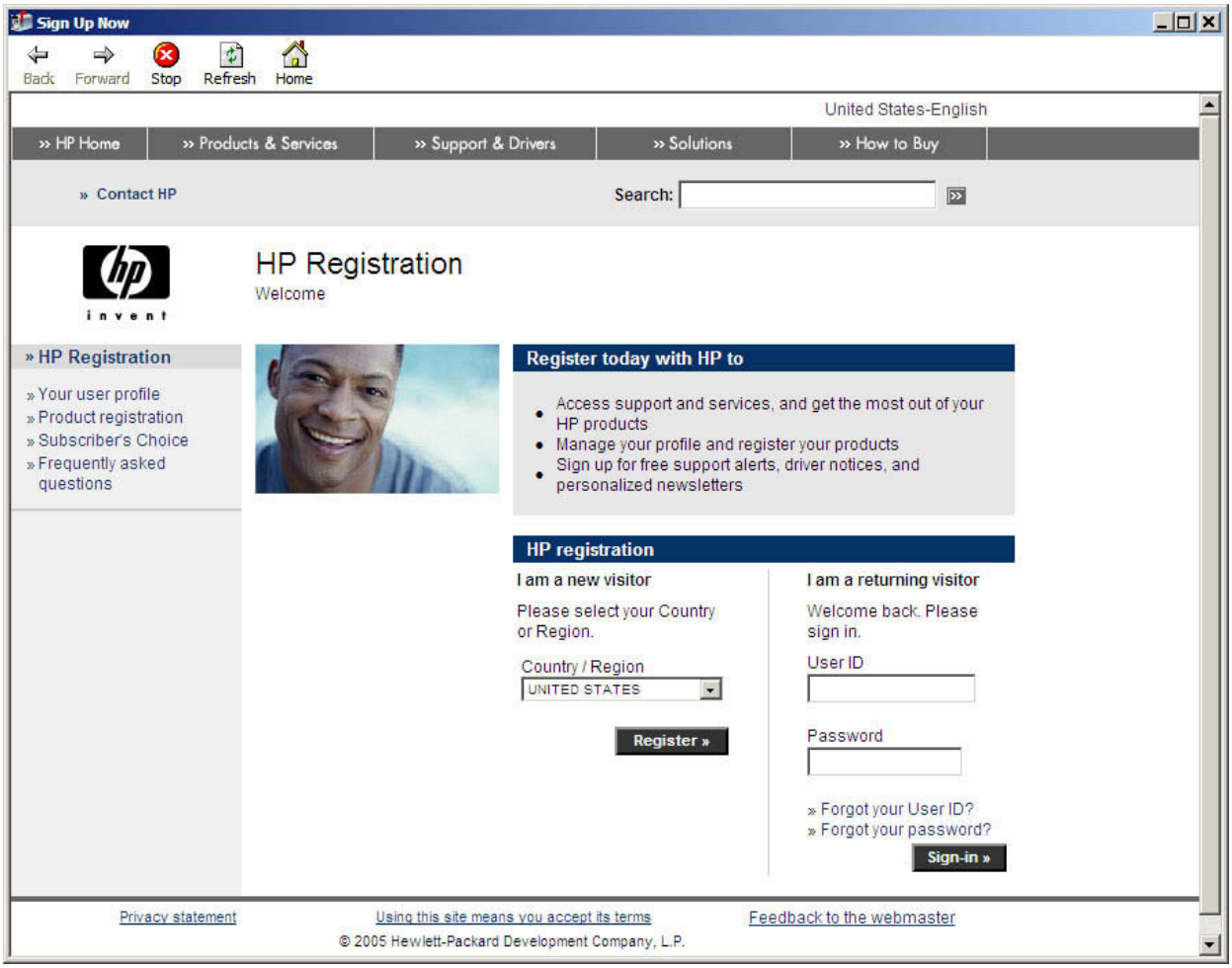


Figure 5-52 Product Registration screen

Supplies Ordering

The **Supplies Ordering** link connects you to a Web page that helps you order supplies online from a reseller of your choice. The supplies you need for your HP LaserJet all-in-one are pre-selected. You can change quantities or select additional items. Your items are dropped into the shopping cart, ready for checkout, ensuring that the correct supplies are ordered through your selected reseller.

6 Installing Windows printing-system components

NOTE This chapter provides installation information about the HP LaserJet all-in-one software for Windows only. For information about Macintosh installations, see Macintosh software overview.

This chapter provides information about the following topics:

- Installation overview
- Installation options
- Printing-system software installation
- Uninstall

Installation overview

NOTE The Readiris software uses a separate installer that comes on a separate CD.

The software for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products comes on a single CD. On Windows systems, the Setup program installs the HP LaserJet all-in-one software from the CD onto the hard disk and updates Windows files.

During installation, the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one presents two options in Windows 2000 and Windows XP operating systems:

- Minimum Installation
- Typical Installation

Only a Minimum Installation occurs in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me, and no option appears. The following list shows the components of each installation.

- Minimum installation
  - HP PCL 6 Unidriver in Windows 2000 and Windows XP; HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me
  - Scan driver
  - HP LaserJet Scan (limited functions available)
  - Fax Setup utility (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one)
  - HP Software Update
  - HP Web Registration
  - *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*
- Typical installation
  - HP ToolboxFX
  - HP LaserJet Scan
  - HP Send Fax (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one)
  - HP Extended Capabilities (optional)
  - HP Software Update
  - HP Web Registration
  - HP PCL 6 Unidriver in Windows 2000 and Windows XP
  - Scan driver (TWAIN and WIA for Windows XP)
  - Fax driver (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one)
  - Fax Setup utility (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one)
  - *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*

For all supported operating systems, each installation option presents a series of query dialog boxes that guides you through the installation process. You are asked to provide information about your computer environment. The Installer guides you through the installation, whether you are configuring a directly-connected or a networked HP LaserJet all-in-one.

The installer can detect hardware and network connections and help guide the installation. For example, if the installer detects an HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, it can automatically configure the software connection to that product. This saves several steps. If the installer detects fax capabilities or a network, it can also direct you to set up those features.

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one does not support faxing.

If you want to change the configuration settings, or if changes to your telephone service or computer environment require new settings, the product-configuration software provides a simple, intuitive interface for updating configuration settings. This is also a convenient alternative to specifying settings through the product control panel.

Installation options

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software can be used with the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products in the following configurations:

- Install the full HP LaserJet all-in-one software on a computer that is directly connected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one through a USB port.
- Install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software on a computer that has access to a network to which the HP LaserJet all-in-one is connected.

Windows installation for direct connections

Use the following instructions to install the product software on a computer that is running , Windows 2000 or Windows XP (32-bit only).

NOTE Set up and turn on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one before installing the software. Do *not* connect the HP LaserJet all-in-one to the computer until the software installation program prompts you.

You must have Administrator privileges (on start and restart) to install the software on Windows 2000 or Windows XP.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Insert the HP LaserJet all-in-one software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

   NOTE If your CD-ROM does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the HPSETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

3. Click **Install HP LaserJet Software** and follow the onscreen prompts.
4. If you are prompted to restart your computer, click **Yes**.
5. After installation of the software, dialog boxes appear that allow you to print a test page, register your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one over the Web, and set up faxes (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one).

Setting up Windows sharing (peer-to-peer networking)

This section describes procedures for using Windows sharing to make the HP LaserJet all-in-one available to network users when the HP LaserJet all-in-one is directly connected to a computer.

Peer-to-peer networking is a feature of Microsoft operating systems, not of HP print drivers. If these procedures are not successful, or for more information about peer-to-peer networking procedures, contact Microsoft at the following Web site:

www.microsoft.com

NOTE Using Windows sharing, the person who uses the computer that is directly connected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one can allow other users on the network to print to the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

When the HP LaserJet all-in-one is shared, install the print drivers on all of the computers that you want to be able to print to the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

The client computers will have print-only functionality for the HP LaserJet all-in-one.

When you have set up the host computer to share your HP LaserJet all-in-one, you must also configure the client computers. For information about setting up the client computers for other network users who want to use the HP LaserJet all-in-one, see Setting up client computers running Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows 2000 or Setting up client computers running Windows XP.

Setting up the host computer running Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows 2000

At the computer that is directly connected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for your HP LaserJet all-in-one, and then click **Sharing**.

   NOTE If **Sharing** does not appear on the menu, you must first enable printer sharing for Windows 98 SE or Windows Me.

3. On the **Sharing** tab, click the **Share As** option button, and then type a name for the HP LaserJet all-in-one in the **Share Name** field. Click **OK**.

Setting up the host computer running Windows XP

At the computer that is directly connected to the HP LaserJet all-in-one, perform the following steps.

1. Click **Start**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.
2. In the printer list, right-click the icon for your HP LaserJet all-in-one, and then click **Sharing**.
3. On the **Sharing** tab, click the **Share this printer** option button, and then type a name for the HP LaserJet all-in-one in the **Share Name** field. Click **OK**.

Setting up client computers running Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows 2000

At the computer that will share the HP LaserJet all-in-one, perform the following steps.

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Double-click the **Add Printer** icon to open the **Add Printer** wizard.
3. Click **Next** to start the wizard.
4. Click the **Network Printer** option button, and then click **Next**.
5. Type the path and share name of the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one to which you want to connect.

   -or-

   Click **Browse** and navigate to find the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one to which you want to connect.

6. Click **Yes** or **No** when asked if you want to use this HP LaserJet all-in-one as your default printer for Windows-based programs, and then click **Next**.

7. Click **Finish** to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer** wizard.

NOTE You might need the HP LaserJet all-in-one software CD to complete the print driver installations.

Setting up client computers running Windows XP

At the computer that will share the HP LaserJet all-in-one, perform the following steps.

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

2. In the column to the left, under **Printer Tasks**, click **Add a printer** to open the **Add Printer** wizard.

3. Click **Next** to start the wizard.

4. Click **A network printer or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**.

5. Type the path and share name of the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one to which you want to connect, and then click **Next**.

6. Click **Yes** or **No** when asked if you want to use this printer as your default printer for Windows-based programs, and then click **Next**.

7. Click **Finish** to complete the installation and close the **Add Printer** wizard.

Windows Installation for computers on a network

This section provides information about the following topics:

- Network setup
- Windows installation instructions for networked computers

Network setup

NOTE Set up, turn on, and connect theHP LaserJet all-in-one to the network before installing the software.

To connect an HP LaserJet all-in-one to a network, use the following instructions:

1. Connect the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one to the network.

2. Turn on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

NOTE You must complete the power-up sequence in this order or the installer discovery utility fails to recognize the HP LaserJet all-in-one. It might take a few minutes for the HP LaserJet all-in-one to obtain a TCP/IP address.

3. To print a configuration page from the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, press Menu. Press the > button until **Reports** appears on the control panel. Press the Enter button. Press the > button until **Config report** appears on the control panel. Press the Enter button.

4. To complete the product installation, install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software. Use the information from the test pages to specify the network variables during installation.

Windows installation instructions for networked computers

NOTE You must complete the network setup before completing this procedure.

Each computer that has the HP LaserJet all-in-one software installed can use all of the HP LaserJet all-in-one features that are available over a network connection except for the **Receive faxes to this computer** feature, which can only be enabled for one computer.

To install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software on networked Windows operating systems, use the following instructions:

NOTE You must have administrator privileges (upon start and restart) to install the software on Windows 2000 or Windows XP.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Insert the HP LaserJet all-in-one software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

   NOTE If the CD-ROM does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the HPSETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

3. Click **Install HP LaserJet Software** and follow the onscreen prompts.
4. When the Installer software prompts you to select how the HP LaserJet all-in-one will be connected, select **Connected via the network**, and then click **Next**. Follow the onscreen instructions.
5. If you are prompted to restart the computer, click **Yes**.
6. After installation of the software, dialog boxes appear that allow you to print a test page, register your HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one over the Web, and set up faxes (except for the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one).

Installing the print driver only

Use the following instructions to install only the print driver.

Print driver installation for Windows 98 SE or Windows Me

You might need to install the Install Network Printer Wizard to complete the following procedure. To download the Install Network Printer Wizard from HP's Web site, go to www.hp.com/go and search for the wizard.

1. From the **Start** menu, click **Settings** and then click **Printers**.
2. Double-click **Add Printer** and then click **Next**.
3. When asked if the HP LaserJet all-in-one is a local or network printer, click **Network Printer**, and then click **Next**.
4. Click **Have Disk** on the wizard screen that appears.
5. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. Navigate to the X:\Drivers\WIN98_Me/<language> folder (where X is the letter of your CD-ROM drive).

6. Double-click the **PCL6**, **PCL5e**, or **PS** folder, depending on which driver that you want to install, and then double-click the .INF file that you find in that folder.

7. Complete the installation. When prompted, print a test page to ensure that the print driver is installed correctly.

Print-driver installation for Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

NOTE If a port is not available for installation in Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003, you can create a port, click **Have Disk**, and insert the printing-system software CD that came with your product.

1. From the **Start** menu, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP).

2. Double-click **Add Printer**, and then click **Next**.

3. When asked if the HP LaserJet all-in-one is a local or network printer, select local, and then click **Next**.

NOTE Use of a local port is recommended, if it is available. If no local port is available, create a new port.

4. You might need to first select the HP LaserJet all-in-one from the list of printers or type a TCP/IP address. If the print driver is not available, the **Add Printer Wizard** dialog box appears. Click **Have Disk** on the wizard screen.

5. Insert the CD into the drive.

6. To install the HP PCL 6 Unidriver, navigate to the root folder of the CD (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive) and click **OK**. The Install Printer Software dialog box appears. Select the driver for your product and click **OK**.

   To install the HP PCL 5e Unidriver or the PS Emulation Driver, click **Browse**. Navigate to the X:\Drivers\Win2000_XP folder and click Open. The **Install from Disk** dialog box appears. Click **OK**. Select the driver for your product and click **Next**.

7. Complete the installation. When prompted, print a test page to ensure that the print driver is installed correctly.

Hardware-first installation

Use the following instructions to install the product on a computer that is running Windows 98 SE or Windows Me.

1. Turn on the computer and the product.

2. Verify that the product is in the **Ready** state.

3. Attach the USB cable between the computer and the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

4. Insert the HP LaserJet all-in-one software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

NOTE If the CD-ROM does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the HPSETUP.EXE file in the root directory of the CD.

5. When the Add New Hardware Wizard screen appears, click **Next**.
6. When the Add New Hardware Wizard screen shows that Windows has finished installing the new hardware device, click **Finish**. The HP LaserJet all-in-one installer launches automatically to finish the installation, and then closes on its own.

Printing-system software installation

The following sections describe the dialog box options that appear during the HP LaserJet all-in-one software installation on Windows operating systems.

NOTE In the installation sequences described in this section, the product name HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one represents the specific HP LaserJet all-in-one that you are installing.

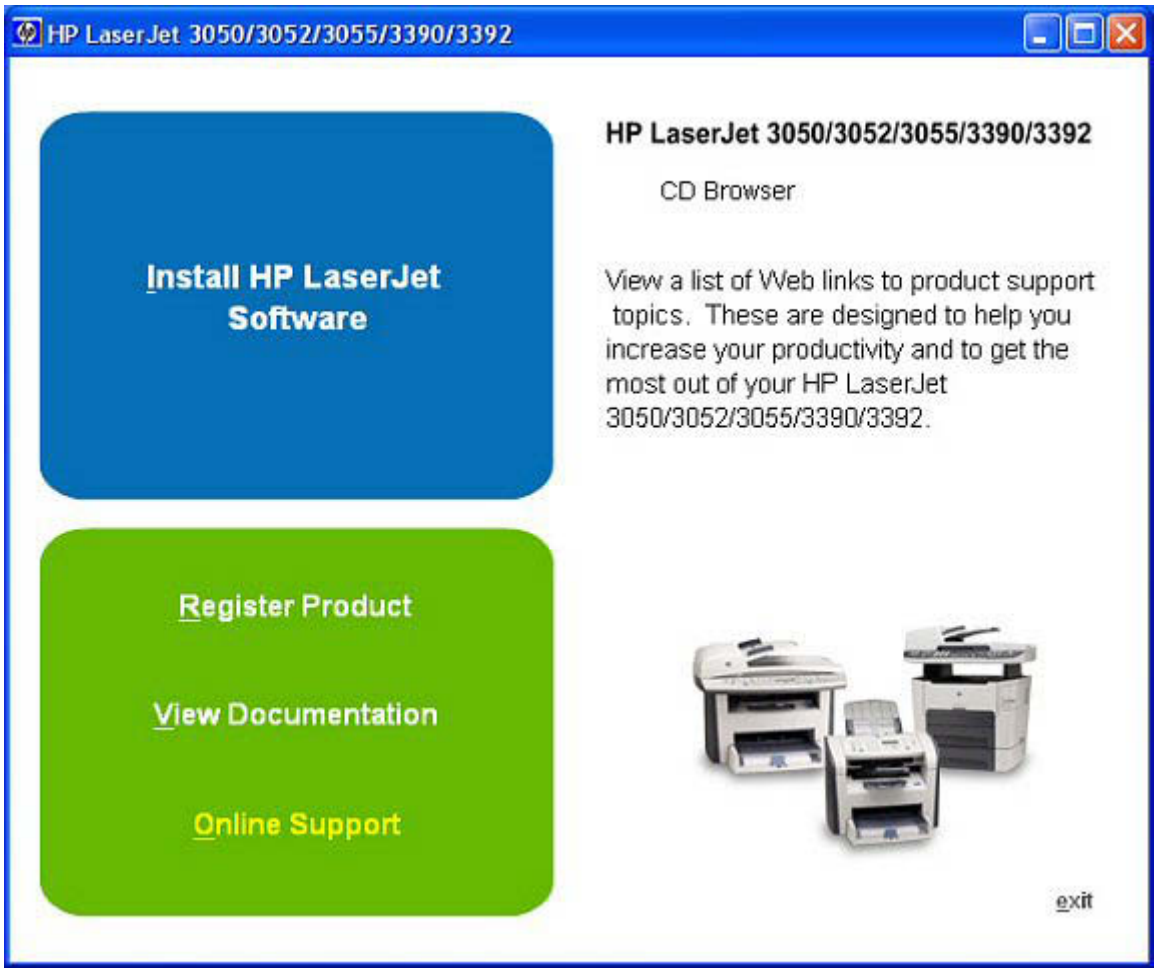


Figure 6-1 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one CD Browser screen

The first dialog box includes the following command buttons:

Install HP LaserJet Software. This link contains the initial command for installing the software. Click this link to close the CD Browser and the initial installation wizard and open the **Welcome to the HP LaserJet All-in-One Setup Wizard** screen. For information about installing the printing-system software over a USB connection, see Figure 6-4 USB install – Welcome to the Install Wizard dialog box. For information about installing the printing-system software over a network connection, see Network installation dialog box options for Windows

Register Product. Click this option to open the HP Web registration page through your Web browser.

View Documentation. Click this option to go to the **HP LaserJet documentation** screen.

Online support. Click this option to go to the **Online Support** screen.

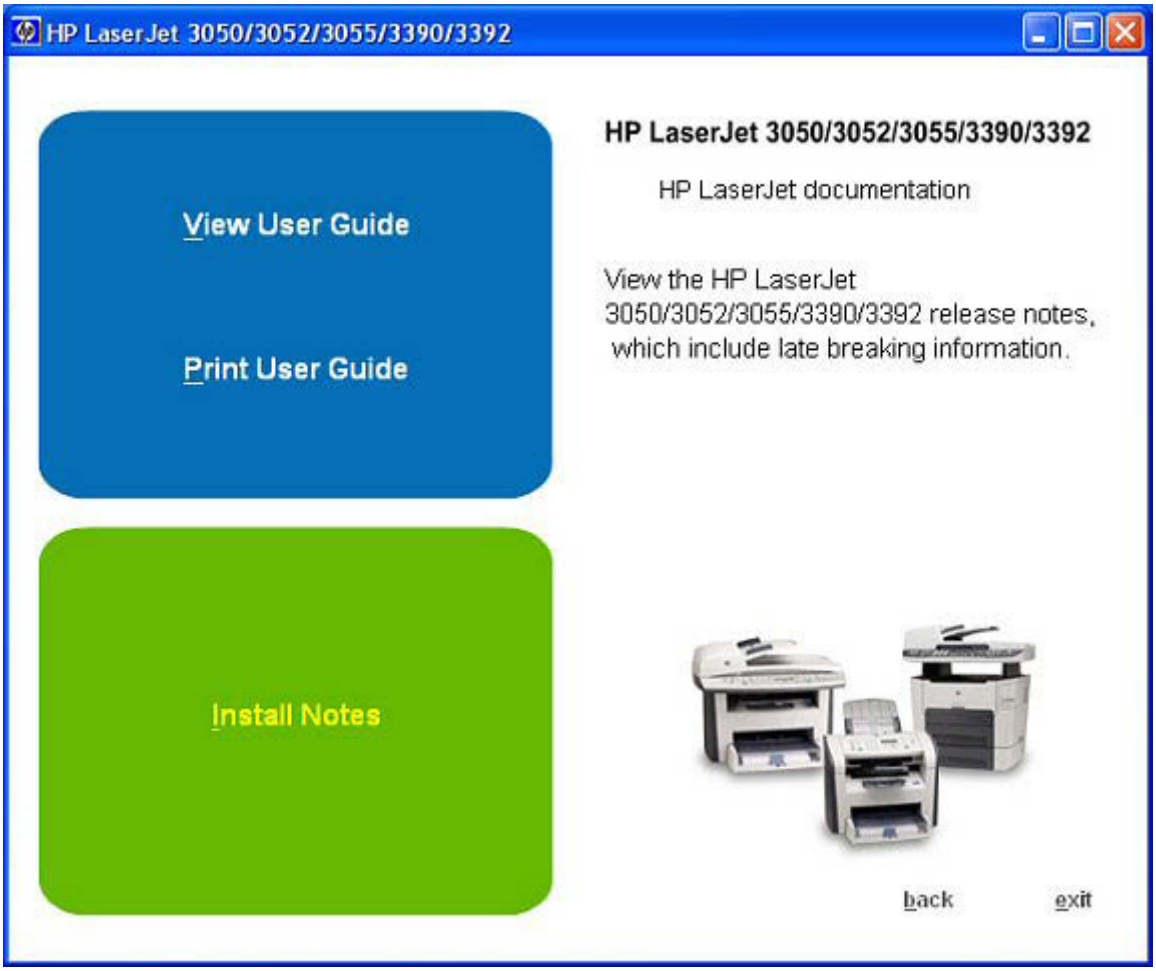


Figure 6-2 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one documentation

View User Guide: Click this option to open the .CHM (online help) version of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

Print User Guide: Click this option to open Adobe Acrobat Reader and see a printable version of the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide* in .PDF format.

Install Notes: Click this option to open the Hewlett-Packard LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One Install Notes in .HTM format.

Click **back** to return to the **CD Browser** screen.

Figure 6-3 HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one Online Support

Click **Product Support** to open another screen where you can select the product for which you want information. Clicking any of these options starts your Web browser and opens the product support page on the HP Web site.

Click **hp.com** to start your computer Web browser and open the hp.com Web site.

Click **Order Supplies** to start your Web browser and open the HP Web site to order supplies.

Click **back** to return to the CD browser screen.

Click **exit** to close the CD browser.

USB installation dialog box options for Windows

NOTE For USB installations, HP recommends that you install the software before connecting the HP LaserJet all-in-one to the computer (software-first installation). These instructions are for a software-first installation.

Use these instructions the first time you install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software.

This section shows the dialog boxes that appear when you install the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one over a direct connection (USB).

Click the **Back** button, in any dialog box where it is active, to return to the previous dialog box. Click the **Cancel** button, in any dialog box where it is active, to cancel the installation.

NOTE The sequence of dialog boxes might differ from what is shown here, depending on your product and the options that you select.

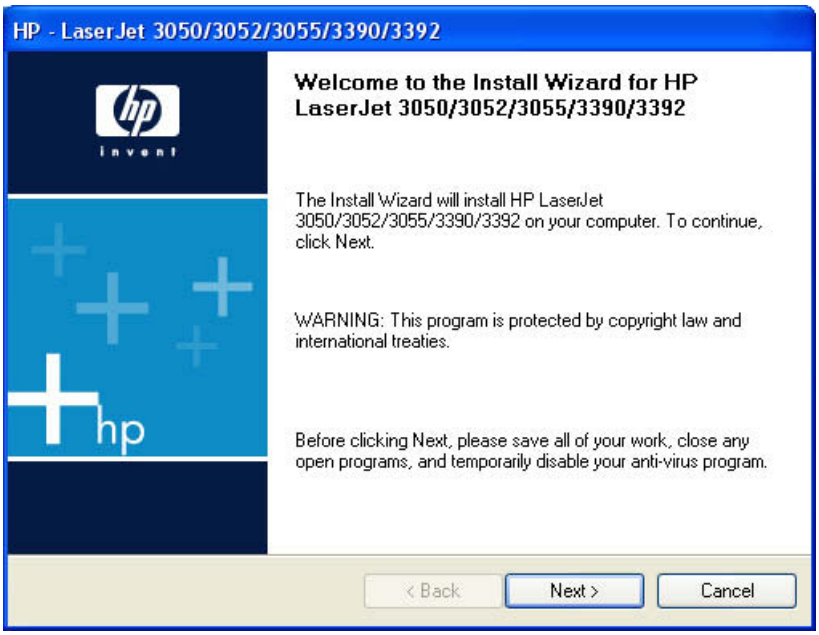


Figure 6-4 USB install – **Welcome to the Install Wizard** dialog box

Click **Next** to continue. Between dialog boxes, a current-progress screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. The current-progress screen appears throughout the installation, but is sometimes covered by a new dialog box that contains the next option in the installation sequence.

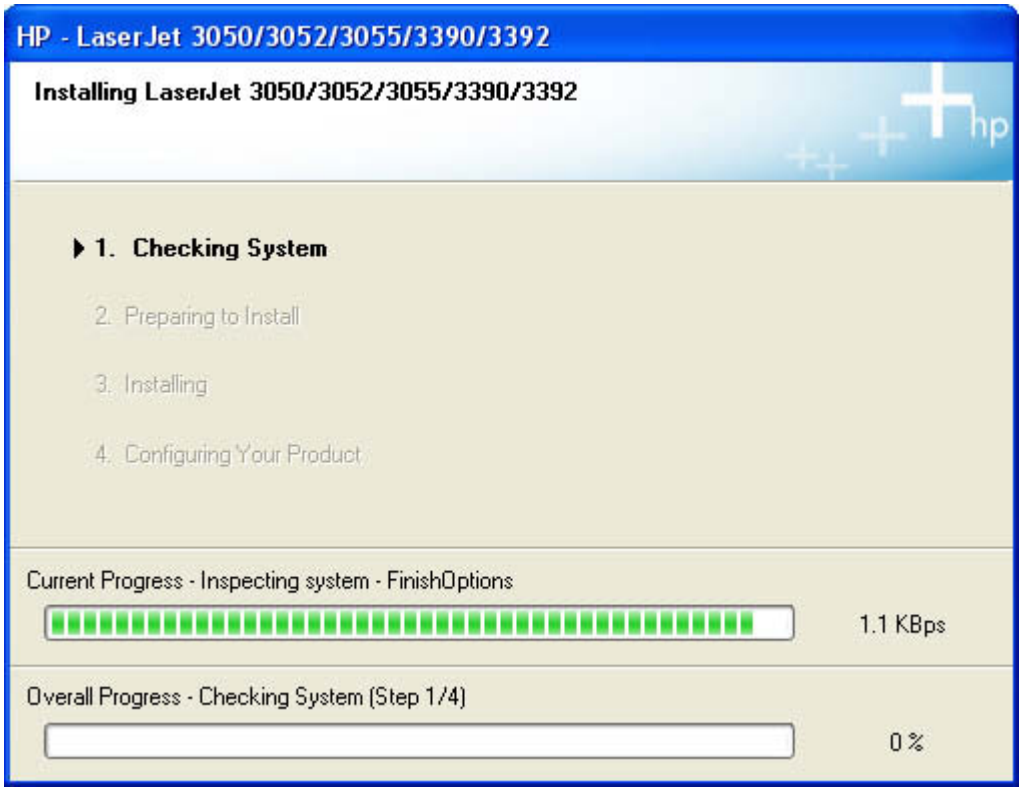


Figure 6-5 USB install – Sample screen showing current progress

NOTE The **Check for recommended installation updates** dialog box appears only if the installer detects that a network connection is available.

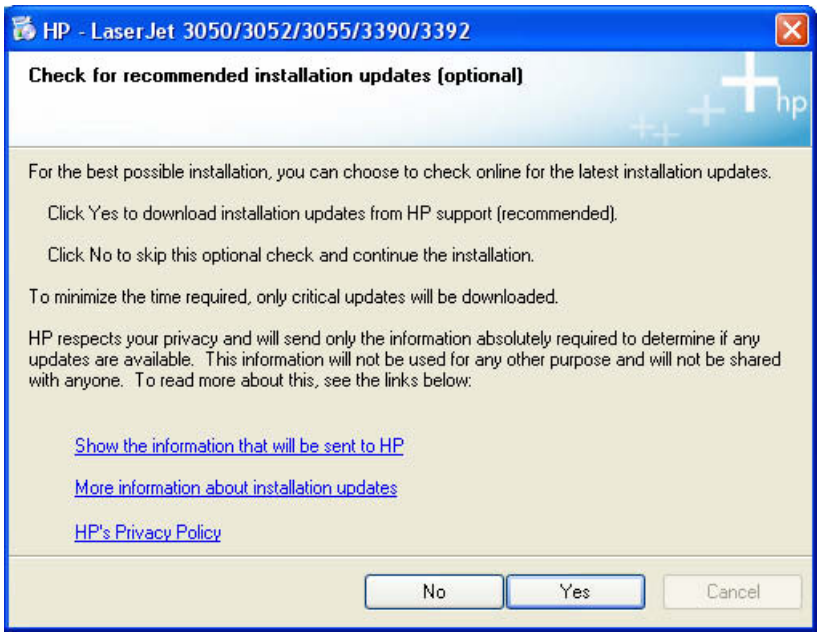


Figure 6-6 USB install – **Check for recommended installation updates (optional)** dialog box

If you have Web access, you can click **Yes** to check for installation updates for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one. This step is optional.

Click any of the links to open a screen that provides further information:

- **Show the information that will be sent to HP**
- **More information about installation updates**
- **HP's Privacy Policy**

Click **No** to continue the installation without checking for installation updates.

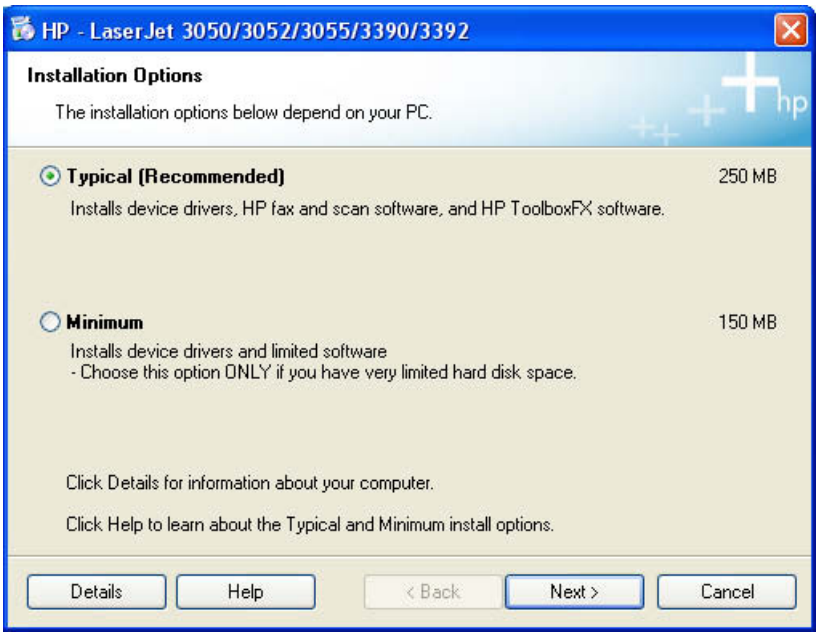


Figure 6-7 USB install – **Installation Options** dialog box

Select the **Typical (Recommended)** option to install the complete printing-system software.

Select **Minimum** to install only limited software.

Click **Help** to gain access to information about the **Typical (Recommended)** and **Minimum** installations.

Click **Details** to find out if your system meets the recommended installation requirements. A sample **System Requirements Results** dialog box is shown in the following illustration.

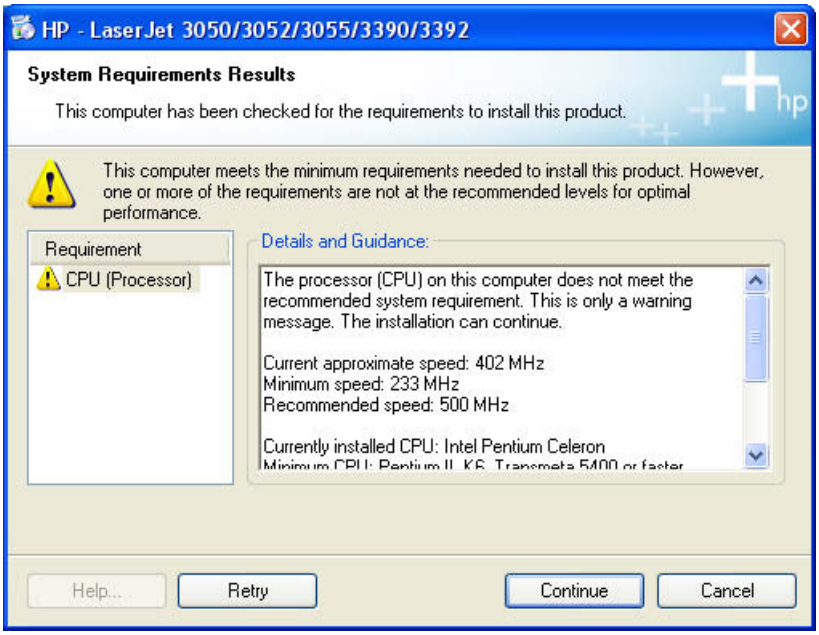


Figure 6-8 USB Install – sample **System Requirements Results** dialog box

NOTE When conditions allow, the **Continue** button is available and installation can proceed despite the warning, such as in the **System Requirements Results** screen in the foregoing illustration. If a blocking condition prevents the installation from continuing, the **Continue** button is not available.

Click **Retry** to check again for minimum system requirements.

Click **Continue** to proceed with the installation.

Between dialog boxes, a **Preparing to Install** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. This screens disappears, and the **License Agreement** dialog box appears.

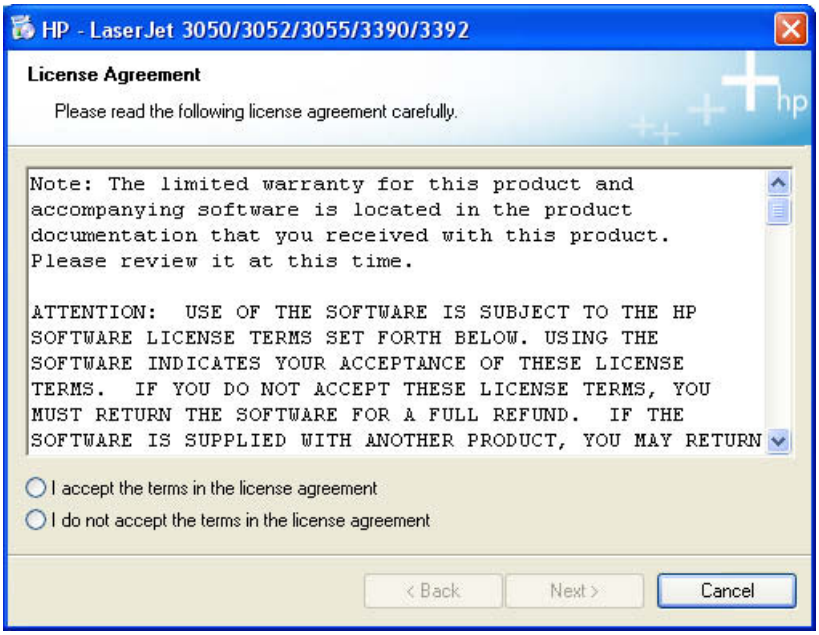


Figure 6-9 USB install – **License Agreement** dialog box

When you select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** option, the **Next** button becomes available. Click **Next**. The **HP Extended Capabilities** dialog box appears.

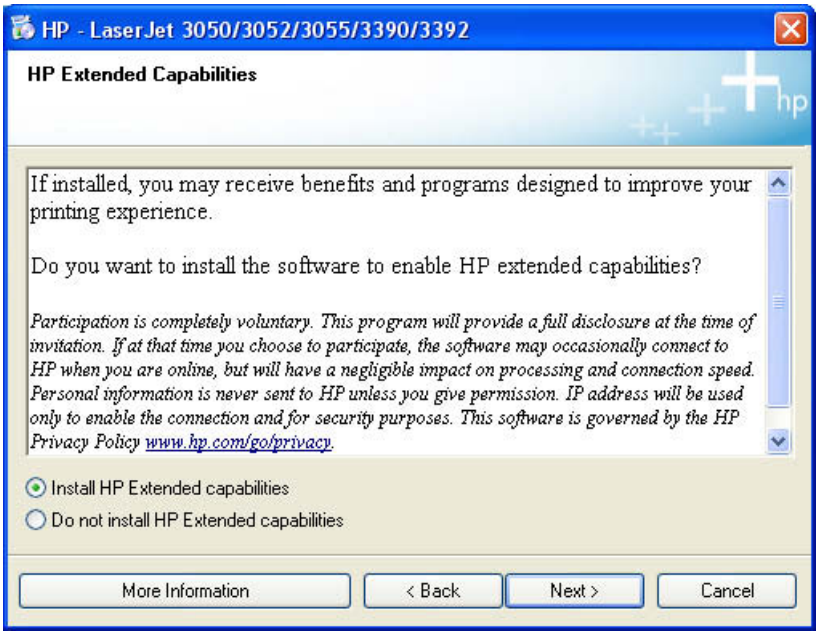


Figure 6-10 USB install – **HP Extended Capabilities** dialog box

If you select the **Install HP Extended capabilities** option, a dialog box appears two weeks after you install the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, inviting you to participate in the HP Product Survey Program.

If you select the **Do not install HP Extended capabilities** option, you are not invited to participate in the HP Product Survey Program.

Click **More Information** to find out more about HP Extended Capabilities and the HP Product Survey Plan.

Click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Destination Folder** dialog box appears.

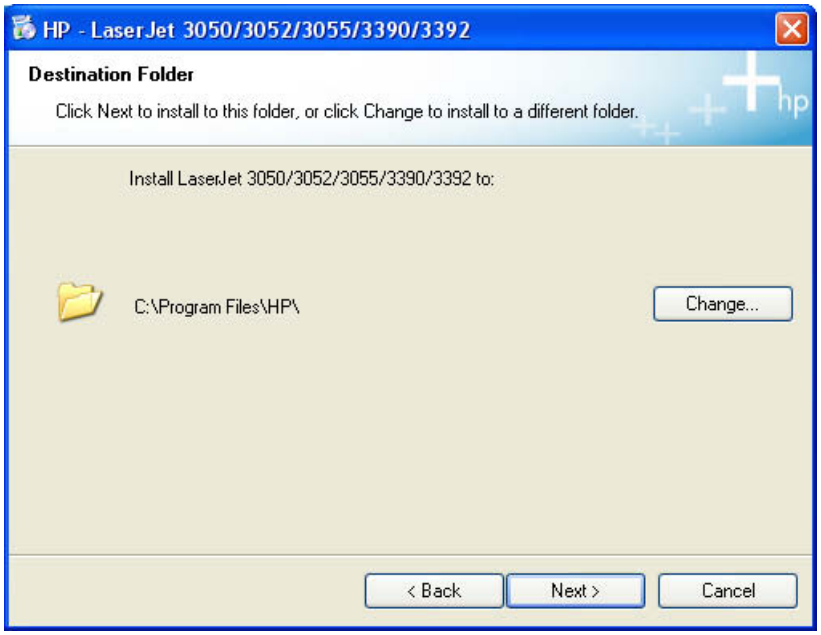


Figure 6-11 USB install – **Destination Folder** dialog box

The **Destination Folder** dialog box shows you where the printing-system software files are installed. The default option creates an **HP** program group, which you can gain access to by clicking **Start** and then selecting **Programs** or **All Programs**.

NOTE The destination-folder path might differ from what is shown in the illustration. If HP software has been installed previously, the **Change...** option will *not* appear.

To change the location of the files to be installed, click the **Change** button and navigate to the location that you want, and then click **OK**.

Click **Next** to open the **Ready to Install** dialog box.

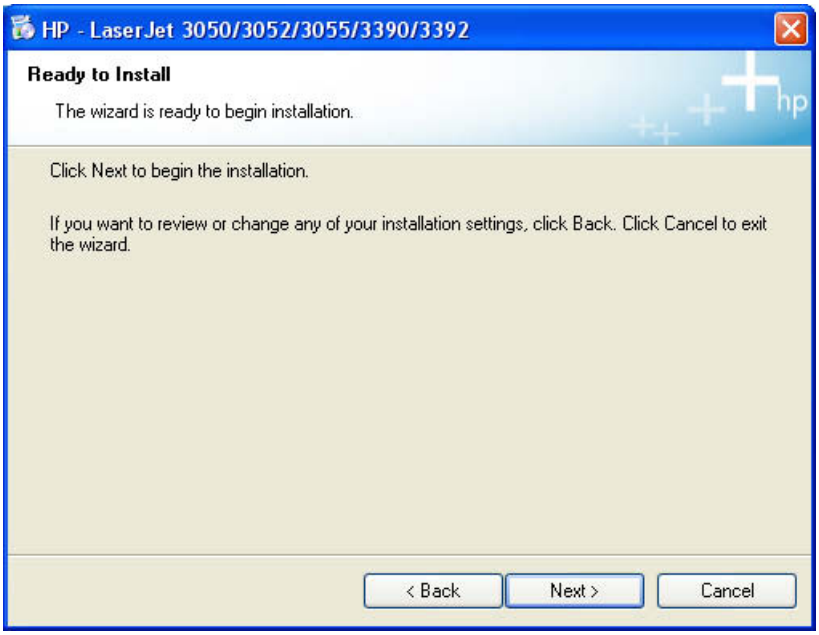


Figure 6-12 USB install – **Ready to Install** dialog box

To continue the installation, click **Next**.

Between dialog boxes, an **Installing** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. This screens disappears, and the **Model Selection** dialog box appears.

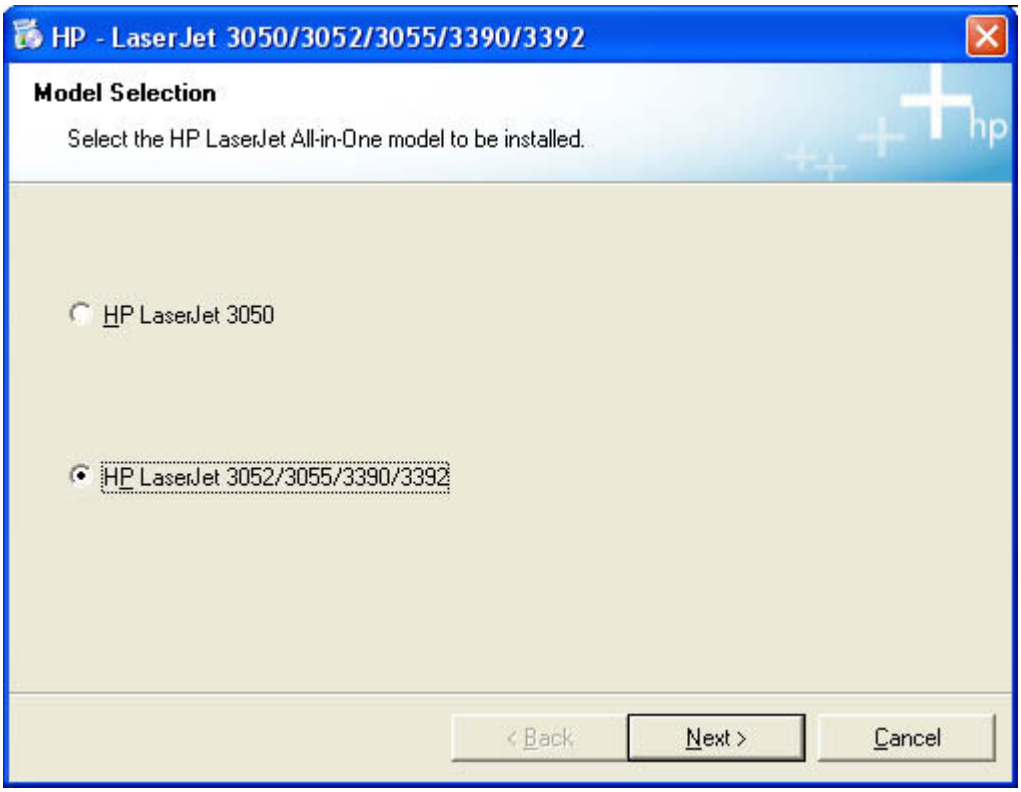


Figure 6-13 **Model Selection** dialog box

Select the appropriate HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product, and then click **Next** to continue the installation.

NOTE If you select the HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one and then click **Next**, the **Connect Your Device Now** screen appears.

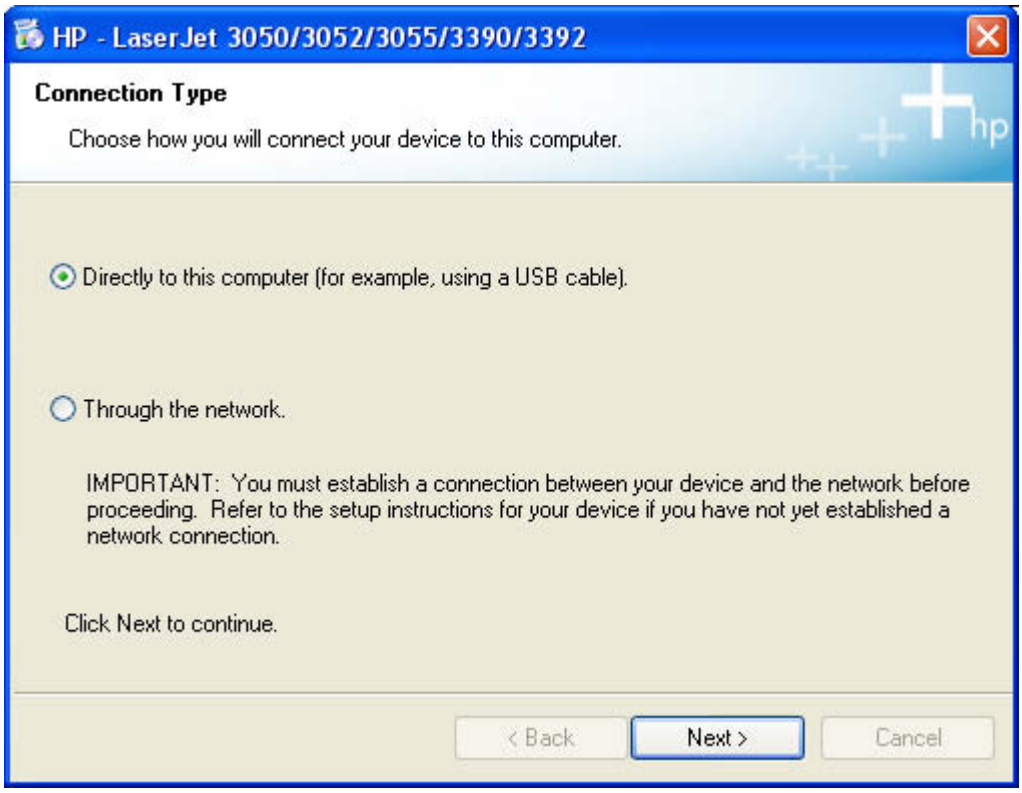


Figure 6-14 USB install – **Connection Type** dialog box

Select the **Directly to this computer (for example, using a USB cable).** option, and then click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box appears.

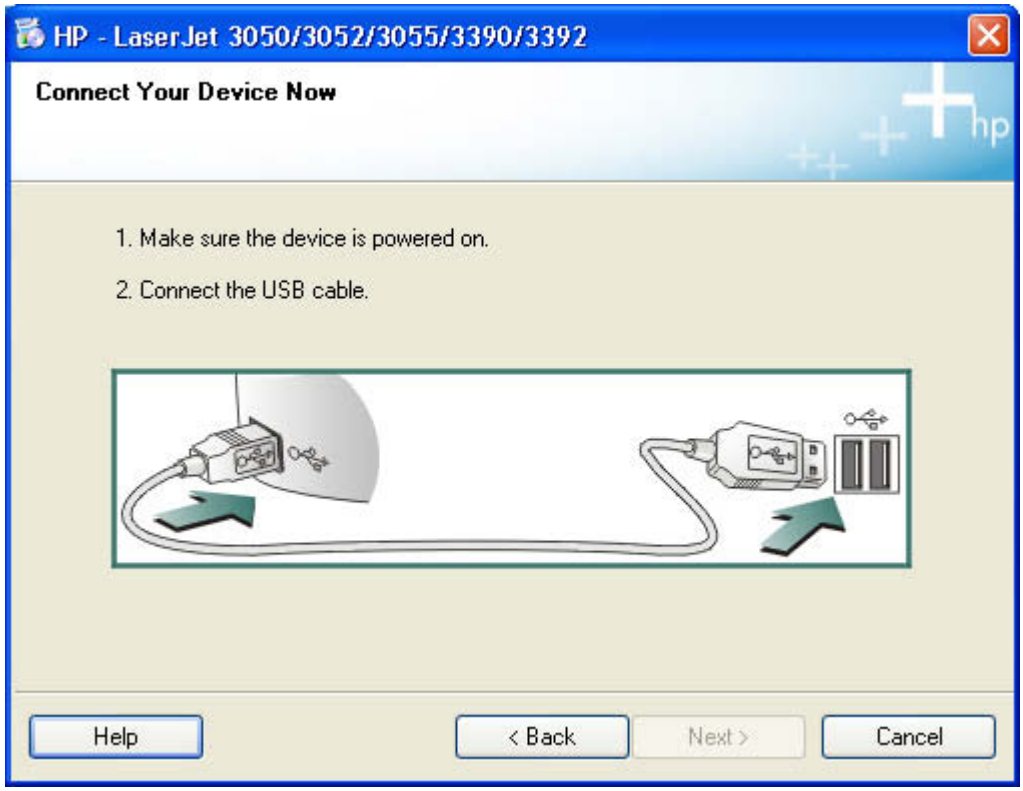


Figure 6-15 USB install – **Connect Your Device Now** dialog box

When the **Connect Your Device Now** screen appears, make sure that the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one is turned on. Then attach the USB cable between the computer and the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

The **Next** button becomes available when you establish the USB connection. Click it to continue the installation.

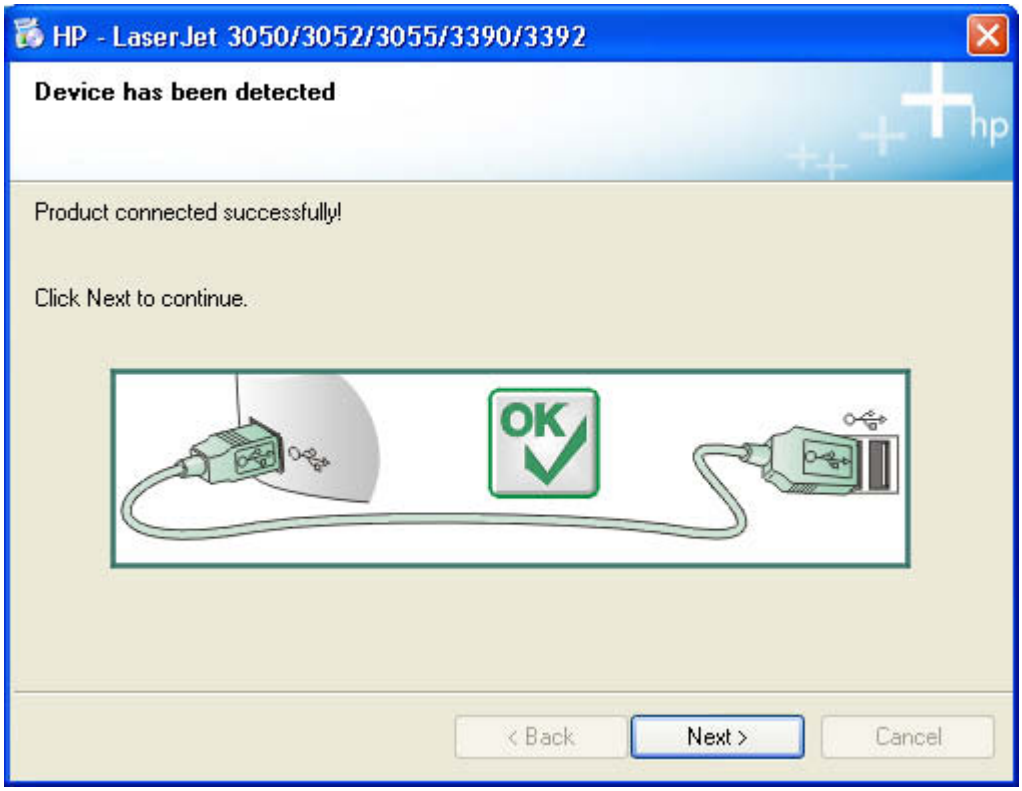


Figure 6-16 USB install – **Device has been detected** dialog box

The **Device has been detected** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue the installation.

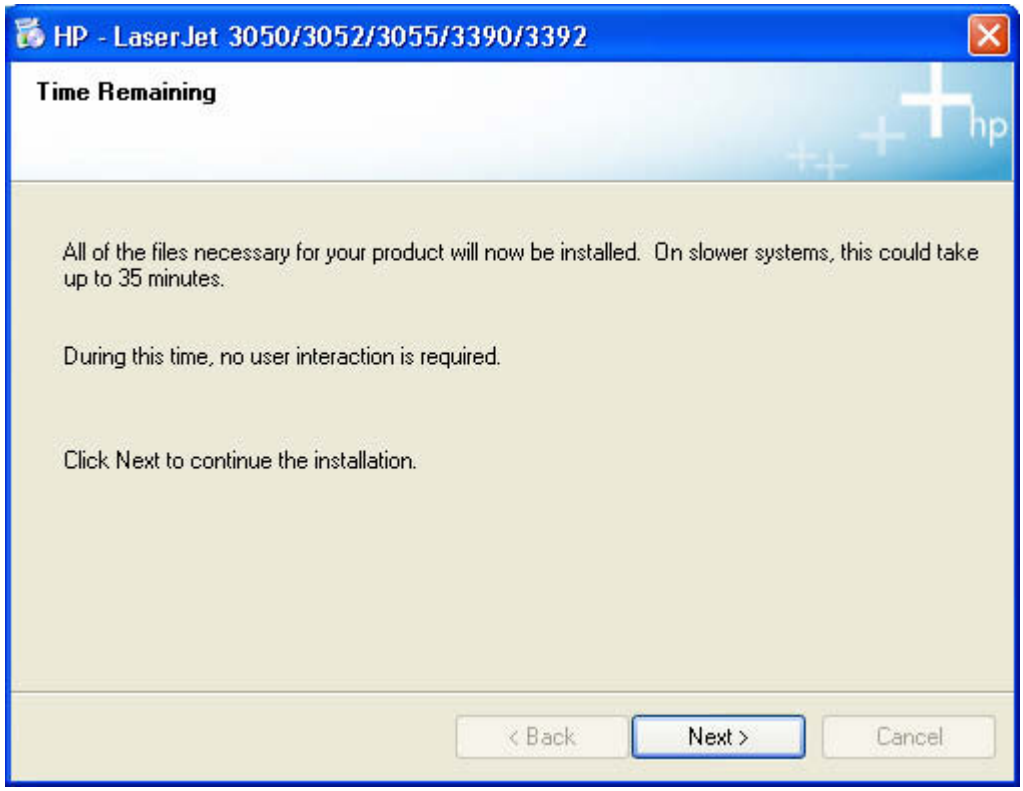


Figure 6-17 USB install – **Time Remaining** dialog box

The **Time Remaining** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue the installation. It might take as long as 35 minutes for this step to finish.

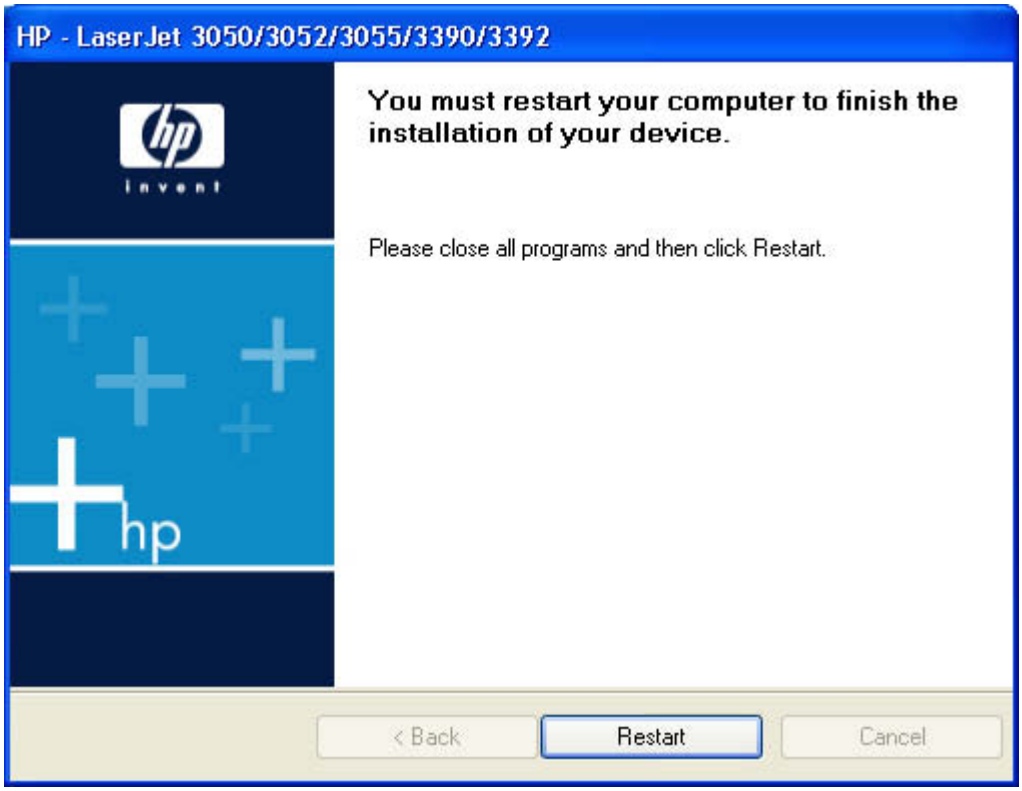


Figure 6-18 USB install – **Restart your computer** dialog box

The **You must restart your computer to finish the installation of your device.** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to continue the installation.

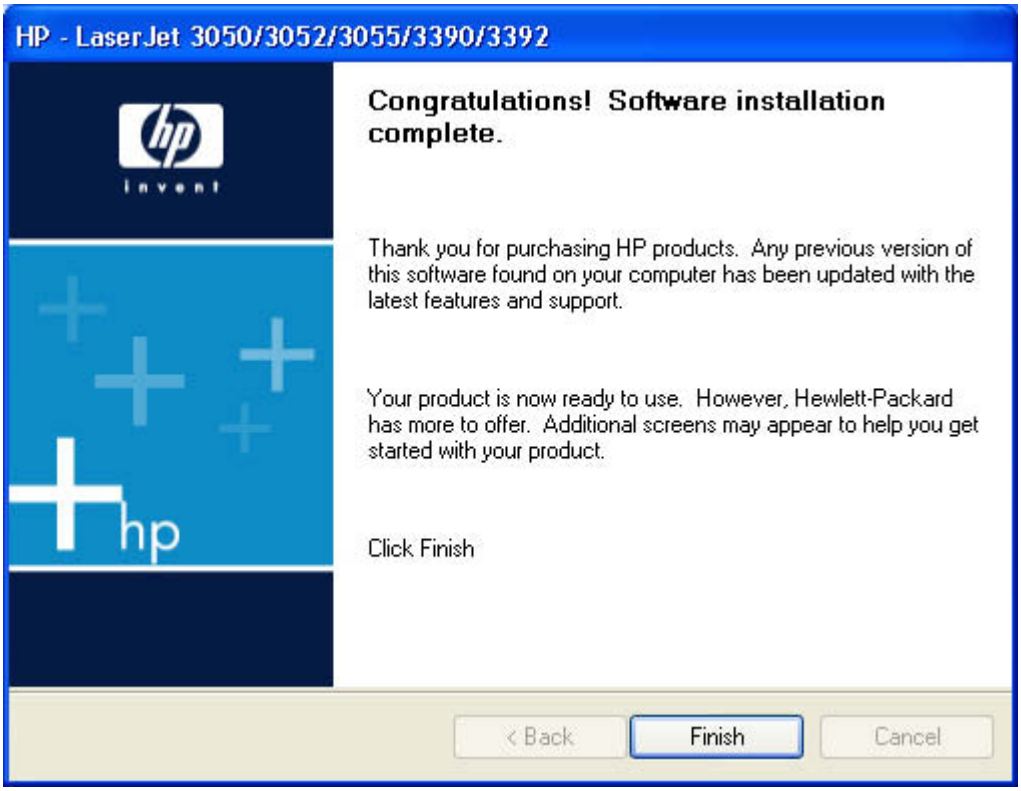


Figure 6-19 USB install – **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box

When you start your machine again, the **Congratulations! Software installation complete.** dialog box appears. Click **Finish** to continue.

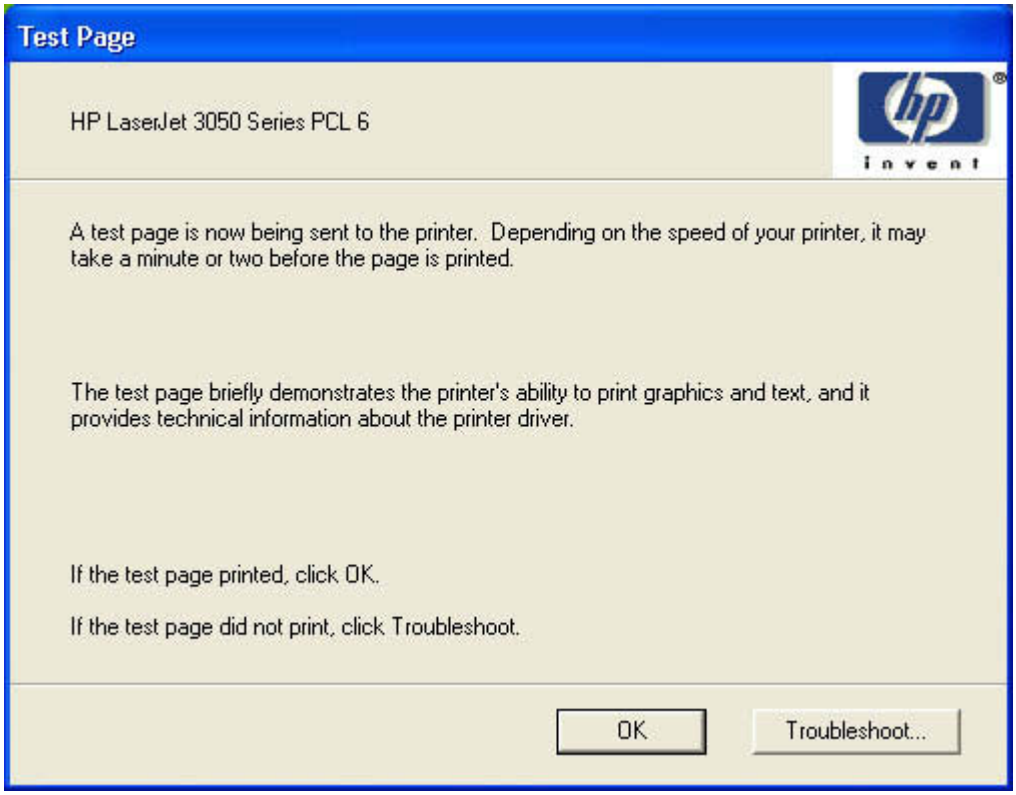


Figure 6-20 USB install – **Test Page** dialog box

The Test Page dialog box indicates that a test page is being sent to the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one. If the test page prints successfully, click **OK**. If the test page fails to print, click **Troubleshoot**. This option opens a series of dialog boxes that can help you troubleshoot the problem.

The **Sign up now** screen appears.

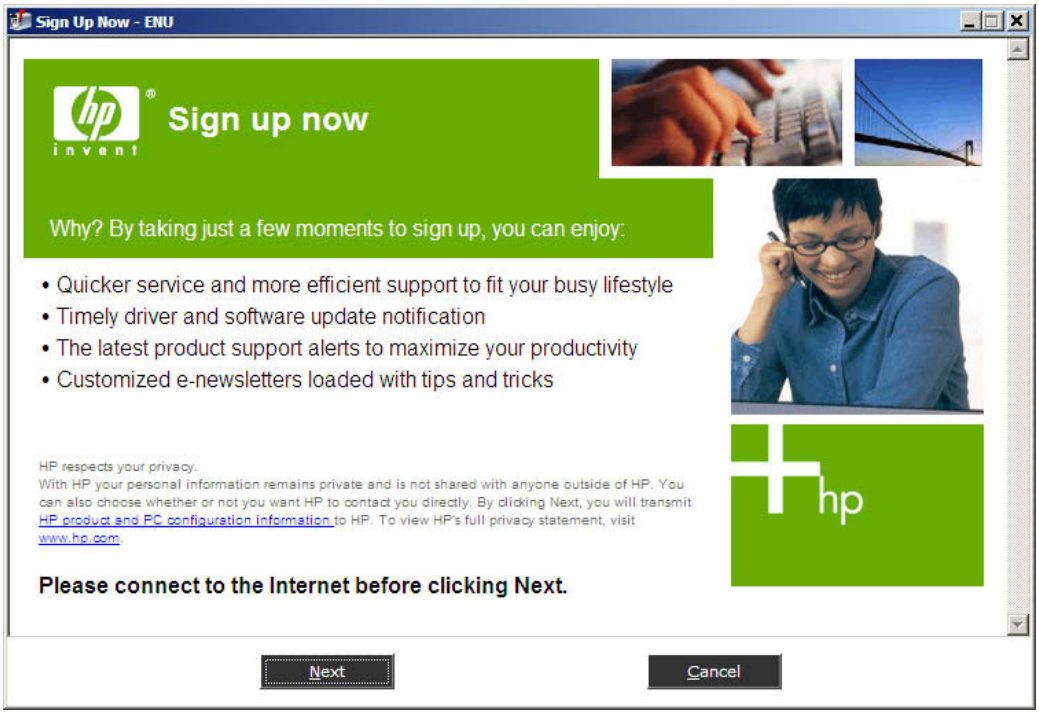


Figure 6-21 **Sign up now** screen

If you have Web access, you can sign up to receive information from HP by following instructions on the **Sign up now** screen. Click **Next** to open the **HP Registration** Web page. Follow the onscreen instructions to register.

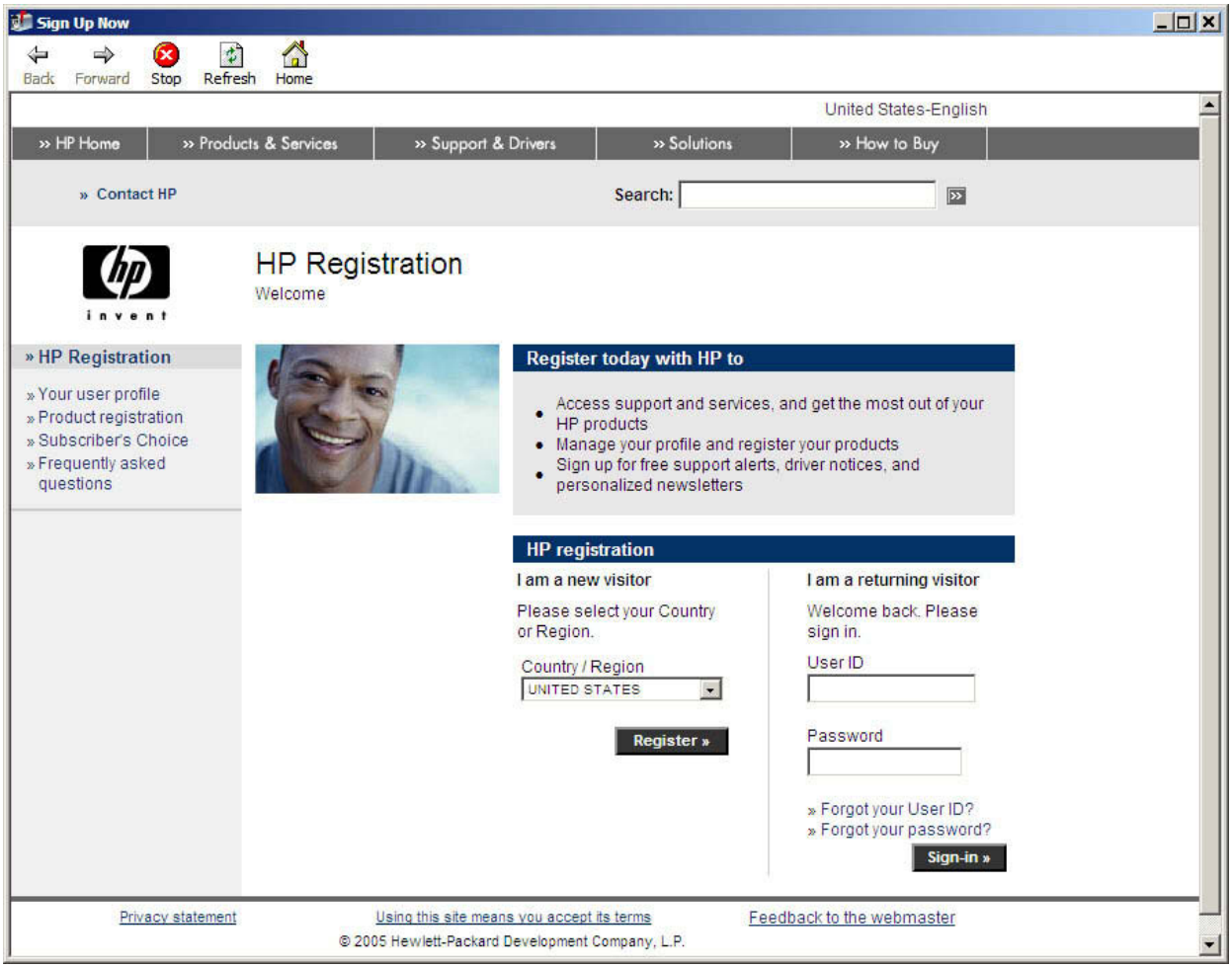


Figure 6-22 **HP Registration** screen

NOTE After you install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software, the Fax Setup Wizard opens automatically. Run the Wizard even if your HP LaserJet all-in-one fax parameters have already been set up. The HP ToolboxFX settings that you provide in the Fax Setup Wizard are used to run other faxing features, such as the fax cover page. For more information, see the Fax Setup Wizard section in this chapter.

Network installation dialog box options for Windows

This section shows the dialog boxes that appear when you install the HP LaserJet 3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product over a network connection.

Click the **Back** button, in any dialog box where it is active, to return to the previous dialog box. Click the **Cancel** button, in any dialog box where it is active, to cancel the installation.

NOTE The sequence of dialog boxes might differ from what is shown here, depending on your product, your network configuration, and the options that you select.

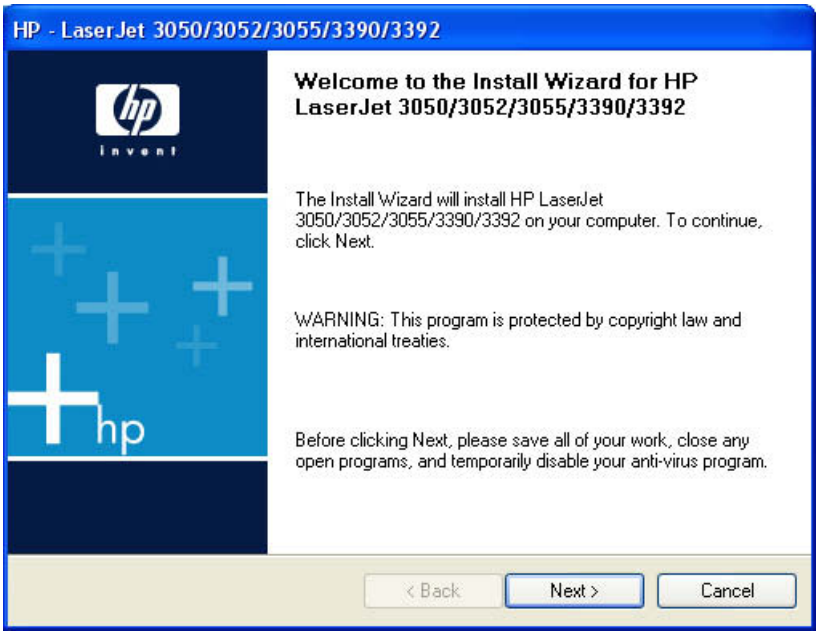


Figure 6-23 Network install — **Welcome** dialog box

Click **Next** to continue. Between dialog boxes, a current-progress screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. The current-progress screen appears throughout the installation, but is sometimes covered by a new dialog box that contains the next option in the installation sequence.

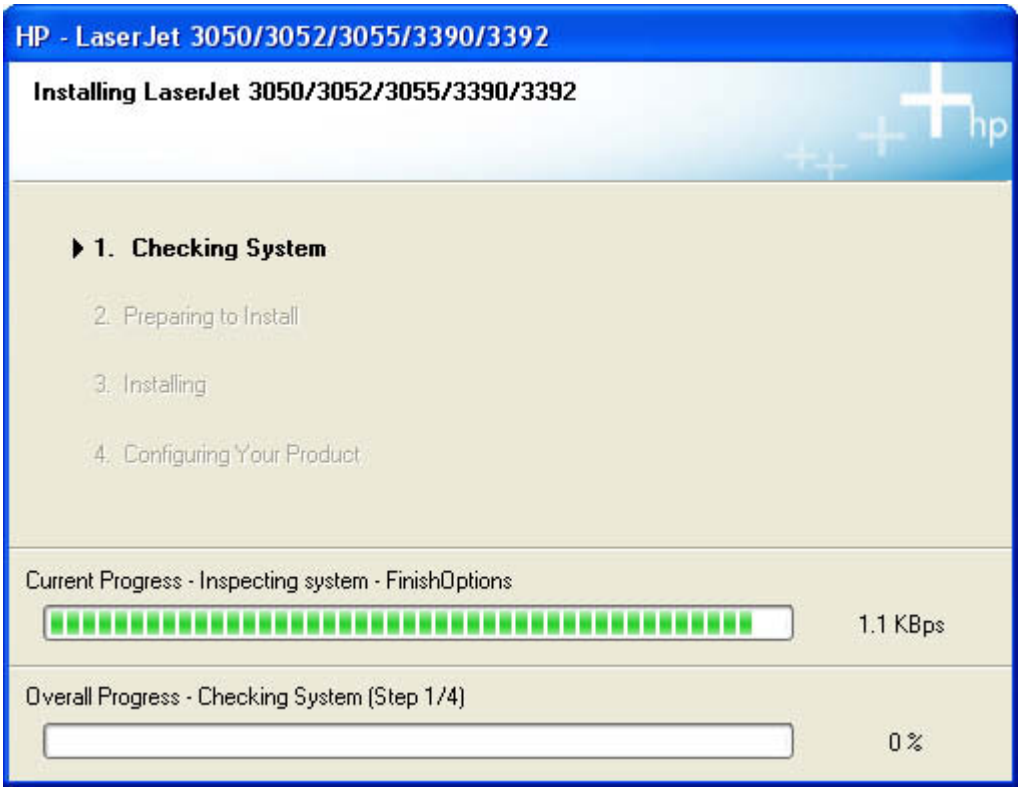


Figure 6-24 Network install – Sample screen showing current progress

NOTE The **Check for recommended installation updates** dialog box appears only if the installer detects that a network connection is available.

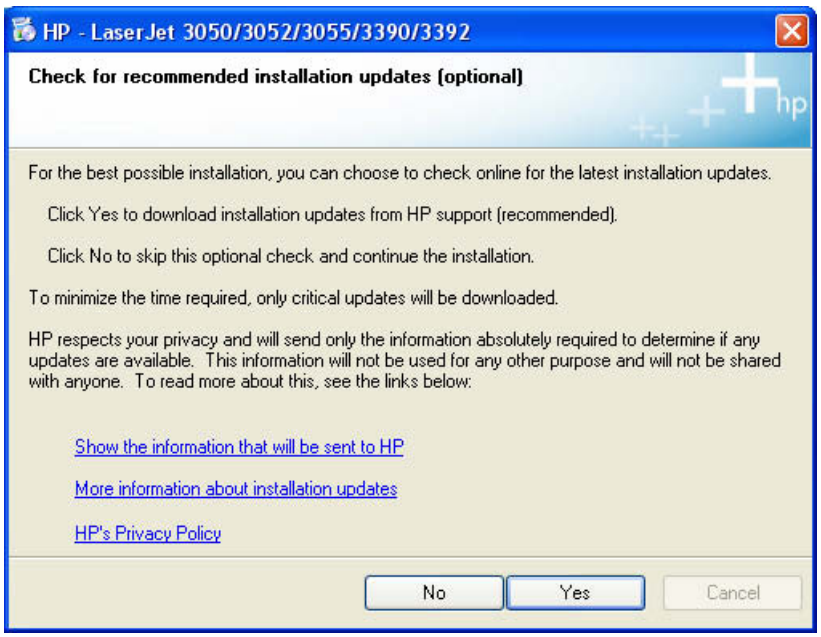


Figure 6-25 Newtwork install – **Check for recommended installation updates (optional)** dialog box

If you have Web access, you can click **Yes** to check for installation updates for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one. This step is optional.

Click any of the links to open a screen that provides further information:

- **Show the information that will be sent to HP**
- **More information about installation updates**
- **HP's Privacy Policy**

Click **No** to continue the installation without checking for installation updates.

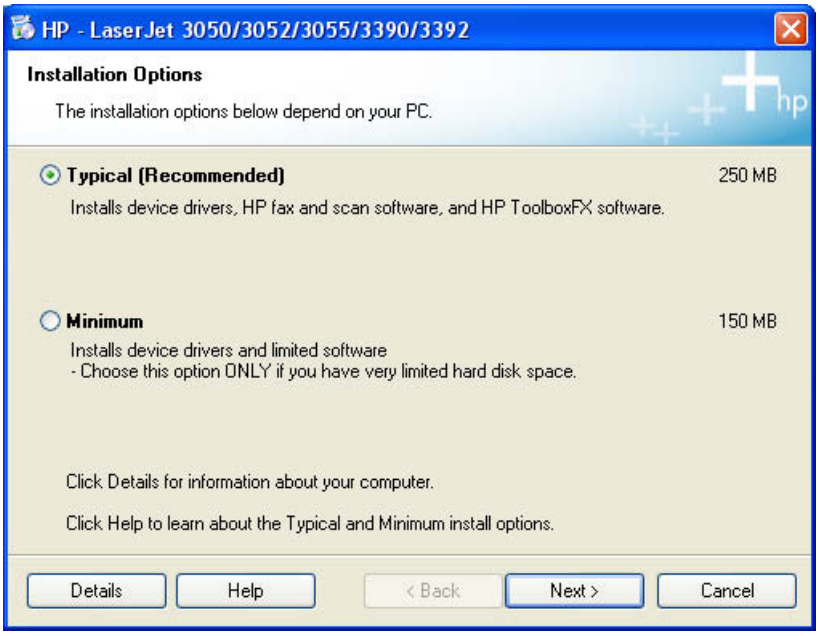


Figure 6-26 Network install – **Installation Options** dialog box

Select the **Typical (Recommended)** option to install the complete printing-system software.

Select **Minimum** to install only limited software.

Click **Help** to gain access to information about the **Typical (Recommended)** and **Minimum** installations.

Click **Details** to find out if your system meets the recommended installation requirements. A sample **System Requirements Results** dialog box is shown in the following illustration.

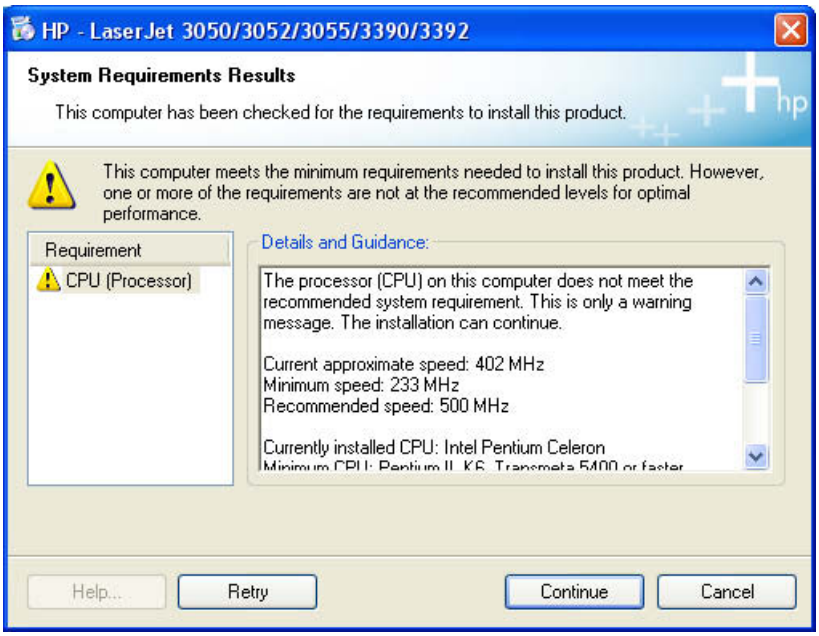


Figure 6-27 Network Install – sample **System Requirements Results** dialog box

NOTE When conditions allow, the **Continue** button is available and installation can proceed despite the warning, such as in the **System Requirements Results** screen in the illustration. If a blocking condition prevents the installation from continuing, the **Continue** button is not available.

Click **Retry** to check again for minimum system requirements.

Click **Continue** to proceed with installation.

Between dialog boxes, a **Preparing to Install** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. This screens disappears, and the **License Agreement** dialog box appears.

The **License Agreement** dialog box appears.

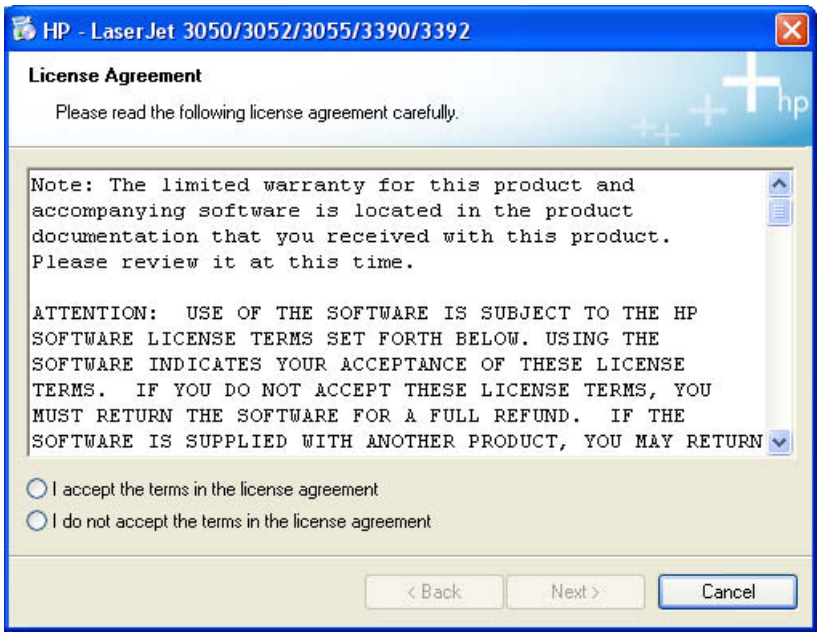


Figure 6-28 Network install – **Licence Agreement** dialog box

When you select the **I accept the terms in the license agreement** option, the **Next** button becomes available. Click **Next**. The **HP Extended Capabilities** dialog box appears.

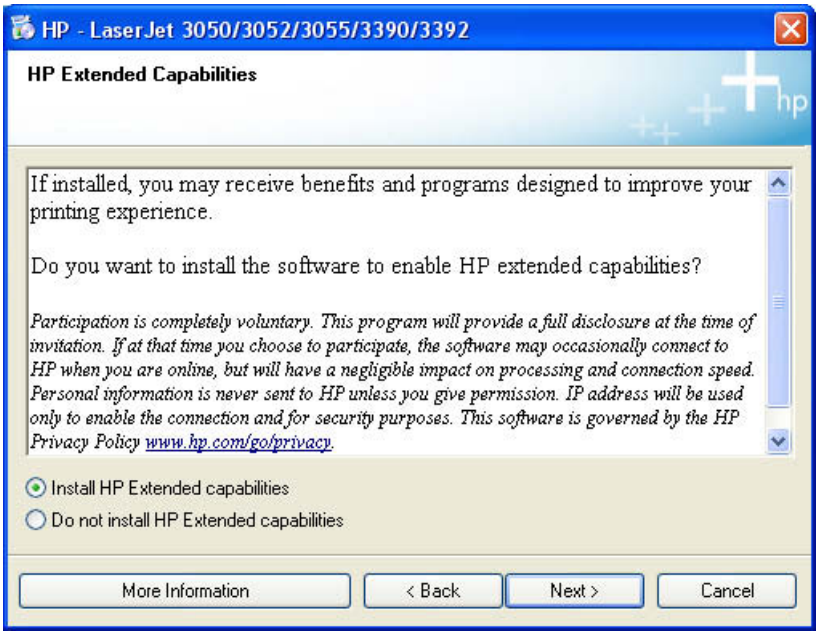


Figure 6-29 Network install – **HP Extended Capabilities** dialog box

If you select the **Install HP Extended capabilities** option, a dialog box appears two weeks after you install the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product, inviting you to participate in the HP Product Survey Program.

If you select the **Do not install HP Extended capabilities** option, you are not invited to participate in the HP Product Survey Program.

Click **More Information** to find out more about HP Extended Capabilities and the HP Product Survey Plan.

Click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Destination Folder** dialog box appears.

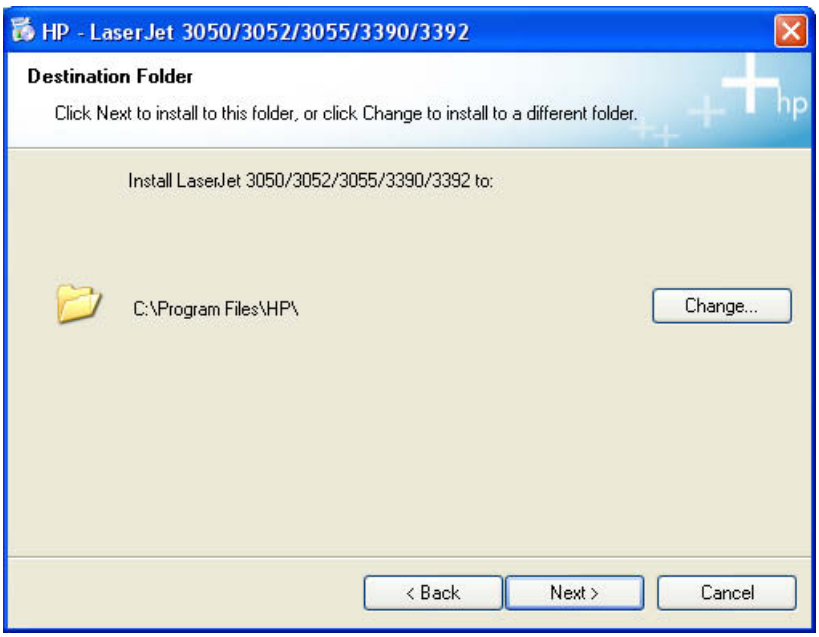


Figure 6-30 Network install – **Destination Folder** dialog box

The **Destination Folder** dialog box shows you where the printing-system software files are installed. The default option creates an **HP** program group, which you can gain access to by clicking **Start** and then selecting **Programs** or **All Programs**.

NOTE The destination-folder path might differ from what is shown in the illustration. If HP software has been installed previously, the **Change...** option will *not* appear.

To change the location of the files to be installed, click the **Change** button and navigate to the location that you want, and then click **OK**.

Click **Next** to open the **Ready to Install** dialog box.

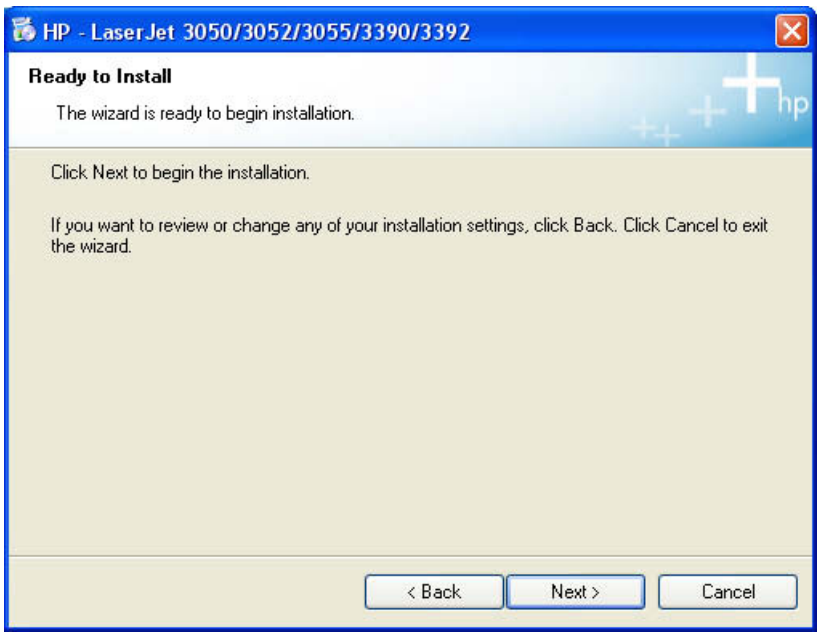


Figure 6-31 Network install – **Ready to Install** dialog box

To continue the installation, click **Next**.

Between dialog boxes, an **Installing** screen appears. This screen shows the progress of the installation and provides information about the number of subtasks that have been completed in each step. This screens disappears, and the **Model Selection** dialog box appears.

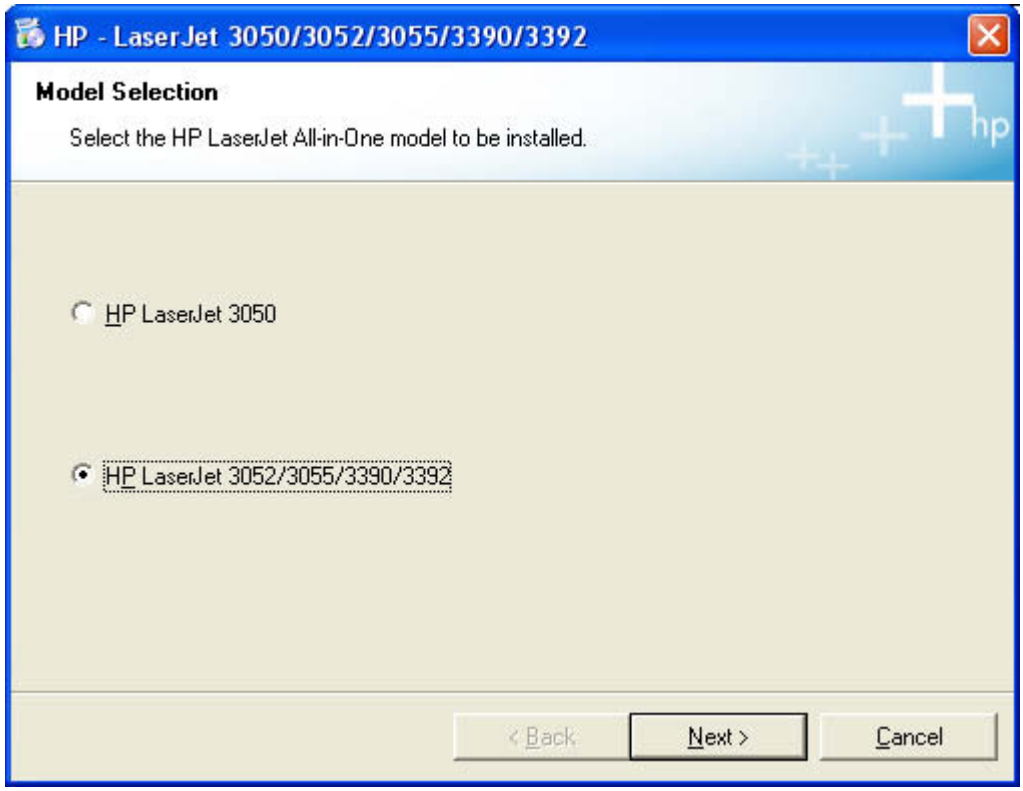


Figure 6-32 **Model Selection** dialog box

Select the **HP LaserJet 3052/3055/3390/3392** option, and then click **Next** to continue the installation.

NOTE The HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one does *not* support networking unless an optional network port has been installed.

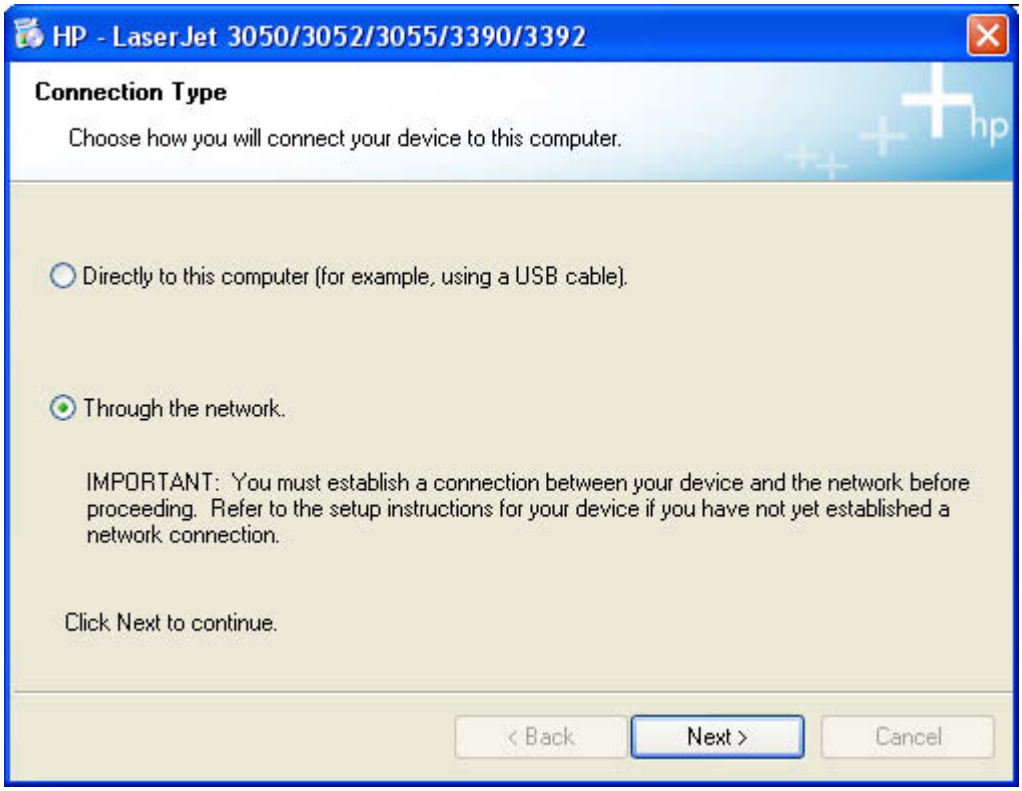


Figure 6-33 Network install – **Connection Type** dialog box

Select the **Through the network** option, and then click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Identify Printer** dialog box appears.

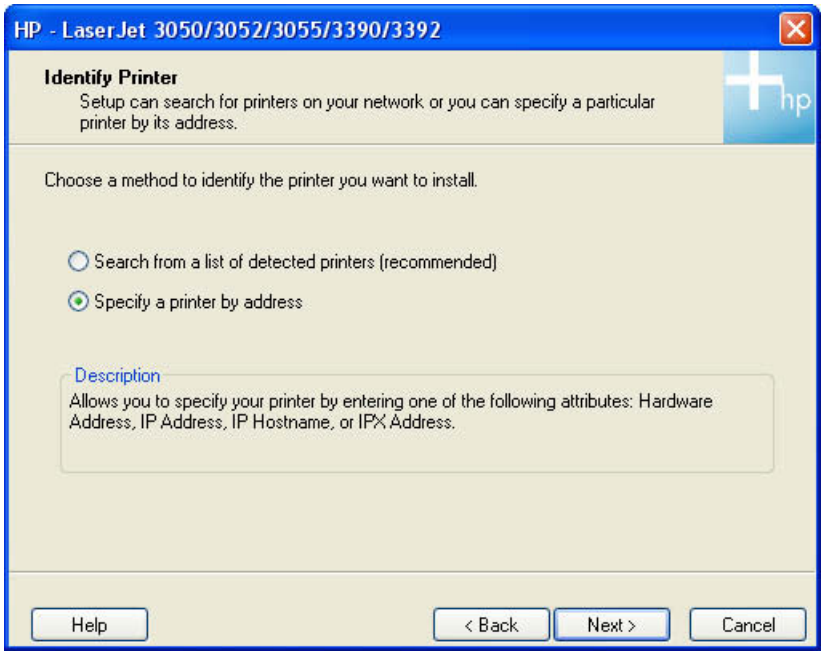


Figure 6-34 Network install – **Identify Printer** dialog boxIdentify Printer

If you select **Search from a list of detected printers (Recommended)**, your system searches the network for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product, and the **Searching** dialog box appears, as shown in the following illustration.

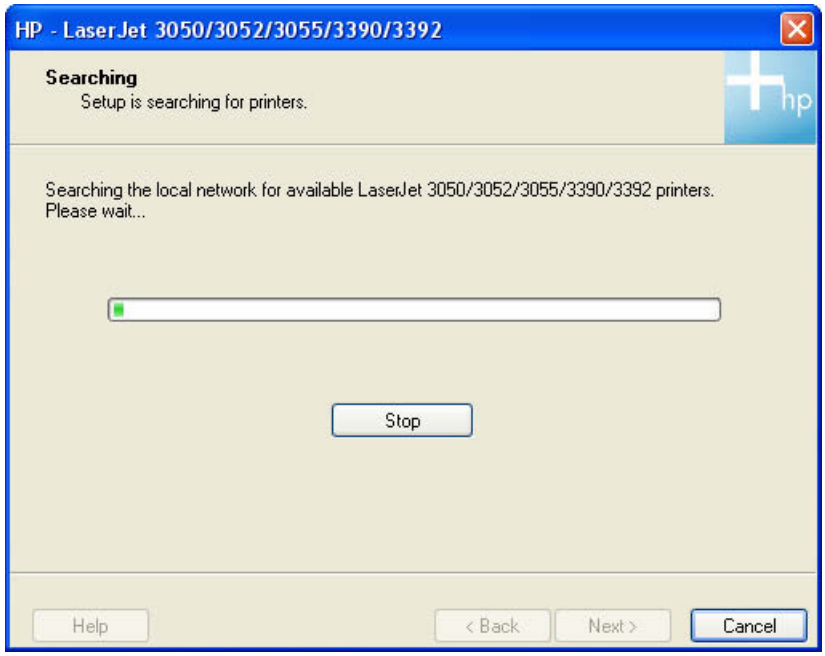


Figure 6-35 Network install – **Searching** dialog box

If you select the **Specify a printer by address** option on the **Identify Printer** dialog box, the **Specify Printer** dialog box appears, as shown in the following illustration.

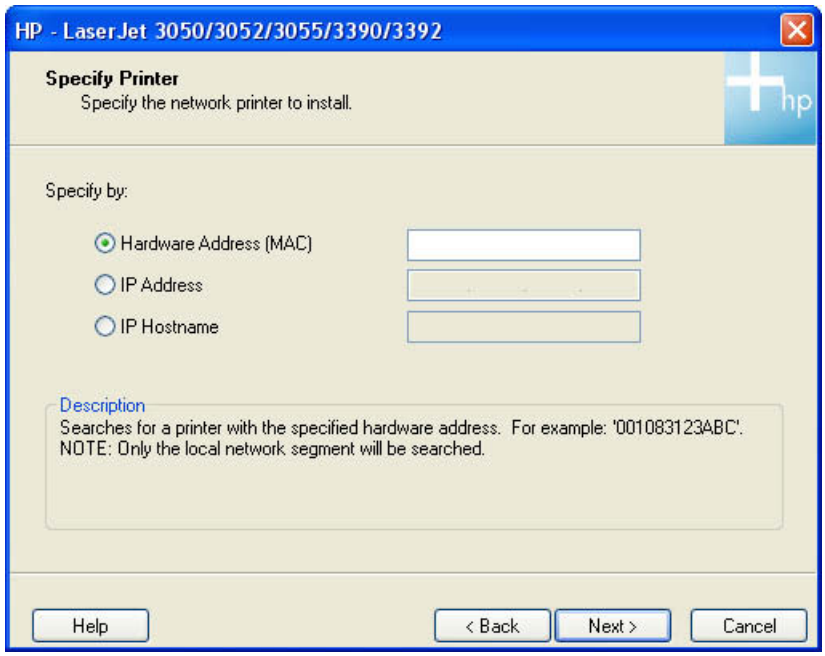


Figure 6-36 Network install – **Specify Printer** dialog box

You can specify the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one by hardware address (MAC), TCP/IP address, or IP Hostname. After typing one of these options in the appropriate field, click **Next** to continue.

The **Printer Found** dialog box appears either after your system completes its search for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, or after you specify the product.

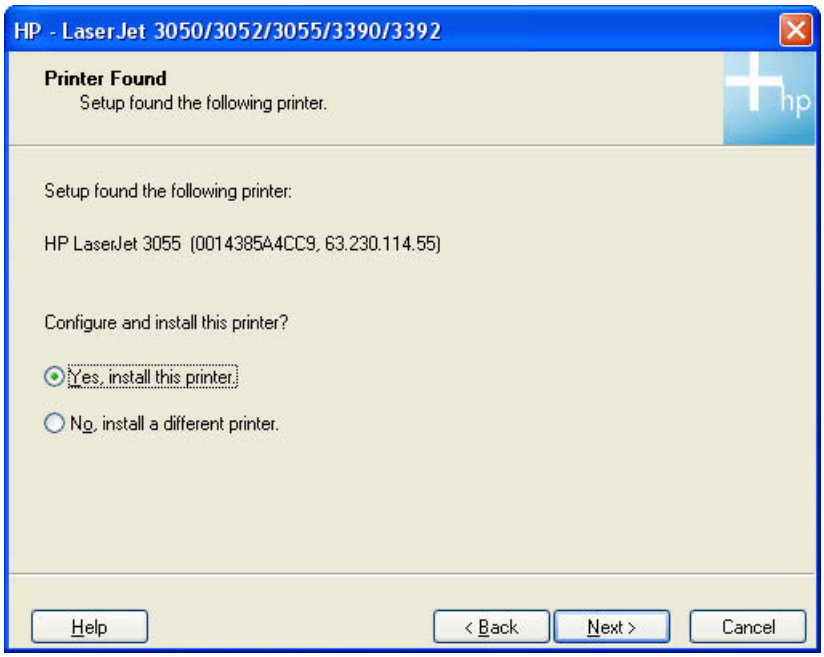


Figure 6-37 Network install – **Printer Found** dialog box

The **Yes, install this printer** option is selected by default. If you want to install a different printer, select the **No, install a different printer** option. To continue installing the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, click **Next**. The **Confirm Settings** dialog box appears.

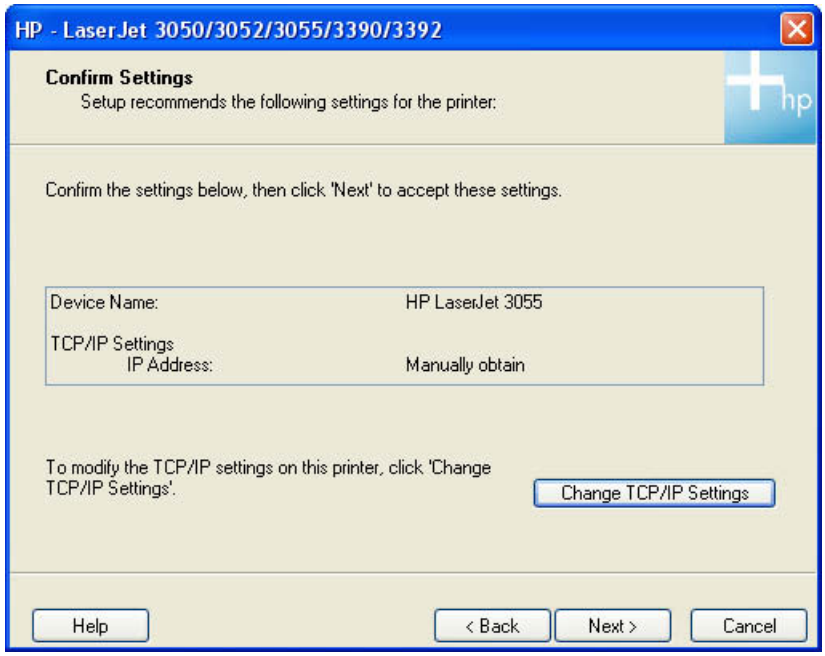


Figure 6-38 Network install – **Confirm Settings** dialog box

To accept the settings (recommended), click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box appears (see Figure 6-43 Network install – Congratulations! Software installation complete dialog box).

If you want to change the settings, click **Change TCP/IP Settings**. The **Confirm Changing Settings** dialog box appears.

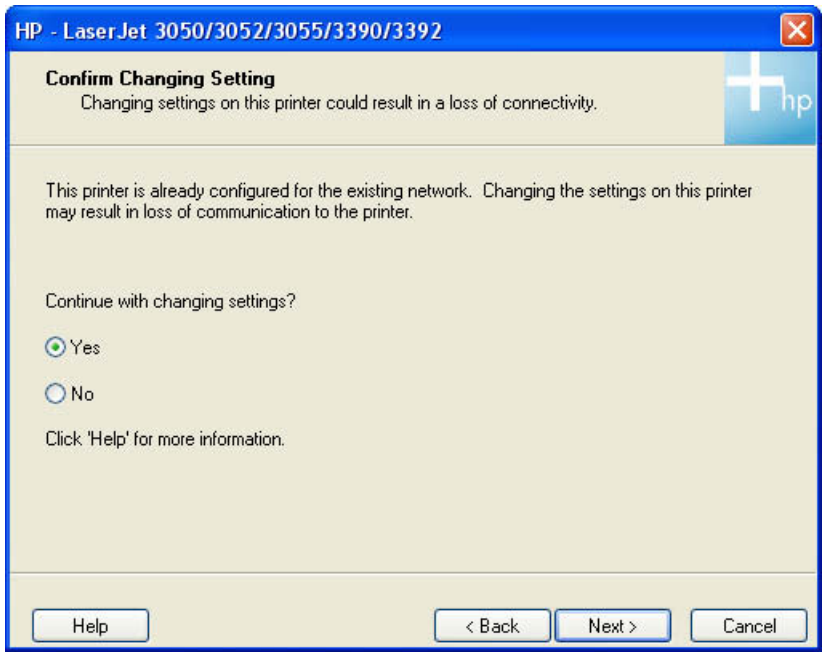


Figure 6-39 Network install – **Confirm Changing Setting** dialog box

Because the printer is already configured for the existing network, you must confirm that you want to change the settings. Click **Next** to continue. The **Set Network Protocol** dialog box appears.

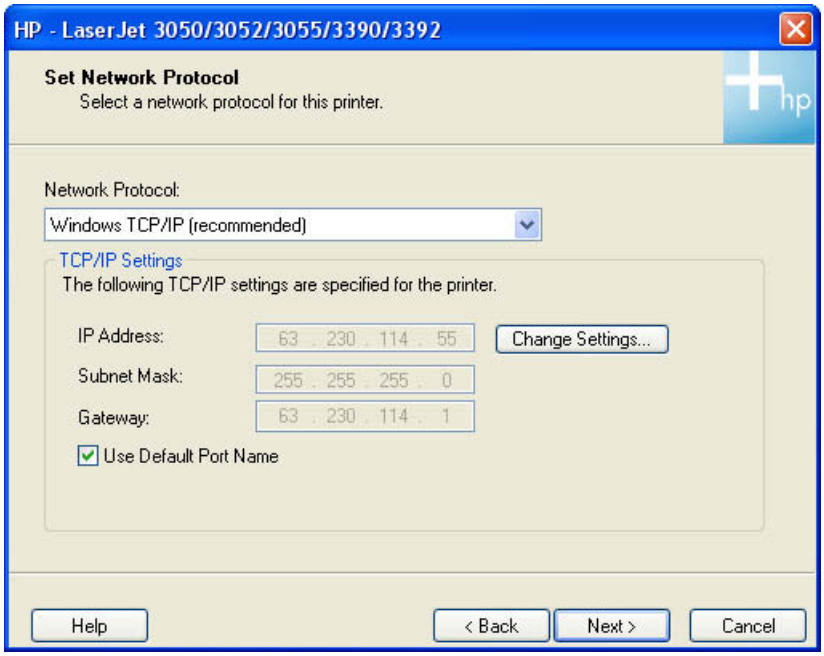


Figure 6-40 Network install – Set **Network Protocol dialog** box

To change the settings, click **Change Settings**, make your changes in the dialog box that appears, and then click **Next** to continue. The **Confirm Settings** dialog box appears (see Figure 6-38 Network install – Confirm Settings dialog box).

Click **Next** to continue.

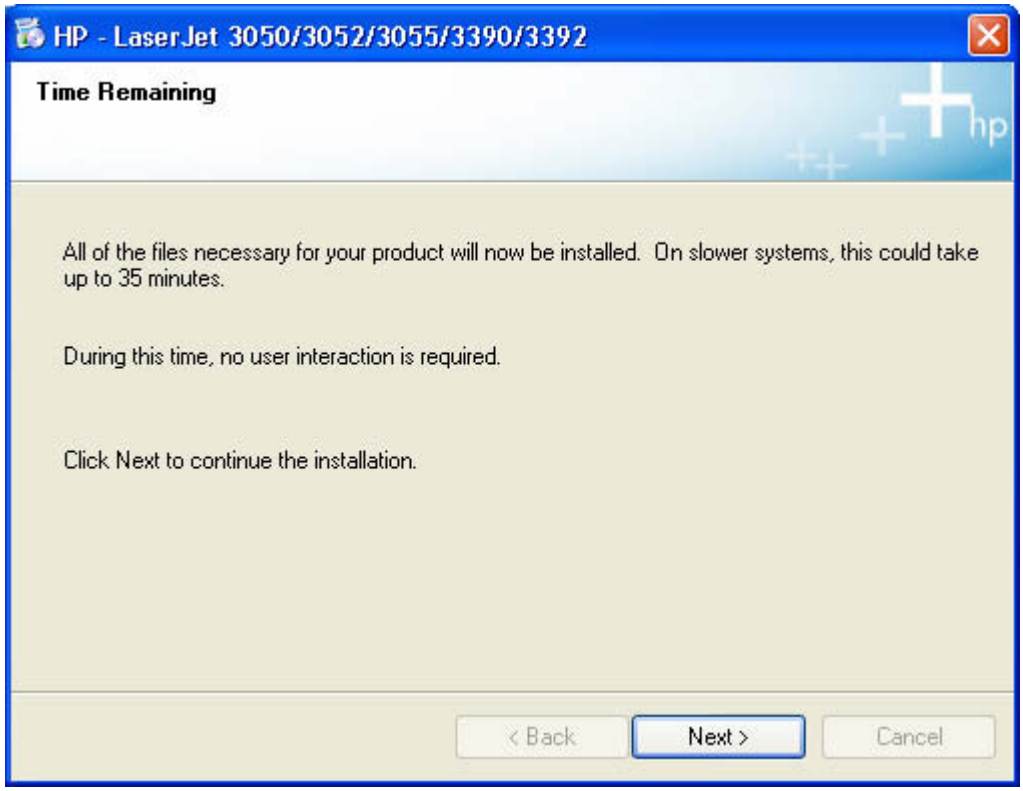


Figure 6-41 Network install – **Time Remaining** dialog box

The **Time Remaining** dialog box appears. Click **Next** to continue the installation. It might take as long as 35 minutes for this step to finish.

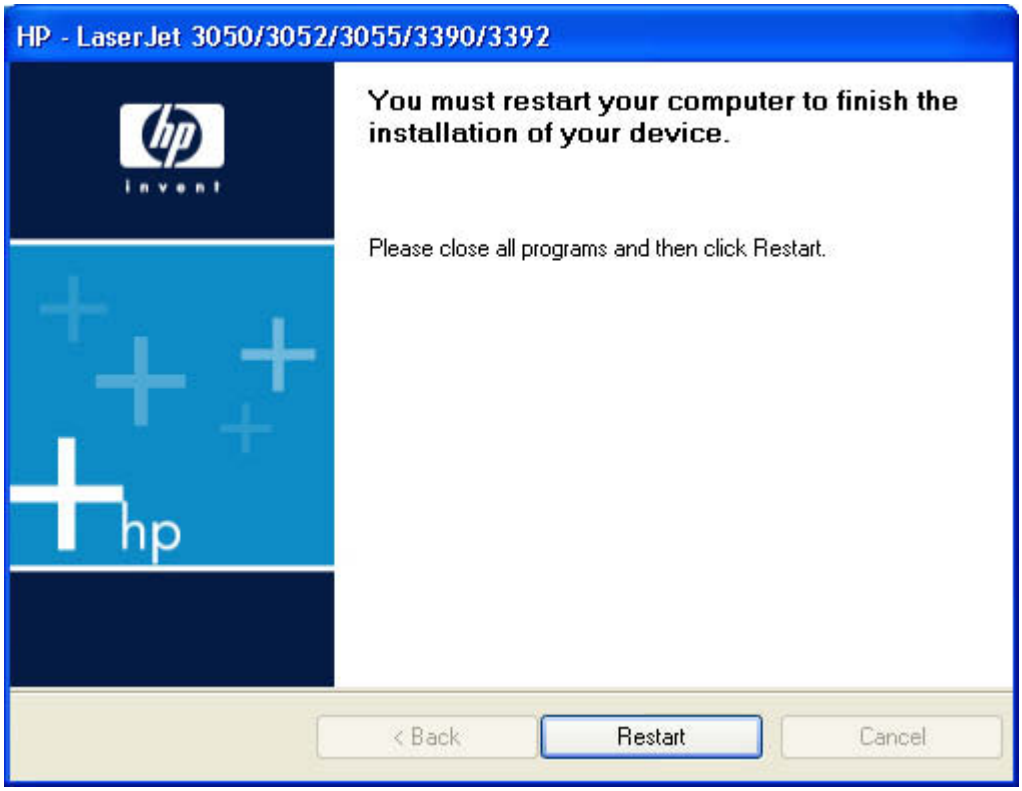


Figure 6-42 Network install – **Restart your computer** dialog box

The **You must restart your computer to finish the installation of your device.** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to continue the installation.

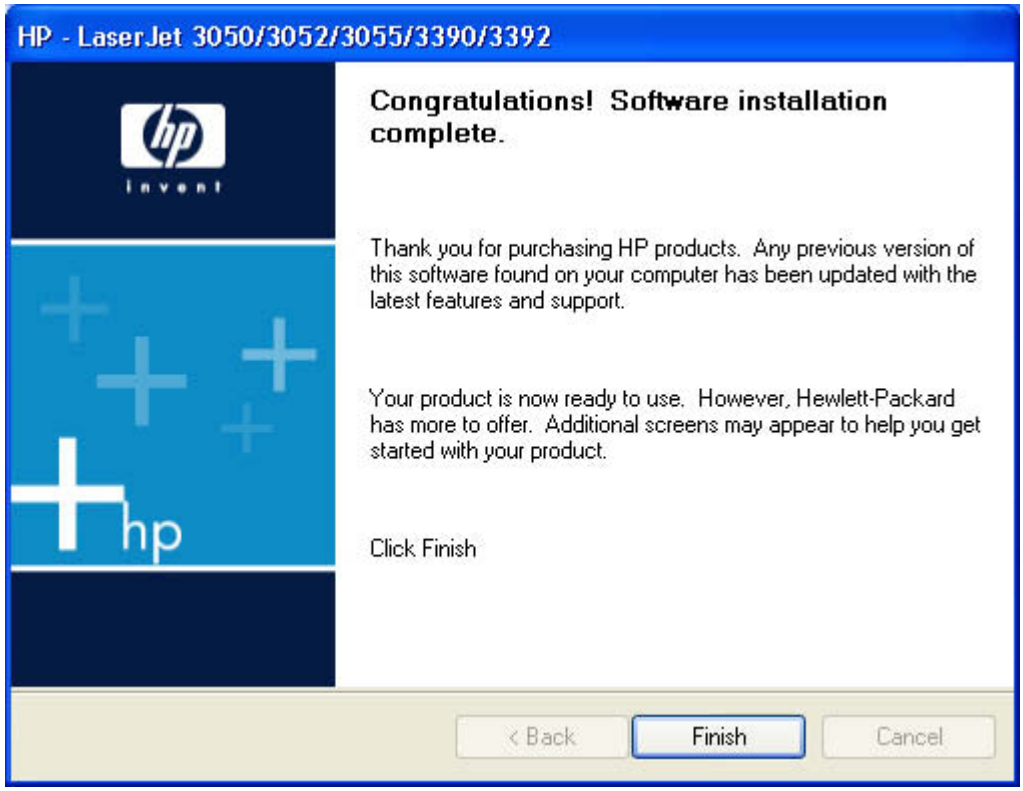


Figure 6-43 Network install – **Congratulations! Software installation complete** dialog box

Click **Finish** to continue the installation. The **Test Page** dialog box appears.

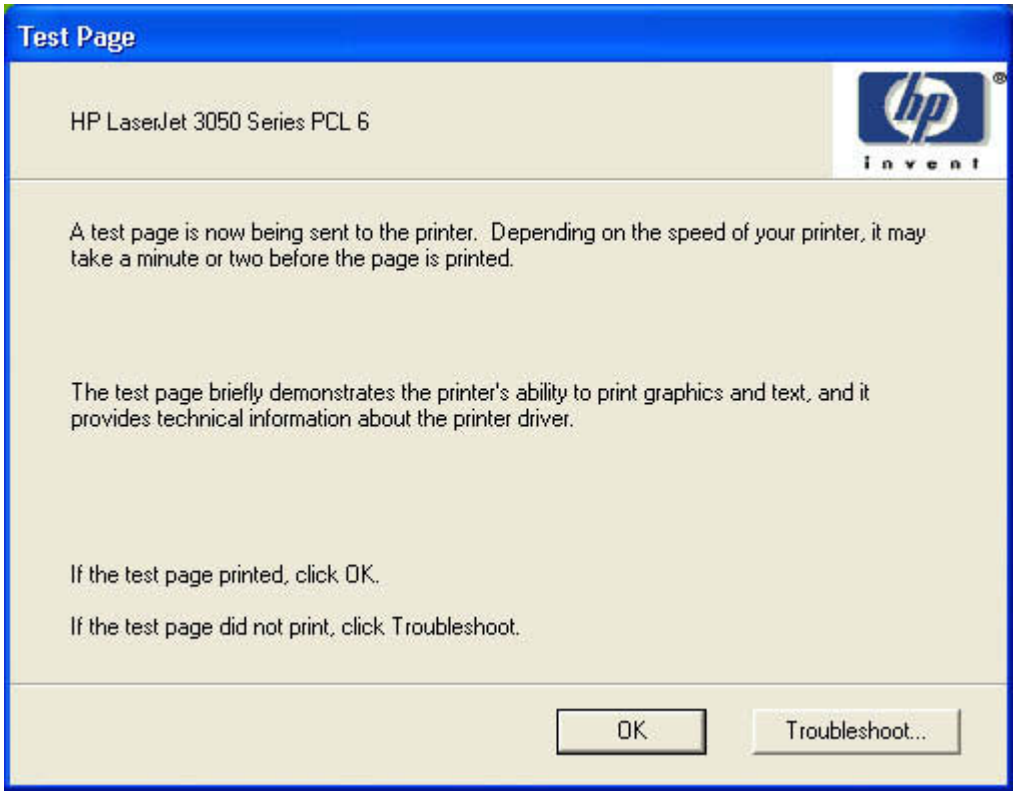


Figure 6-44 Network install – **Test Page** dialog box

Click **OK** to print the test page.

The **Sign up now** screen appears.

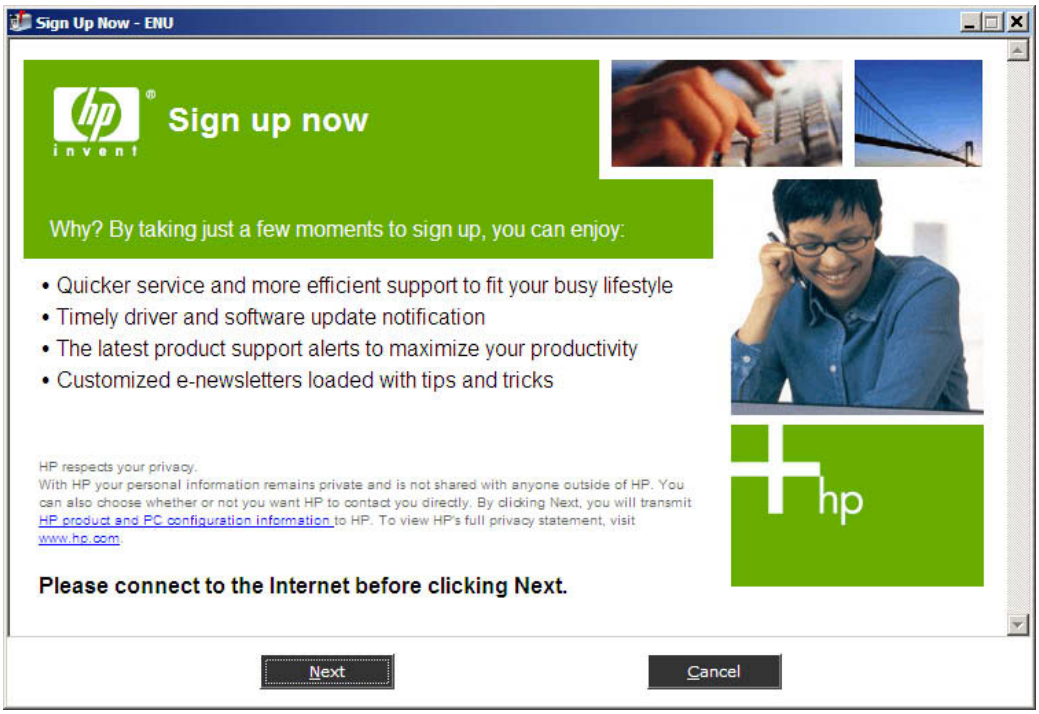


Figure 6-45 **Sign up now** screen

If you have Web access, you can sign up to receive information from HP by following instructions on the **Sign up now** screen. Clicking **Next** opens the **HP Registration** Web page. Follow the onscreen instructions to register.

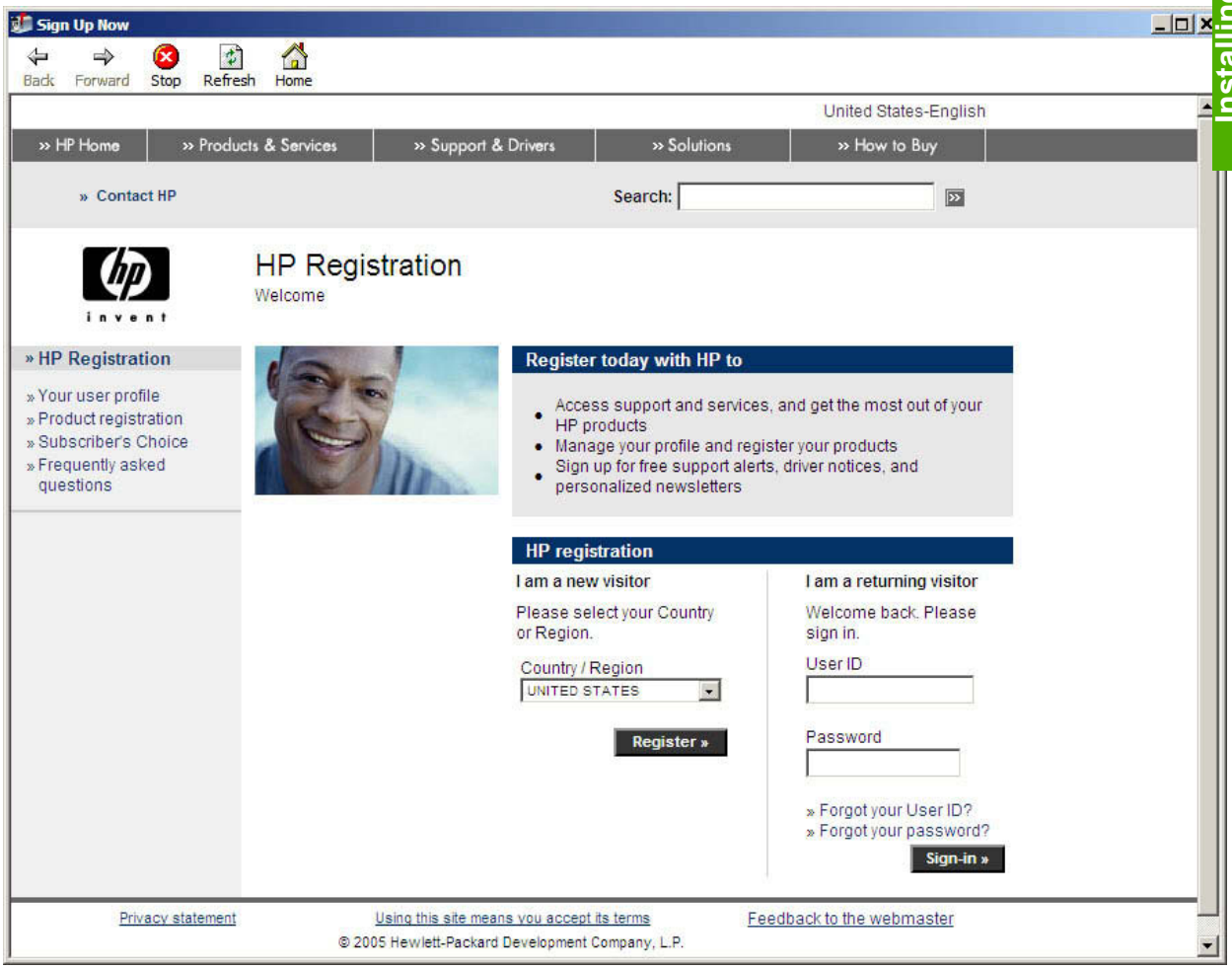


Figure 6-46 HP Registration screen

NOTE After you install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software, the Fax Setup Wizard opens automatically. Run the Wizard even if your HP LaserJet all-in-one fax parameters have already been set up. The HP ToolboxFX settings that you provide in the Fax Setup Wizard are used to run other faxing features, such as the fax cover page. For more information, see the Fax Setup Wizard section in this STR.

Uninstall

This section provides information about the following topics:

- Uninstall instructions for Windows
- Files and folders not removed and manual uninstall (Windows)

Uninstall instructions for Windows

The uninstall procedures vary according to the type of installation that you used.

Uninstalling a Typical or Minimum installation

The following methods can be used to uninstall a Typical or Minimum installation.

- Using the HP LaserJet all-in-one software Uninstall component (recommended)
- Using the Windows Add or Remove Programs component
- Using the printing-system CD

NOTE If you uninstall the software for troubleshooting purposes, try uninstalling only specific HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one print, scan, or fax drivers. The shared software programs might not uninstall successfully, and are unlikely to be the cause of product-specific problems. These shared software programs should not need to be uninstalled, especially if they are being used by another HP product.

Using the HP LaserJet all-in-one software Uninstall component (recommended)

Follow these steps to uninstall a Typical or Minimum installation of the HP LaserJet all-in-one software by using the **Uninstall** component.

NOTE To uninstall the software from Windows 2000 or Windows XP, you must log on with administrator privileges.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Click **Start**, select **Programs** or **All Programs**, select **HP**, select **HP LaserJet 3050, 3052, 3055, 3390, 3392**, and then click **Uninstall**.
3. The **Important Uninstall Information** dialog box appears. Click **Continue**.
4. The **Cleanup progress** dialog box appears. The progress bar reflects the status of the uninstall process.
5. When the uninstall process is completed, the **Restart** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to restart your computer and finish the uninstall process.

Using the Windows Add or Remove Programs component

Follow these steps to uninstall a Typical or Minimum installation of theHP LaserJet all-in-one software by using the Windows**Add/Remove programs** component.

NOTE To uninstall the software from Windows 2000 or Windows XP, you must log on with administrator privileges.

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, double-click **Add or Remove Programs**.
3. Click **Change or Remove programs** on the left side of the window, and then click the name of your HP LaserJet all-in-one product. Click **Remove**.
4. The **Important Uninstall Information** dialog box appears. Click **Continue**.
5. The **Cleanup progress** dialog box appears. The progress bar reflects the status of the uninstall process.
6. When the uninstall process is completed, the **Restart** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to restart your computer and finish the uninstall process.

Using the printing-system CD

1. Quit all open programs.
2. Insert the HP LaserJet all-in-one software CD into the CD-ROM drive. After the system is checked, the **Software Has Already Been Successfully Installed** dialog box appears.

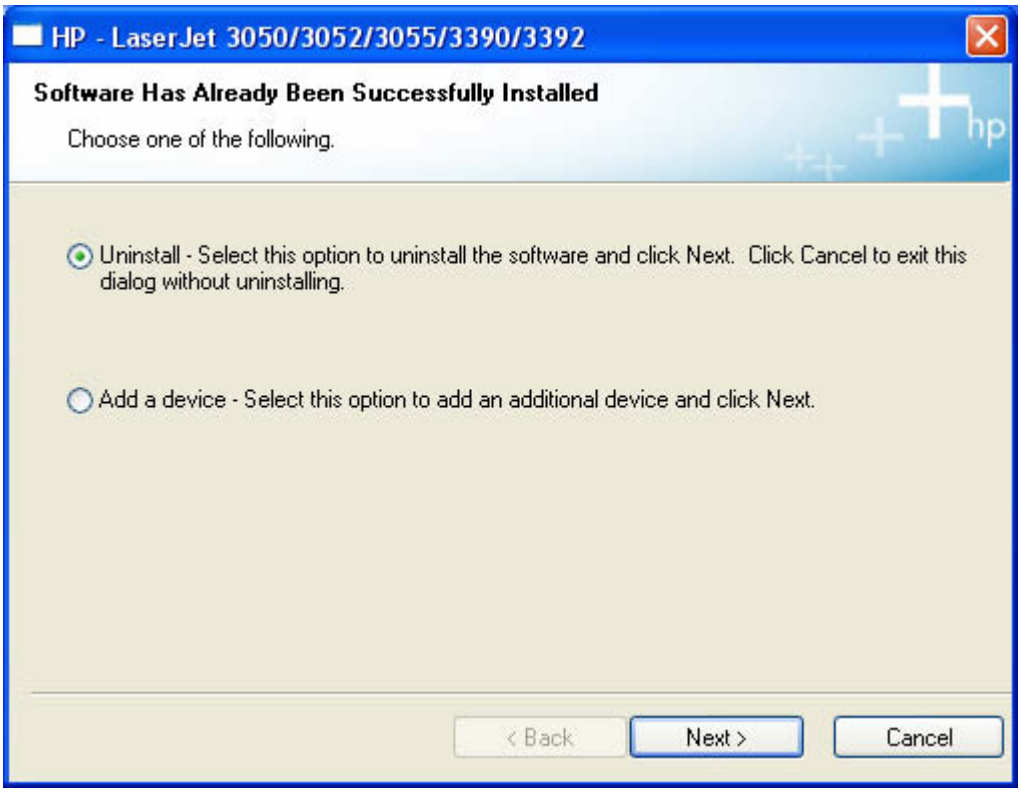


Figure 6-47 Uninstall – **Software Has Already Been Successfully Installed** dialog box

3. Select **Uninstall**, and then click **Next**.

Uninstalling an Add-Printer installation

Follow these steps to uninstall a Typical or Minimum installation of the HP LaserJet all-in-one software by using the HP LaserJet all-in-one software **Add or Remove software** component. Use the procedure for the appropriate operating system.

- Windows 98 SE or Windows Me
- Windows 2000 or Windows XP

Windows 98 SE or Windows Me

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the icon for your HP LaserJet all-in-one product and then click **Delete**. The product icon and the associated files are removed from your computer.

Windows 2000 or Windows XP

NOTE To uninstall the software from Windows 2000 or Windows XP, you must log on with administrator privileges.

1. Click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

   NOTE For Windows XP, click **Start**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

2. Right-click the icon for your HP LaserJet all-in-one product and then click **Delete**. This removes the icon for the product only, but it does not remove the associated files.
3. To remove the associated files, click **File** from inside the **Printers** folder, and then click **Server Properties**.
4. Click the **Driver** tab, click the name of your HP LaserJet all-in-one product, and then click **Remove**. When you are prompted to confirm the deletion, click **Yes**.
5. Click **Close** to close the **Server Properties** dialog box, and then close the **Printers** folder.

Files and folders not removed and manual uninstall (Windows)

The tables in the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 Software Technical Reference Addendum* list all of the installed files and folders. The tables also show which of the installed files are shared, and which are removed during the uninstall process.

The uninstall program does *not* remove some files and folders. Manually removing the HP LaserJet all-in-one software folder does not remove some files folders that were installed, such as Windows-shared files and hidden files.

NOTE If you need to perform a manual uninstall, you might need to make some hidden files visible. Use the **View** menu in Windows Explorer to set the option to show all files.

Files marked with a "Y" (for Yes) in the Uninstall column are removed when using the recommended automated uninstall procedure. Files marked with an "N" (for No) in the Uninstall column are *not* removed when using the recommended automated uninstall procedure. You can use this information if you must complete an uninstall procedure manually.

CAUTION If you must perform a manual uninstall of the HP LaserJet all-in-one software, do not remove shared files that are marked with an "N" (for No) in the Uninstall column of the System Changes tables. These shared files might be used by the operating system or by other programs, and removing them might cause your computer system to work incorrectly. Also, you should not remove any of the files that are modified by the HP LaserJet all-in-one software installation process. Generally, these are shared files that the operating system or other programs might use, and removing them might cause your computer system to work incorrectly.

Other files and folders that are not removed when using the recommended automated uninstall procedure are located at:

C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Hewlett-Packard\ToolboxFX

Look in the sub-directories under the ToolboxFX folder for any faxes, logs, or settings that you might want to delete.

7 Macintosh software overview

This chapter provides information about the following topics:

- Supported Macintosh operating systems
- Supported e-mail programs
- Software for Macintosh
- System requirements for a direct connection (Macintosh)
- Installation overview
- Installation options
- Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh
- HP LaserJet all-in-one uninstall instructions for Macintosh

Supported Macintosh operating systems

The Macintosh driver software for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one supports the following operating systems:

- Apple Mac OS X V10.3
- Apple Mac OS X V10.4

Supported e-mail programs

The following are some examples of supported e-mail programs for Macintosh.

- Apple Mail
- Microsoft Entourage

Software for Macintosh

This section provides information about the following topics:

- Software components for Macintosh
- Software features not available on Macintosh operating systems
- Software component availability for Macintosh
- Software component localization
- Ordering software for Macintosh
- HP EWS Device Configuration

Software components for Macintosh

The following table lists the software components for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products that are available for computers running the Macintosh operating system .

Table 7-1 Software components for Macintosh

Component	Description
Installer software	Installs all the HP LaserJet all-in-one software.
Driver software	Allows you to print, copy, and scan with the computer and the HP LaserJet all-in-one. This software includes the following components: • The PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file for printing through PostScript Level 3 emulation • The HP LaserJet Fax driver • The HP LaserJet Scan driver (TWAIN scan driver)
Configure Device	Provides a user interface that you use to configure your HP LaserJet all-in-one.
HP LaserJet Director	Your HP LaserJet all-in-one automatically senses when a document is inserted into the automatic document feeder (ADF) and signals the computer to open the HP Director interface on the computer screen. This "pop-up" feature provides immediate access to the fax, copy, scan, and scan-to-e-mail functions. **NOTE** In network configurations where your HP LaserJet all-in-one is shared, the HP Director "pop-up" feature is turned off by default, so that the HP Director interface does not open on all network users' screens when one person inserts a document into the ADF. Also, peer-to-peer sharing of the product is not available on Mac OS systems.
HP LaserJet Send Fax program **NOTE** This feature is not supported on the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one.	Allows you to send faxes from the computer through the fax modem. HP Send Fax also provides tools for managing hard-copy faxing from the product. You can gain access to the fax software from the HP LaserJet Director.

Table 7-1 Software components for Macintosh (continued)

Component	Description
	NOTE On Macintosh operating systems that use the HP LaserJet all-in-one software, you can send faxes from the computer, but you cannot receive faxes to the computer.
HP LaserJet Scanner program	Allows you to select scan options and then store the image to a file. Open the scanning software from the HP LaserJet Director. The default file format for the Scan-to-Email feature is .PDF; other supported formats include .JPG, .PICT, and .TIFF. You can also scan directly to TWAIN-compliant programs.
Readiris Professional 9.0 text-recognition software by IRIS	Convert scanned images into text that can be edited in word-processing programs. **NOTE** The Readiris software comes on a separate CD.
Scan to e-mail	During installation, your HP LaserJet all-in-one software detects supported e-mail program on your system and integrates them into the HP LaserJet Scan software. In addition, each time you start the computer, the software updates the list of e-mail programs that are available for linking.
Online Help	Provides help for using the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software . The user documentation for these products is included on the installation CD in Adobe Acrobat .PDF format. You must have Adobe Acrobat Reader installed on your computer to read the .PDF files. The HP Director also provides a link to this documentation after you install the software.

Software features not available on Macintosh operating systems

A number of features and functions that are available in the Windows operating system (OS) version of the HP LaserJet all-in-one software are not available in the Macintosh OS version of the software. The following software features are *not* available:

- HP PCL 6 print drivers
- Some customized settings and features for the start scan functionality
- The ability to receive faxes to this computer (the HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-one does not provide any fax functionality)

Software component availability for Macintosh

The following table lists the availability of the HP LaserJet all-in-one software components for Macintosh.

Table 7-2 Software component availability for Macintosh

Component	Macintosh
Drivers	
Mac PostScript Printer Description PPD	X
Fax driver	X
Scan driver	X
Installers	
Macintosh Installer for OS X	X
Bidirectional communication	
Network Bidirectional Communications	X
Direct Connect Bidirectional Communications	X
HP Aio Setup Assistant	X
Online Documentation	
HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide	X
Help systems	X
Other	
HP Director	X
Configure Device utility	X

Software component localization

The Macintosh all-in-one software components for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product is localized in the following languages:

- Dutch
- English
- French
- German
- Italian
- Spanish

Ordering software for Macintosh

To order the software if the CD is damaged or missing, contact HP Support at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/cposupport/software.html

To request the software CD by phone, see the following Web site for the correct contact number for your country/region.

welcome.hp.com/country/us/en/wwcontact.html

The following table lists the part numbers and language groups of the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software CDs.

Table 7-3 CD part numbers for the HP LaserJet all-in-one software

Part Number	Contents	Languages Included on CD
Q6500–60124	Macintosh software CD for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products	• Dutch • English • French • Italian • German • Spanish

NOTE If you need a replacement CD or newer version of the software than what came with the product, go to the product Web site and click **CD-ROM Order Page** to order, or click **Download drivers and software** to get the software update.

HP EWS Device Configuration

The HP EWS Device Configuration is a utility that allows you to control your product from your computer.

This section contains information about the following topics:

- Access
- HP EWS Device Configuration screens

Access

To gain access to the HP EWS Device Configuration utility, follow these steps:

1. Open the HP Director.

Figure 7-1 HP Director

2. Click **Maintain Device**. This opens the HP EWS Device Configuration screens whether your computer is connected over the network or through a USB connection.

HP EWS Device Configuration screens

The following tabs are available when you open the HP EWS Device configuration utility:

- Status
- System

- Print
- Fax
- Networking

NOTE If you are not using the most recent version of your browser, you might need to click the refresh button to gain access to the full feature set.

The following links are available on all EWS screens.

- Click **Order Supplies** to order supplies by using a Web interface.
- Click **Support** to open a window with the following links to remote support tools that are available for the product.
  - Click **HP Instant Support** to access self-help based on information sent from the product to the HP Web site, such as recommendations for troubleshooting, firmware upgrades, and reference documentation customized to the most recent events that have occurred on your product.
  - Click **Product Registration** to link to the HP Web site to register the product and begin the warranty period.
  - Click **Product Support** to link to the HP Web site for self-navigation through the available support links, such as drivers and software downloads.

NOTE The HP EWS provides settings that are also available by using HP ToolboxFX in Windows 2000 and Windows XP. For detailed descriptions of the settings available on the HP EWS pages, see The HP ToolboxFX.

Status

The **Status** tab allows you to access and print out detailed information regarding device and supply status, device configuration, network configuration, and usage.

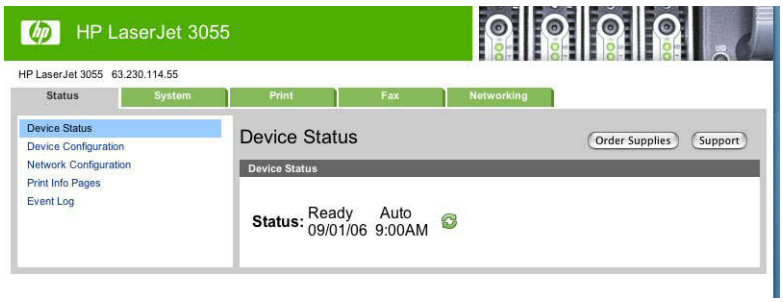


Figure 7-2 HP EWS Device Configuration – **Status** tab

System

The **System** tab allows you to view and change settings for device information, paper handling, print quality, print types, system setup, and device service.

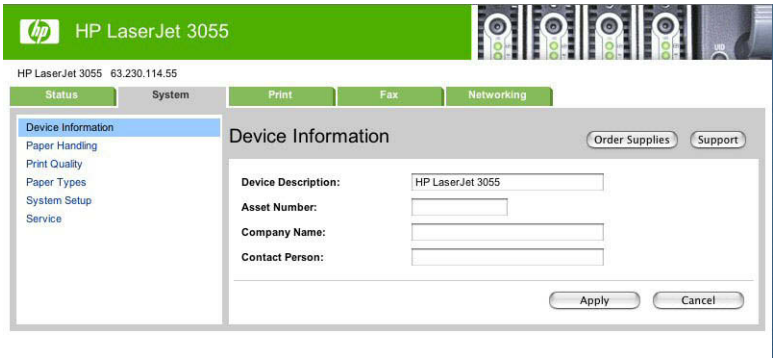


Figure 7-3 HP EWS Device Configuration – **System** tab

Print

The **Print** tab allows you to view and change settings for print jobs, PCL5e fonts, and PostScript error reaction.

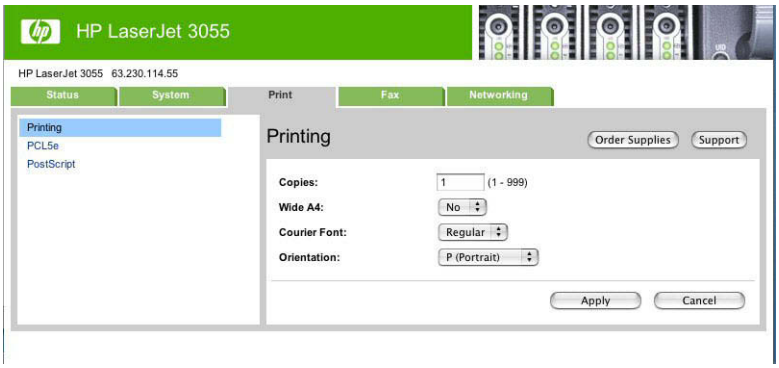


Figure 7-4 HP EWS Device Configuration – **Print** tab

Fax

The **Fax** tab allows you to view and change settings for fax sending, fax reception, error correction, and creation of various logs and reports.

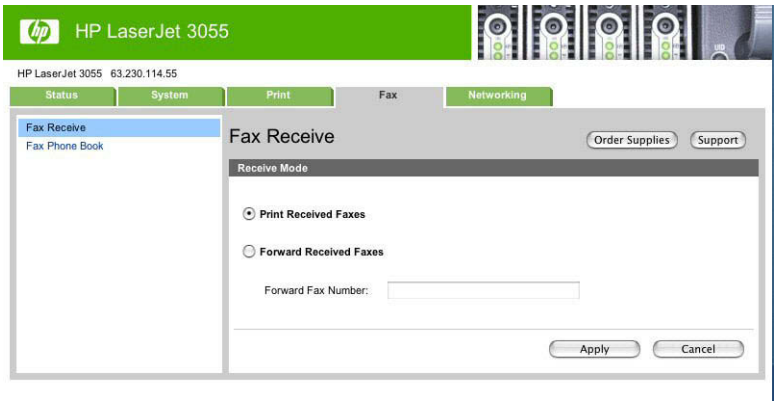


Figure 7-5 HP EWS Device Configuration – **Fax** tab

Networking

Use the **Networking** tab allows to view and change network settings for your device.

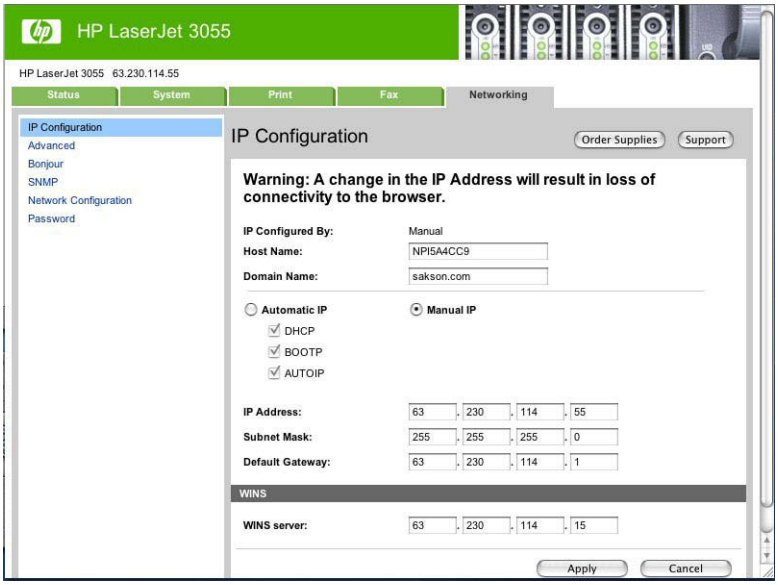


Figure 7-6 HP EWS Device Configuration – **Networking** tab

System requirements for a direct connection (Macintosh)

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software has the following minimum system requirements:

- Mac OS X, V10.3 and V10.4.
- Macintosh computer (Power PC processor), such as an iMac, Power Macintosh G3 233 MHz, Power Macintosh G4 , or Power Mac G5.
- RAM: Mac OS X (V10.3 and V10.4) - minimum system memory 128 MB. These are minimum system requirements for memory. An additional 32 MB of free memory is optimum for installation.
- 100 MB or more of free hard disk space
- A USB port
- A CD-ROM drive (required for installation)

Installation overview

The software for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products comes on a single CD. On Macintosh operating systems, the HP all-in-one Installer installs the HP LaserJet all-in-one software for your product from the CD onto the hard disk.

On Macintosh operating systems, the HP LaserJet all-in-one products use the HP all-in-one Installer. By default, the HP all-in-one software folder and the Readiris folder are installed in the Applications folder.

Installation options

The HP LaserJet all-in-one software can be used with the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products in the following configurations:

- A computer is directly connected to the product through a USB port and the HP LaserJet all-in-one software is loaded on the computer. This provides the most product functionality.
- The product is connected to a network and you install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software on a computer that has access to the network.

Macintosh installation instructions for direct connections

Use the following instructions to install the software on a Macintosh computer running Mac OS X.

1. Follow the instructions in the Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh section of this STR.
2. If prompted to do so, enter a user name and password that have administrator privileges.
3. The software license agreement appears. Click **Accept**. The installation begins. During the installation, you might be prompted again to provide a user name and password that have administrator privileges.
4. When the installation is completed, a message appears stating that the installation was successful. Click **Restart**.
5. The HP Setup Assistant starts automatically. Follow the onscreen instructions.

NOTE If the HP Setup Assistant does not start automatically, click **Macintosh HD**, click **Applications**, click **hp laserjet aio**, and then double-click **hp All-in-One Setup Assistant**.

Macintosh installation instructions for networked computers

Use the following instructions to install the HP LaserJet all-in-one software on networked Macintosh operating systems:

1. Connect and install your HP LaserJet all-in-one product to the network.
2. Insert the product software CD into the CD-ROM drive. In the CD browser window, double-click the HP LaserJet all-in-one Installer icon.

Figure 7-7 HP LaserJet all-in-one Installer icon

3. Click **Install**, and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.
4. When the software installation is complete, click **Restart**. After the computer restarts, the HP setup assistant starts automatically.
5. In the Setup Assistant welcome screen, click **Next**.

6. Under **Select Device**, click the **TCP/IP** option, and then click **Create**. Type the HP LaserJet all-in-one product TCP/IP address, and then click **OK**.

7. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the setup and then click **Done**.

Installation dialog-box options for Macintosh

The following sequence describes the dialog-box options that appear during the HP LaserJet all-in-one software installation on Macintosh systems.

NOTE In the following installation sequence, the product name HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one represents the specific HP LaserJet all-in-one product that you are installing.

Figure 7-8 **Authenticate** dialog box

Type your user name and password, and then click **OK** to continue.

Click **Cancel** to close the installer.

Figure 7-9 **License** dialog box – HP Software License Agreement

Click **Accept** to initiate the installation process.

Click **Print** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box for your default printer and then print a copy of the license agreement.

Click the language list to change the language of the **License Agreement** and the user interface.

Click **Save As** to open the system **Save** dialog box and then save the text of the software license agreement to disk.

Click **Decline** to exit the installer.

Figure 7-10 **Installing** dialog box – progress indicator

The **Installing** dialog shows the number of items that remain to be installed and the name of the software component currently being installed.

If you are installing the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one over a USB connection, the following dialog box appears, instructing you to connect your USB cable.

Figure 7-11 **If you are using a USB cable...** dialog box

After you have connected the USB cable, click **OK**.

When software installation is complete, the **Restart** alert appears.

Figure 7-12 **Restart** alert

Click **Restart** to close the installer and restart the computer. After the computer restarts, you must log in to the computer, and then the **hp All-in-One Setup Assistant** starts automatically.

NOTE If the HP Setup Assistant does not start automatically, follow these steps:

1. Click **Macintosh Hard Drive**.
2. Click **Applications**.
3. Click **hp laserjet aio**.
4. Double-click **hp All-in-One Setup Assistant**.

Figure 7-13 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Introduction

Click **Next** to go to the **Select Device** dialog box.

Figure 7-14 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Select Device

NOTE If you have not yet connected the product to your computer, the **No devices found** message appears instead of a list of HP LaserJet all-in-one products. Connect the product to the computer with the USB cable, turn on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one, and then click **USB**. The HP LaserJet all-in-one product appears in the list box.

When you click **USB**, the HP LaserJet all-in-one product name appears in the list box. Click the product name, and then click **Next** to the open the **User Identification** dialog box.

When you click **Create**, a text-entry dialog box opens and you can type the network address or name for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one product.

Click **Back** to return to the **Introduction** dialog box.

Click the **USB** or **Network** button to scan the system again and locate the designated product connection.

Figure 7-15 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – User Identification

NOTE This step occurs only when you are installing the or the .

Type the required information in the red fields.

Click **Next** to go to the **Phone Line** dialog box.

Click **Back** to return to the **Select Device** dialog box.

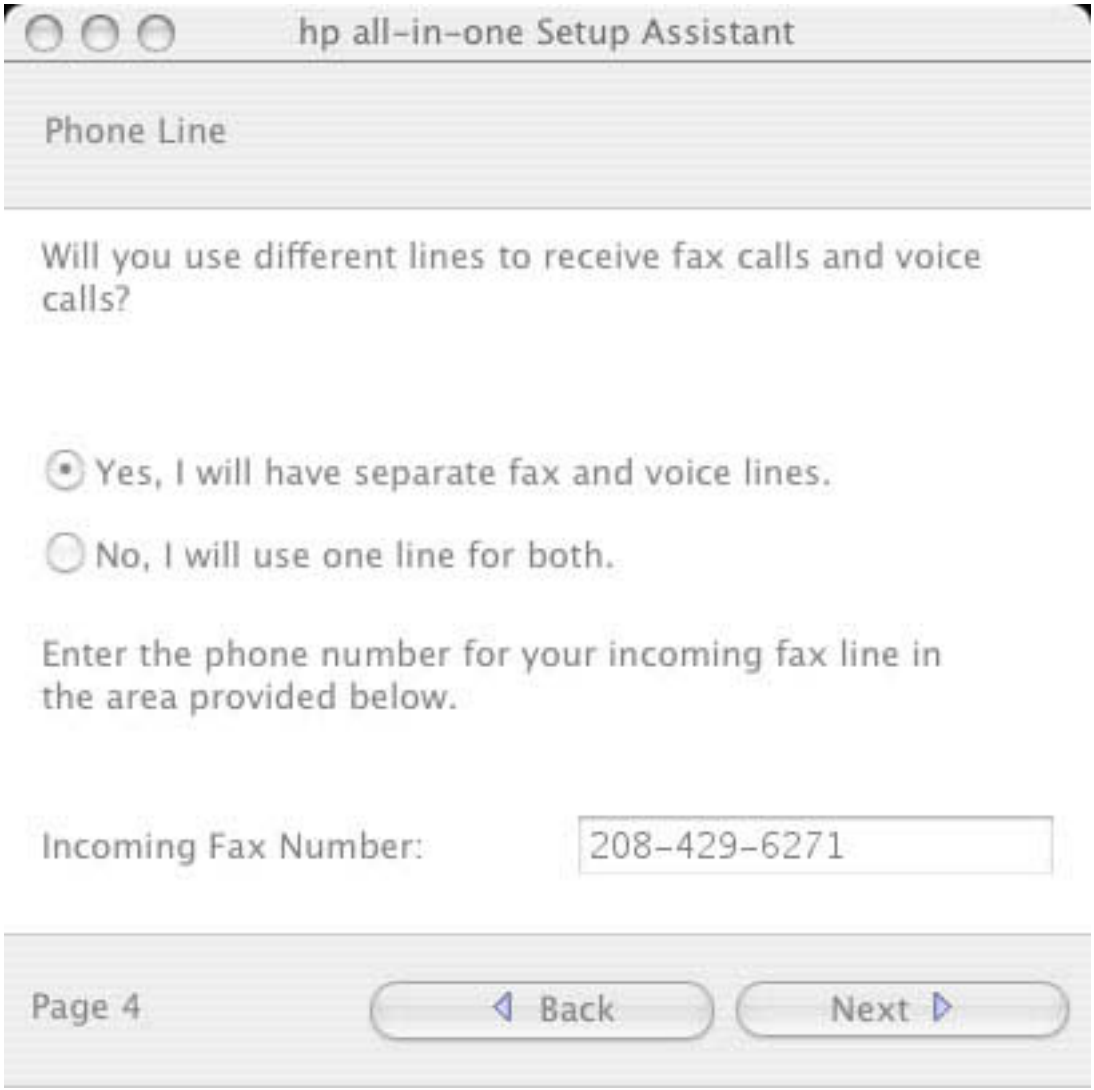


Figure 7-16 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Phone Line

Select the appropriate options.

If you have a separate (dedicated) phone line for fax calls, click the **Yes, I will have separate fax and voice lines.** option. Also, be sure to type your fax number in the **Incoming Fax Number** text box. If you are using a single telephone line for both phone calls and faxes, click the **No, I will use one line for both.** option.

Whether you select **Yes** (separate fax line) or **No** (shared line), click **Next** to go to the **Outside Line** dialog box.

Click **Back** to return to the **User Identification** dialog box.

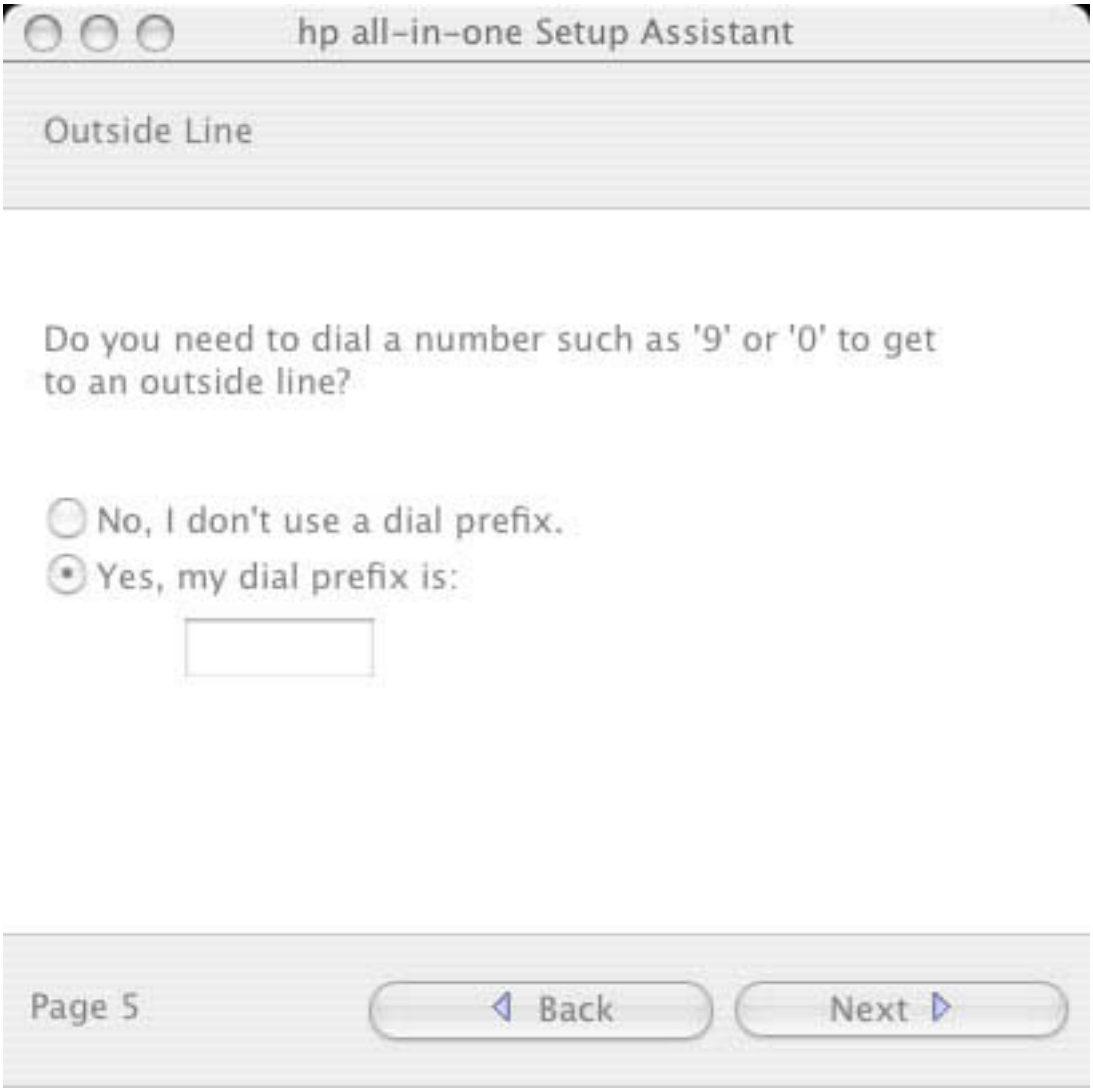


Figure 7-17 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Outside Line

NOTE This step occurs only when you are installing the or the .

Select the appropriate option.

If you do *not* need to dial a number to get to an outside line, click the **No, I don't use a dial prefix** option. If you do need to dial a number to get an outside line, click the **Yes, my dial prefix is:** option and type the number into the text box.

If you have separate voice and phone lines, click **Next** to go to the **Finish** dialog box.

If you have a single phone line for both voice and fax, click **Next** to go to the **Distinctive Ring** dialog box.

Click **Back** to return to the **Phone Line** dialog box.

Figure 7-18 **hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Distinctive Ring**

NOTE This step occurs only when you are installing the or the .

Select the appropriate option.

If you have a distinctive ring service, click **Yes**, and then select the type of ring from the drop-down menu. If you do not have a distinctive ring service, click **No**.

If you clicked **Yes**, click **Next** to go to the **Finish** dialog box.

If you clicked **No**, click **Next** to go to the **Answering Machine** dialog box.

Click **Back** to return to the **Outside Line** dialog box.

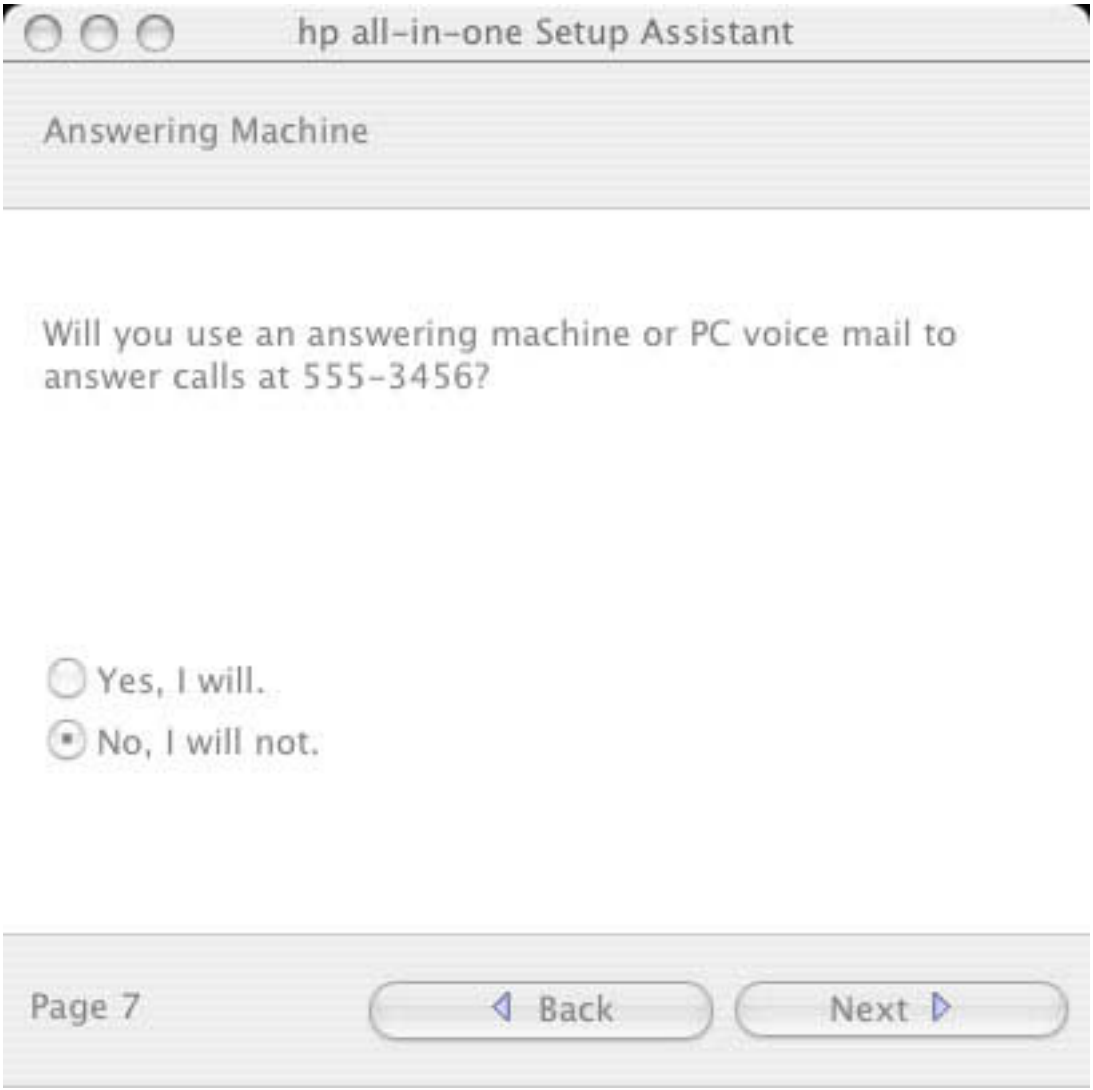


Figure 7-19 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Answering Machine

NOTE This step occurs only when you are installing the or the .

Select the appropriate option.

If you have an answering machine that answers calls at the specified number, click **Yes, I will.** If you do *not* have an answering machine that answers calls at the specified number, click **No, I will not.**

Click **Next** to go to the **Finish** dialog box.

Click **Back** to return to the **Distinctive Ring** dialog box.

Figure 7-20 hp All-in-One Setup Assist – Finish

The information you typed in previous dialog boxes appears in the **Finish** dialog box. If any items need to be changed, click the **Back** button to return to the dialog boxes that you need to change.

If you have separate lines for your fax and voice calls, click **Back** to return to the **Outside Line** dialog box.

If you have one line for your fax and voice calls, click **Back** to return to the **Answering Machine** dialog box.

Click **Finish** to go to the **Congratulations** dialog box.

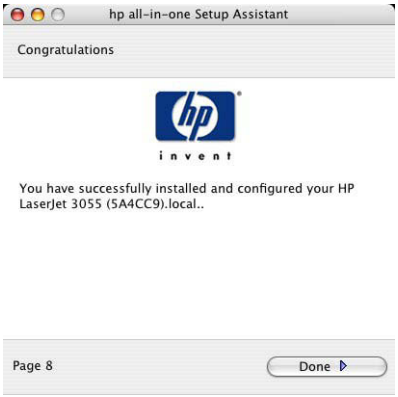


Figure 7-21 hp All-in-One Setup Assistant – Congratulations

Click **Done** to close the HP All-in-One Setup Assistant.

HP LaserJet all-in-one uninstall instructions for Macintosh

Use the following instructions to uninstall the HP LaserJet all-in-one software from the computer:

1. Locate the HP LaserJet all-in-one Uninstaller utility icon in the HP all-in-one Software folder by using the following path:

   <system drive>/Applications/hplaserjetaio/HP Uninstaller

   Double-click the **HP Uninstaller** icon to start the utility.

2. Specify whether you want to perform an uninstall for all HP devices, or only for a specific device. If you select **Uninstall selected**, you must then specify the devices you want to uninstall from the list.

3. Click **Next**.

4. Select the appropriate check boxes to uninstall any additional items.

5. Click **Uninstall**.

6. When the uninstall process is complete, click **Restart**.

8 Engineering details

This chapter provides information about the following topics:

- Media attributes
- HP System Diagnostics
- Troubleshooting
- Summary of HP ToolboxFX known issues
- Windows Readme

Media attributes

This section includes the following information about media attributes:

- Media sources and destinations
- Source commands
- Media types and sizes

Media sources and destinations

The following tables show the standard and optional media sources and destinations for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products.

Table 8-1 HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one media sources and destinations

Media sources	Priority input slot	standard
	250-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1)	standard
	ADF input tray	standard
Media destinations	Output bin	standard
	ADF output bin	standard

Table 8-2 HP LaserJet 3052/3055 all-in-one media sources and destinations

Media sources	Priority input slot	standard
	250-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1)	standard
	ADF input tray	standard
Media destinations	Output bin	standard
	ADF output bin	standard

Table 8-3 HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-oneHP LaserJet 3052/3055 all-in-one media sources and destinations

Media sources	Single-sheet priority input slot (tray 1)	standard
	250-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 2)	standard
	ADF input tray	standard
	250-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 3)	standard (HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one) optional (HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one)
Media destinations	Top (face-down) output bin	standard
	ADF output bin	standard

Source commands

The PCL 6 attribute for paper source is `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, "`ubyte 4 MediaSource`" is the command for tray 2.

The PCL 5 escape sequence for media source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l8H` is the command for tray 4.

Table 8-4 Media-source commands

Media source	PCL 6 `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`[1]	PCL 5 `Esc&l#H`	PostScript `/MediaPosition # / ManualFeed true | false` or `null`
Tray 1 (Single-sheet priority input slot)	3	4	3 false
Tray 2 (250-sheet)	4	1	0 false
Auto Select	1	7	NA
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3 true

[1] For the string value, you must use include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, `ubyte_array "TRAY2" MediaSource` is the PCL 6 command for Tray 2.

Media types and sizes

The tables in this section provide information about media features, media attributes, and media-handling constraints for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

Media features and attributes

The following table lists the features and attributes of the media that appears under the **Size Is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the product and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 8-5 Supported features and attributes, by driver

Paper sizes[1]	Width	Height	PCL 6[2]
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	279 mm (11.0 inches)	"LETTER"
16K	197 mm (7.75 inches)	273 mm (10.75 inches)	"ROC16K"
8.5x13	216 mm (8.5 inches)	330 mm (13 inches)	"8.5x13"
A3	274 mm (10.75 inches)	393 mm (15.50 inches)	"ROC8K"

Table 8-5 Supported features and attributes, by driver (continued)

Paper sizes[1]	Width	Height	PCL 6[2]
A4	210 mm (8.27 inches)	297 mm (11.69 inches)	"A4"
A5	148 mm (5.83 inches)	210 mm (8.27 inches)	"A5"
B4 (JIS)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	364 mm (14.33 inches)	"JIS B4"
B5 (ISO)	176 mm (6.93 inches)	250 mm (9.,84 inches)	ISOB5”
B5 (JIS)	182 mm (7.17 inches)	257 mm (10.12 inches)	"JIS B5"
Postcard	100 mm (3.94 inches)	148 mm (5.83 inches)	?
Double Postscard (JIS)	100 mm (5.83 inches)	200 mm (7.87 inches)	“Double Postcard (JIS)”
Envelope #10	105 mm (4.13 inches)	241 mm (9.5 inches)	"COM10"
Envelope B5	176 mm (6.93 inches)	250 mm (9.84 inches)	"B5 ENV"
Envelope C5	162 mm (6.38 inches)	229 mm (9.02 inches)	"C5"
Envelope DL	110 mm (4.33 inches)	220 mm (8.66 inches)	"DL"
Envelope Monarch	99 mm (3.88 inches)	190 mm (7.5 inches)	"MONARCH"
Executive	185 mm (7.25 inches)	266 mm (10.5 inches)	"EXEC"
Executive (JIS)	216 mm (8.5 inches)	330 mm (12.99 inches)	"JISEXEC"
Legal	216 mm (8.5 inches)	355 mm (14.0 inches)	"LEGAL"

Table 8-5 Supported features and attributes, by driver (continued)

Paper sizes[1]	Width	Height	PCL 6[2]
Custom	Minimum:	Minimum:	[4]
	98 mm	191 mm	
	(3.86 inches)	(7.5 inches)	
	Maximum:	Maximum:	
	312 mm	470 mm	
	(12.28 inches)	(18.5 inches)	

1 For all media sizes, the PCL 6 margins are 100 dots, at 600 dots per inch.
2 The PCL 6 command for paper size is ubyte_array “String” MediaSize. The values in this column are the values for "String."
3 For custom sizes, the PCL 6 driver specifies actual dimensions, for example, for 8-inch x 9-inch custom size, "real32_xy 8.0 9.0 CustomMediaSize ubyte eInch CustomMediaSizeUnits."

Table 8-6 Supported media types

Media types (command string)	Tray 1 (Single-sheet priority input slot)	Tray 2 (250-sheet)
Bond	Y	Y
Cardstock[1]	Y	N
Color	Y	Y
Envelope	Y	N
Gloss	Y	N
Heavy (90-105 gm/m^2)	Y	Y
Heavy Gloss	Y	N
Labels	Y	N
Letterhead	Y	Y
Light (<70 g/m^2)	Y	Y
Plain	Y	Y
Preprinted	Y	Y
Prepunched	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y
Tough Paper	Y	N
Transparency	Y	Y
Vellum		

1 Tray 1 accepts cardstock between 106 g/m^2 (29 lb) and 163 g/m^2 (45 lb) in weight.

If you want to print on HP LaserJet Photo paper, use the **Heavy Glossy** setting in your print driver.

Custom media sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

Table 8-7 Custom media sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (multipurpose)	Width	127 mm (5 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5 inches)	381 mm (15 inches)
Tray 2 (250-sheet)	Width	127 mm (5 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5 inches)	381 mm (15 inches)
ADF unit	Width	127 mm (5 inches)	216 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127 mm (5 inches)	381 mm (15 inches)

Media-type commands

The HP Traditional PCL 5e Driver escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 8-8 Media-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	13	Wd	Transparency[1]
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	11	Wd	Cardstock[2]
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough
Esc&	9	Wd	Envelope

[1] You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control panel.

[2] The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

HP System Diagnostics

The HP System Diagnostics software is a new tool that is designed to give IT administrators direct access to system information about HP products and software.

To open the HP System Diagnostics software, click **Start**, click **Programs** or **All Programs**, click **HP**, and then select **HP System Diagnostics**.

The HP System Diagnostics software user interface consists of the following tabs:

- System
- Devices
- Applications
- HP Applications
- Logging

System

Use this tab for an overview of the operating system and its components. Click the **Refresh** button to update the information on the tab.

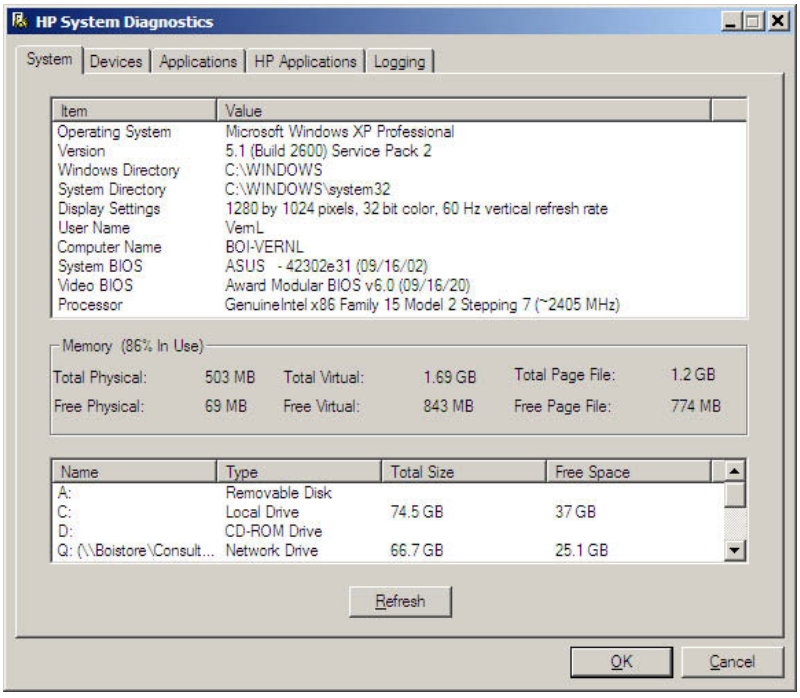


Figure 8-1 HP System Diagnostics – **System** tab

Devices

When you click the **Devices** tab, the system checks for devices that are installed on the system, such as disk drives, imaging devices, ports, keyboards, and mice.

When you select any device in the list in the panel to the left, related items appear in the panel to the right. Select any of the items in the panel to the right to view system information about that item, including an indication of whether the item is functioning correctly.

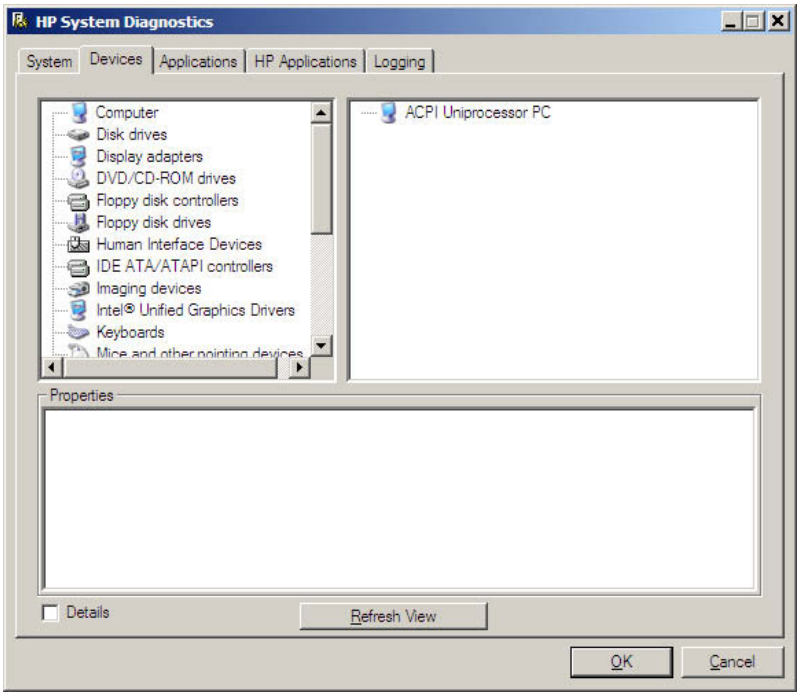


Figure 8-2 HP System Diagnostics – **Devices** tab

Applications

When you click the **Applications** tab, a list appears that shows currently installed third-party software programs. Click the **Refresh** button to update the information on the tab. Select any item in the **Running Application** field to view related system information.

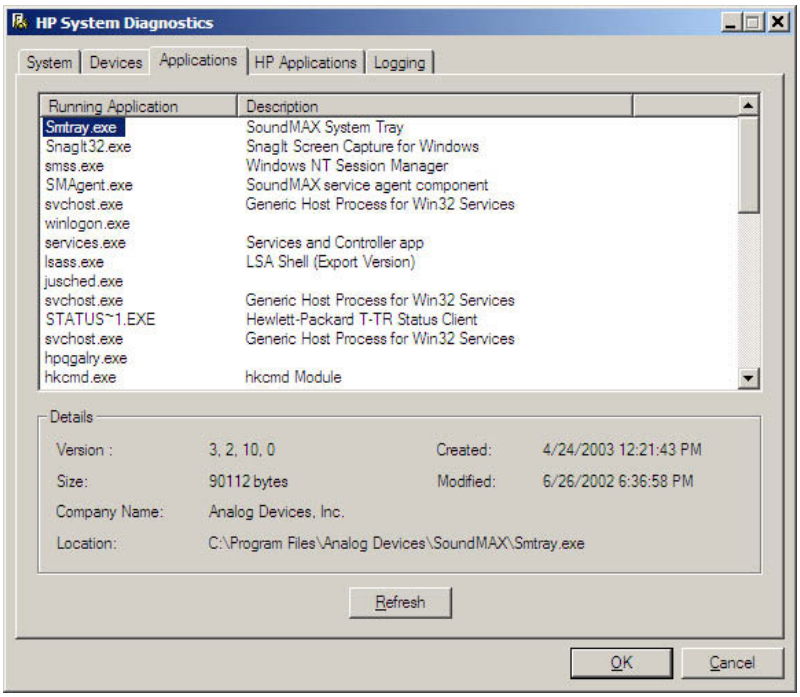


Figure 8-3 HP System Diagnostics – **Applications** tab

HP Applications

When you click the **HP Applications** tab, a list appears that shows currently installed HP software programs. Click the **Refresh** button to update the information on the tab. Select any item on the tab to view related system information.

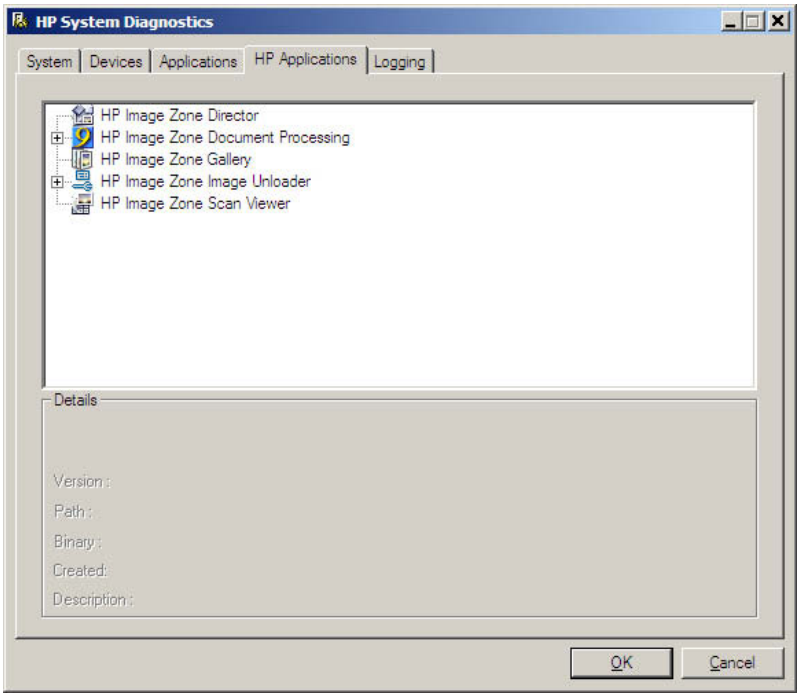


Figure 8-4 HP System Diagnostics – **HP Applications** tab

Logging

Use the **Logging** tab to generate a log of detailed system information. Three kinds of information can be included in the log:

- **Dr. Watson log**
- **HP Installation Logs**
- **Legacy System Config Files**

Select the check box for the information that you want, and then click **Create Log File**. To view the log, click the **View Log File** button; the log appears in a new window.

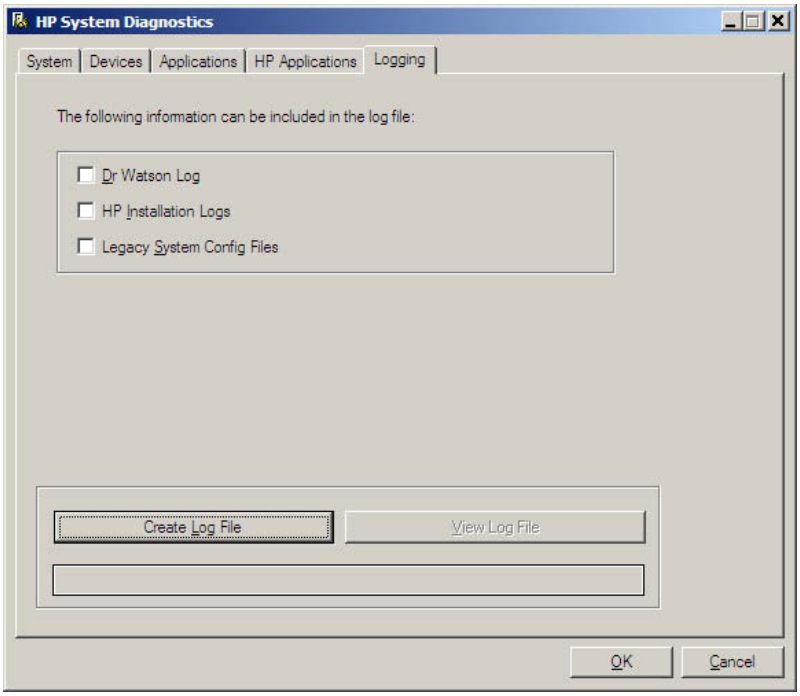


Figure 8-5 HP System Diagnostics – **Logging** tab

Troubleshooting

The following topics are described in this section:

- Port communication
- File to E-mail utility
- Standalone scrubber
- E-mail
- HP LaserJet Scan

Port communication

This section provides information on the following topics:

- Overview
- USB port connections
- Device conflicts in Windows

Overview

The HP LaserJet 3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one products include both a 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port and a USB port.

The HP LaserJet 3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one can be connected with either the 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port or the USB port. The HP LaserJet 3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one does not support connection over a parallel port.

NOTE Do not connect both the 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port and the USB port at the same time.

USB port connections

Hi-speed USB is an input/output mode that both PC and Macintosh computers support. A wide variety of consumer devices, such as digital cameras and scanners, also support USB. Hi-speed USB is the current standard. HP LaserJet all-in-one products are compatible with Hi-speed USB specifications.

A USB host is distinct from a USB device. The HP LaserJet all-in-one products are USB devices. They can connect only to a USB host or a USB hub.

Device conflicts in Windows

When two-way communication cannot be established with the HP LaserJet all-in-one product, the Windows Device Manager might show a conflict. Conflicts should be resolved immediately, before continuing to troubleshoot two-way communication issues. The following sections contain a few guidelines for identifying and resolving these conflicts.

NOTE USB connections for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one are supported only in Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000, and Windows XP.

Opening the Windows Device Manager

Follow these steps to open the Windows Device Manager.

1. In Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, or Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**.

   In Windows XP or Windows Server 2003, click **Start**.

2. Click **Control Panel**

3. Double-click the **System** icon.

4. On the **Hardware** tab, click **Device Manager**.

NOTE In Windows 98 SE or Windows Me, click the **Device Manager** tab.

Check for device conflicts

Follow these steps to check for device conflicts.

1. Look for devices that appear on the list with a yellow exclamation mark (!) or a red X .

2. Identify port conflicts by double-clicking **Port** or by clicking the plus sign (**+**). Conflicts here usually interfere with two-way communication.

3. To check the status of a device, click the device name, and then click **Properties**. The **Device Status** appears in the middle of the dialog box.

4. To check the **Conflicting Device** list, click the device name, and then click **Properties**. Click the **Resources** tab, and look at the **Conflicting Device** list at the bottom of the dialog box.

5. Click the plus sign (**+**) to the left of **Open the Other Devices**. Misidentified or noncategorized devices are placed here.

Guidelines for troubleshooting and resolving device conflicts

Follow these steps for resolving device conflicts.

1. If the conflicting device is no longer present in the list of devices, click the device name, click **Remove**, and then click **Yes**. Click **Yes** to restart Windows.

2. If the conflicting device is a duplicate (and one of the duplicate listings does not show a conflict), click the name(s) of the device(s) that have a conflict, click **Remove**, and then click **Yes**. Click **Yes** to restart Windows.

NOTE You might not need to restart the computer in Windows 2000 and Windows XP, depending on the type of port conflict you are resolving.

3. If a device has a conflict and you have the driver for that device, remove the device and then reinstall it. After removing the device, restart the computer. When Windows reinstalls devices, it usually finds nonconflicting resources.

Installed Devices

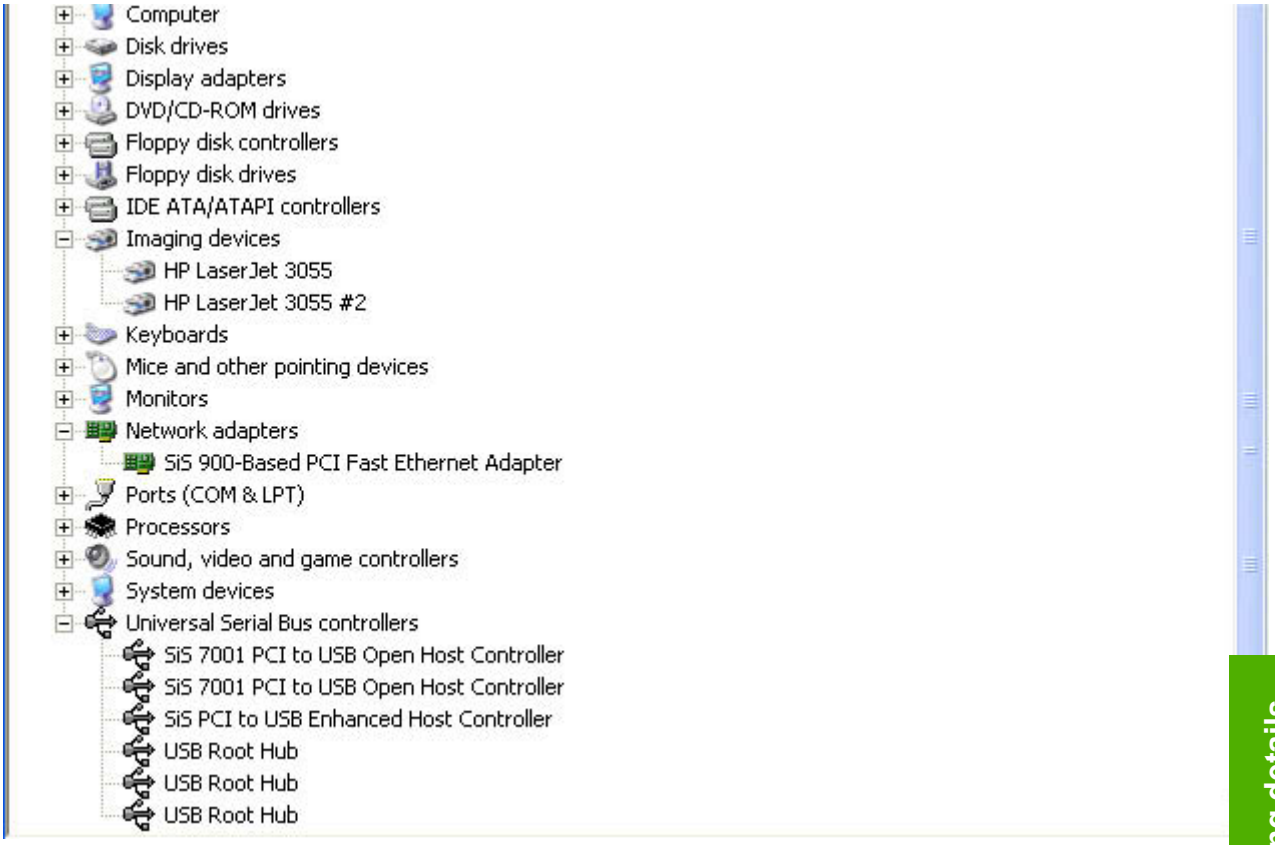


Figure 8-6 Sample **Device Manager** screen – Windows XP

Click the **View** menu to see further options:

- Devices by Type
- Devices by Connection
- Resources by Type
- Resources by connection
- Hidden Devices

The following table shows devices that are installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows XP.

Table 8-9 Devices installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows 2000 and Windows XP

Device by type	Device
Disk drives	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one USB Device
IEEE 1284.4 compatible printers (Windows XP) DOT4Print HPZ12 (Windows 2000)	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one (DOT4PRT)

Table 8-9 Devices installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows 2000 and Windows XP (continued)

Device by type	Device
IEEE 1284.4 devices DOT4Print HPZ12 (Windows 2000)	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one (DOT4)
Imaging devices	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one
Universal Serial Bus controllers	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one Series (DOT4USB) • HP EWS • HP MS (Windows XP) • USB Composite Device

The following table shows devices that are installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me.

Table 8-10 Devices installed by the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software in Windows 98 SE and Windows Me

Device by type	Device
Disk drives	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one USB Device
Dot4 HPZ12	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one (DOT4)
Dot4 HPZ12	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one (DOT4PRT)
Dot4 HPZ12	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one (DOT4USB)
Imaging devices	• HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one
Universal Serial Bus controllers	• USB Composite Deviceon USB 2.0 Bus

File to E-mail utility

The File to E-mail utility collects the data specified in an .INI file and then attaches the data files to an e-mail that can be sent to HP Customer Support to assist troubleshooting. The utility runs on your computer, but does not interact with your HP LaserJet all-in-one.

The tool is included on the installer CD, but is *not* copied to your computer during the software installation. HP Customer Support can also send the utility to you by e-mail or by posting it to an HP Web page.

The tool is compatible with Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000, and Windows XP.

The File to E-mail utility runs with any MAPI-compliant e-mail applications. It does not run with Web-based e-mail services such as Yahoo, Hotmail, or AOL.

Depending on the speed of your computer, it might take a few minutes for the utility to gather the log files and attach them to an e-mail message.

The File to E-mail utility consists of two files that are located in the util folder on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software CD:

- <CD-ROM drive>util\CCC\FiletoEmail\FileToEmail.exe
- <CD-ROM drive>util\CCC\FiletoEmail\FileToEmail.ini

To use the File to E-mail utility, copy these files to your desktop, navigate to them in Explorer, and double-click **FileToEmail.exe** to open the utility. The utility generates files, opens an e-mail message, and attaches the files so that you can send them to your IT administrator, as shown in the following figure shows some of the attachments.

If the File to E-mail utility is not successful for any reason (for instance, if you cancel the new message or you are using Web-based e-mail software), all the files are copied to a folder on the desktop that is named HpCCC, possibly with strings of 0's attached to the end. You can zip these files and e-mail them separately.

Standalone scrubber

If the installer fails and troubleshooting efforts have not solved the problem, you can use HP's standalone scrubber utility to remove files.

The scrubber utility is located on the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one software CD in the following folder:

<CD-ROM drive>util\CCC

E-mail

If e-mail messages fail to be sent, try following these steps:

1. Open Windows Microsoft Explorer or Internet Explorer and navigate to the file.
2. Right-click the file, select **Send To**, and then click **Mail Recipient**.

If this method fails, check the MAPI mail setup. The MAPI setup is a third-party issue.

HP LaserJet Scan

The following are a few simple steps you can take to improve copy and scan quality.

- Use the flatbed scanner, rather than the automatic document feeder (ADF) input tray, to scan.
- Use high-quality originals.
- Load the media correctly. If the media is loaded incorrectly, it might skew, which causes unclear images.
- Adjust the software settings according to how you plan to use the scanned page.
- If your HP LaserJet all-in-one frequently feeds more than one page at a time, the separation pad might need to be replaced. Contact HP Customer Care.
- Use or make a carrier sheet to protect your originals.

For more detailed information about troubleshooting HP LaserJet Scan problems, see the *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*.

Summary of HP ToolboxFX known issues

This section summarizes issues that are known to affect the version HP ToolboxFX released with the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one. The following topics are included:

- .NET Framework dependencies
- Device communication
- Obtaining debug information from HP ToolboxFX
- USB drivers are unsigned
- A need to enable or disable HP ToolboxFX arises

.NET Framework dependencies

The HP ToolboxFX is implemented using .NET technologies, and thus requires that the Microsoft .NET Framework be installed on the users system. When the HP ToolboxFX software installer runs, it will silently install Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 (no service pack). This will allow HP ToolboxFX to run, but there are some known issues with .NET Framework 1.1 (no service pack) that might impact our customers.

NOTE If the .NET Framework 1.1 is already installed on the users system at the time of the HP ToolboxFX software installation, the framework will not be installed.

The optimal system configuration for HP ToolboxFX includes all of the following items:

- Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 (no service pack) as installed by the HP ToolboxFX software installer or by some other means.
- Microsoft .NET Framework 1.1 Service Pack 1, available through Microsoft Windows Update.
- Run Microsoft Windows Update until all critical updates have been downloaded and installed.

NOTE You must run Windows Update repeatedly until it informs you that you do not require any further critical updates.

If the optimal system configuration is not set up on the users system, prior to or after the HP ToolboxFX software install, the user might experience errors in HP ToolboxFX, due to defects in various portions of the Microsoft code. Specifically, HP ToolboxFX might intermittently report that it cannot connect to the device, with the following error dialog:

Figure 8-7 HP ToolboxFX – sample error dialog

These communication errors might go away if you re-boot your computer, but the only way to address this problem is to have the optimal system configuration described above.

Another problem has been observed if you happen to have Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 installed on your system at the time that you install the HP ToolboxFX software. The HP ToolboxFX software will still install the .NET Framework 1.1, since HP ToolboxFX will not utilize the .NET 2.0 Framework (due to other problems). After the installation, if you run Microsoft Windows update, it will not recognize that the .NET 1.1 framework requires .NET 1.1 Service Pack 1, and might not get all of the necessary security updates either. Again, in these cases, the user might experience the intermittant **Cannot connect to the device.** error. The best recourse in this situation is to un-install the Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0, run Windows update repeatedly to get the .NET 1.1 Service Pack 1 and all of the subsequent critical security updates installed, and then run Windows update and reinstall the .NET Framework 2.0, which is available as an optional update.

Alternatively, if un-installing the .NET 2.0 Framework is unacceptable, search the Internet for, and then install the following Microsoft files:

- `NDP1.1sp1-KB867460-X86.exe`
- `NDP1.1sp1-KB886903-X86.exe`

These files will not display as necessary options to the .NET 1.1 Framework if the .NET 2.0 Framework is installed. The Knowledge base article numbers to read are KB867460 and KB886903, which are, respectively, Service Pack 1 for the .NET Framework and the current security patch.

Device communication

The majority of problems observed with HP ToolboxFX involve a lack of communication with the device. In these cases, you should always check to see if the cables are plugged in, and the device is turned on. Also, please see the above section regarding .NET Framework dependencies. If communication problems are observed, particularly over a USB connection, the .NET Framework and Windows configuration should be checked and updated if necessary.

Communication with the device can also be impacted if you change the IP address or hostname on a network connected device. The HP ToolboxFX uses the properties stored by the print driver in order to determine the device address. If communication errors are observed, you should attempt to print a test page to the device from the computer. If a page cannot be printed, it might be that the address or port

for the print driver needs to be configured correctly. In these cases, it is often necessary for you to re-boot the computer after re-configuring the print driver in order for HP ToolboxFX to resume communication with the device.

Obtaining debug information from HP ToolboxFX

Although it is very unlikely, it is possible for HP ToolboxFX to encounter fatal errors, causing it to crash. If this occurs, you are presented with the following dialog:

Figure 8-8 HP ToolboxFX – sample error dialog

There is undoubtedly nothing that you did to cause this error, and nothing could be done to recover from the internal circumstances that caused the error. The only recourse is to re-boot your computer or re-start HP ToolboxFX from the Program Group.

It is possible to obtain information that might be helpful for CPE and R&D engineers and assist in diagnosing the problem. All fatal errors, and some other events, are logged to an error log file. When reporting problems to CPE or R&D, please include this error log. Often, no further debug information is needed for fatal errors other than the error log. The error log file is located at:

C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Hewlett-Packard\ToolboxFX\ToolboxFXErrorlog.txt

It is sometime helpful to obtain detailed debug information from HP ToolboxFX. In this case it is necessary to do the following:

1. Shut down HP ToolboxFX by executing HPTLBXFX.exe shutdown. See A need to enable or disable HP ToolboxFX arises.
2. Edit the file: C:\Program Files\HP\ToolBoxFX\defaults\manifest.xml via Notepad or Wordpad as follows:

   Change:

   ```
   <DebugDefaults>
   <!-- Values of OFF, Window, Console, or File -->
   <Debug>OFF</Debug>
   <DebugLevel>3</DebugLevel>
   </DebugDefaults>
   ```

   To the following:

   ```
   <DebugDefaults>
   <!-- Values of OFF, Window, Console, or File -->
   <Debug>File</Debug>
   <DebugLevel>4</DebugLevel>
   </DebugDefaults>
   ```

3. Run HP ToolboxFX From the Program Group, and reproduce the problem being debugged.
4. A debug file called ToolboxFXDebugLog.txt will be written to the following location:

   C:\Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\Hewlett-Packard\ToolboxFX\Logs

USB drivers are unsigned

The HP ToolboxFX for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one communicates over USB connections by using a new, composite USB I/O. This version of HP ToolboxFX does not use DOT4, which will prevent issues previously observed on other products. However, this new I/O path requires that USB host controllers use signed USB drivers. Use the Windows Device Manager to choose a signed driver. If the host controller driver is not signed, obtain an updated Microsoft driver. For more information, see Port communication in the Engineering details chapter of this STR.

A need to enable or disable HP ToolboxFX arises

Some users might not use any of the features provided by the HP ToolboxFX, and might want to disable it in order to free memory and processing resources. To disable the HP ToolboxFX, follow these steps:

1. Use the Windows Search feature to find the `hptlbxfx.exe` application. Typically, this executable file is found in the following location:

   C:\Program Files\HP\ToolboxFX\bin

2. Click **Start**.

3. Click **Run**.
4. Browse to the location of the application, or type the path. Do not click **OK** yet.
5. Add the disabling option by typing `-disable` at the end of the path. The information in the **Open** field will appear as follows:

   ```
   "C:\Program Files\HP\ToolboxFX\bin\hptlbxfx.exe -disable"
   ```

6. Click **OK**.

> **CAUTION** Disabling the HP ToolboxFX will cause users to lose all HP ToolboxFX functionality.
>
> If multiple devices have been installed that use the HP ToolboxFX, disabling the HP ToolboxFX causes all the devices to lose HP ToolboxFX functionality

Functionality that will be lost when HP ToolboxFX is disabled includes:

- Status alerts
- E-mail alerts
- The ability to initiate a scan from the device (by pressing the Scan to and Start Scan buttons on the control panel)
- Fax Receive to PC

Windows Readme

The Windows Readme file for the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one is also available on the following Web site:

This section provides information about the following topics:

- Introduction
- Late-breaking information
- Installation Instructions
- Technical assistance
- Legal statements

Introduction

Purpose of this document

This document provides specific installation instructions and other information you should know before you install and use the printing system. Installation instructions are provided in this document for the following operating systems:

- Windows 98 SE
- Windows Me
- Windows 2000
- Windows XP

For information and printer drivers for Linux, see the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/linux

For information and printer drivers for UNIX®, see the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software

For instructions to install OS/2 printer drivers, Macintosh OS components, or other systems, see the associated installation notes, readme files, or other product information for that particular system.

The following HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one models are supported:

- **HP LaserJet 3050 all-in-one printer, scanner, copier.** 64 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM); a Hi-Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port; a 250-sheet or 10-envelope multipurpose tray for automatic and manual feeding of envelopes, labels, transparencies, and other special media (tray 1); priority input slot that holds up to 10 pages; 30-page automatic document

feeder (ADF); a V.34 fax modem and 2 MB flash fax-storage memory; a print cartridge that can print as many as 2,000 pages at 5% coverage.

- **HP LaserJet 3052 all-in-Oone printer, scanner, copier.** 64 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM); a Hi-Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port; an internal print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-T network; a 250-sheet or 10-envelope multipurpose tray for automatic and manual feeding of envelopes, labels, transparencies, and other special media (tray 1); priority input slot that holds up to 10 pages; 50-page automatic document feeder (ADF); a print cartridge that can print as many as 2,000 pages at 5% coverage.
- **HP LaserJet 3055 all-in-one printer, scanner, copier.** 64 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM); a Hi Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port; an internal print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-T network; a 250-sheet or 10-envelope multipurpose tray for automatic and manual feeding of envelopes, labels, transparencies, and other special media (tray 1); priority input slot that holds up to 10 pages; 30-page automatic document feeder (ADF); a V.34 fax modem and 2 MB flash fax storage memory; a print cartridge that can print as many as 2,000 pages at 5% coverage.
- **HP LaserJet 3390 all-in-one printer, scanner, fax, copier.** 64 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM), expandable to 192 MB; a Hi-Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port; an internal print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-T network; a single-sheet priority input slot; a 250-sheet or 10-envelope tray for automatic feeding of envelopes, labels, transparencies, and other special media (tray 2); an optional 250-sheet tray (tray 3) for standard sizes; a V.34 fax modem and 4 MB flash fax storage memory; automatic duplex (two-sided) printing; standard print cartridge that can print as many as 2,500 pages at 5% coverage;a high-capacity print cartridge that can print as many as 6,000 pages at 5% coverage.
- **HP LaserJet 3392 all-in-one printer, scanner, fax, copier.** 128 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM), expandable to 192 MB; a Hi-Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port; an internal print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-T network; a single-sheet priority input slot; a 250-sheet or 10-envelope tray for automatic feeding of envelopes, labels, transparencies, and other special media (tray 2); a 2nd - 250-sheet tray (tray 3) for standard sizes; a V.34 fax modem and 4 MB flash fax storage memory; automatic duplex (two-sided) printing; standard print cartridge that can print as many as 2,500 pages at 5% coverage; a high-capacity print cartridge that can print as many as 6,000 pages at 5% coverage; integrated convenience stapler.

This file provides specific installation, compatibility, and troubleshooting information. For additional information about device features and driver features, see the device user guide and the online help included with each software component.

Who needs this software?

All users require this printing system software to operate the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one.

Overview of the printing-system components

The Windows CD-ROM has software for IBM-compatible computer systems, and the Macintosh CD-ROM has software for Apple Macintosh (and compatible) systems. For more information about a particular driver or software component, see its associated online help.

End-user software components for Minimal Install on USB installations only (Available on Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, and Windows Server 2003)

Drivers

A driver is software that provides software applications access to the device features. Typically, you should install drivers for each device. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your device includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one PCL 6 print driver for Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, and Windows Server 2003, all with similar graphical user interfaces
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one TWAIN Scan driver for Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, and Windows Server 2003
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one WIA Scan driver for Windows Server 2003

Software applications

- None

End-user software components for Minimal Install (Available on Windows 2000 and Windows XP)

Drivers

A driver is software that provides software applications access to the device features. Typically, you should install drivers for each device. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your device includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one PCL 6 print driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP, both with similar graphical user interfaces
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one TWAIN Scan driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one WIA Scan driver for Windows XP

Software Applications

- HP Fax Setup Wizard
- HP LaserJet Scan
- Users Guide (Windows Help format)

End-user software components for Typical Install (Available on Windows 2000 and Windows XP)

Drivers

A driver is software that provides software applications access to the device features. Typically, you should install drivers for each device. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your device includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one PCL 6 print driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP, both with similar graphical user interfaces
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one TWAIN Scan driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one WIA Scan driver for Windows XP
- HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one Fax driver for Windows 2000 and Windows XP

Software Applications

- HP Fax Setup Wizard
- HP LaserJet Scan
- HP ToolboxFX
- HP SendFax
- HP Software Update
- HP Document Viewer
- Users Guide (Windows Help format)

HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one PCL 5e and PostScript© (PS) drivers for Windows 98 SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 are available on the CD. To install either of these drivers, you must use the Microsoft Add Printer wizard after a normal installation has completed. The .INF file for the Postscript driver is available at <CD-ROM Drive="">:\drivers\<Operating System>\ Install the driver to the printer port that was created for the PCL 6 driver during install.

Additional drivers might be available from your HP distributor or from online sources. See the “Technical Assistance” section of this document or the device user guide for more information about obtaining drivers and other HP software.

HP ToolboxFX

For Windows 2000 and Windows XP, the printing system software includes the HP ToolboxFX software utility for end-users. HP ToolboxFX provides device status information such as toner and paper levels, consumable and supplies-reorder information, and it provides pop-up alert messages when attention is needed at the device. HP ToolboxFX is also used for receiving faxes on your computer, setting up the fax speed dial buttons and fax phone book entries, and configuring the device settings.

Adobe Acrobat Reader

Acrobat Reader should be used to view the online manuals. A version is available on the CD. Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\apps\Adobe\Acrobat5.0\Reader\AcroRd32.exe

The latest version of Acrobat Reader is available on the Adobe Web site at www.adobe.com.

Device documentation

The following documents are available on the printing system software CD-ROM:

HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055 all-in-one models

- Document: *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*

  File name: LJ305X_use_<language code>.pdf

  File name: LJ305X_use_<language code>.chm

  Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJ305X_use_<language code>.pdf

  Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJ305X_use_<language code>.chm

- Document: *Hewlett-Packard LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One Install Notes*

  File name: LJ305X_installnotes_<language code>.htm

Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJ305X_installnotes_<language code>.htm

HP LaserJet 3390/3392 all-in-one models

- Document: *HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One User Guide*

  File name: LJ3390_LJ3392_use_<language code>.pdf

  File name: LJ3390_LJ3392_<language code>.chm

  Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJ3390_LJ3392_use_<language code>.pdf

  Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJ3390_LJ3392_use_<language code>.chm

- Document: *Hewlett-Packard LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 All-in-One Install Notes*

  File name: LJ3390_LJ3392_installnotes_<language code>.htm

  Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJ3390_LJ3392_installnotes_<language code>.htm

Uninstall

The uninstall utility allows you to remove the Windows HP printing system components. See the "Uninstaller" section for more instructions.

Late-breaking information

Known issues and workarounds

General

- The SNMP **Community Name** can be set from the HP ToolboxFX software or the device embedded Web server. If the **Community Name** setting is changed to something other than "public", network scanning and faxing stops working.
- Firewall software can interfere with the HP software installer. If you do not disable the firewall during install, you might see longer install times and failures to detect the device during a network install.
- Certain high speed USB 2.0 cards ship with unsigned host controller drivers. If you have purchased a USB 2.0 add-in card and have an unsigned driver, you might experience driver installation problems or communication problems between the device and HP software. It is recommended that you always use a Microsoft WHQL Certified host controller driver with your USB hardware.
- Plug and Play Print/Scan driver packages are available on the Web at the following URLs:
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3050
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3052
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3055
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3390
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3392
- Functionality on systems that meet only minimum system requirements will be limited. Use of many images or videos requires a system that meets the recommended system requirements for acceptable performance and reliability.

- Troubleshooting Setup and Install

  If your device is not recognized:

  - Verify that your cable is USB 2.0 high-speed compliant.
  - Ensure that your cable is connected correctly. Remove the USB cable, look at the end of the cable, and then match it to the pattern on the USB port. Make sure that it is not upside down. Insert one end of the USB cable completely into the USB port on the HP device and the other end into the back of the computer.
  - Check that the peripheral is powered on. Peripherals will not be recognized if the power is off.
  - Ensure that your USB cable is no more than approximately 16.4 feet or 5 meters in length.
  - Check that the USB port is enabled. Some computers ship with disabled USB ports.
- On a Thai system, some components might show English text.
- Printing and scanning concurrently is not supported. If the device is scanning, the print job will be held off until the scan completes. If the device is printing, an attempt to scan will result in a "Device Busy" error.

HP ToolboxFX

- The HP ToolboxFX software that is installed with a “Full” installation of the software utilizes Microsoft .Net Framework version 1.1. Depending upon the configuration of your compuiter, you might need to update your system configuration after installation, by using Windows Update. If you encounter problems with the HP ToolboxFX software, install all available critical updates for Windows XP from Windows Update.
- The HP ToolboxFX software might not function in Windows 2000 if Service Pack 4 (SP4) and critical updates are not currently installed. If you encounter problems with the HP ToolboxFX software, install all available critical updates for Windows 2000 from Windows Update.
- Your network settings can be password protected, by setting a password within HP ToolboxFX. If you forget your password, you must restore the factory defaults on your device.

Fax

- The device fax header is limited to 25 characters.
- If you wish to save your current device settings (excluding network settings) and the contents of your fax phone book, you might do so by using the Save / Restore feature within the HP ToolboxFX software. After saving your settings on your computer, you can later restore these settings to your device by using HP ToolboxFX.
- Using **Restore Defaults** on the device control panel will erase the fax header, fax activity log, fax speed dials, and fax phone book. Run the fax Setup Wizard to reenter fax header information. Fax speed dials and phone book can be entered by using the HP ToolboxFX software or the device embedded Web server.
- If you repeatedly get a fax error 441 when sending faxes, try disabling the V.34 protocol. To do this, go to the device control panel and select **Menu**, and then **Fax Setup**, **All Faxes**, **V.34**, and **Off**.

Scanning

- Scanning at higher resolutions can take a long time to scan and the process and will create big files. For most purposes, the best compromise between quality and time or size is provided by the default resolution.
- If you choose to scan using the ADF, you must put media into the feeder before clicking on the **Scan Picture** or **Scan Document** icon in the HP Director. Otherwise scanning will occur from the glass scanning bed. Similarly, if initiating the scan from the **Scan to** button on the control panel, you must put the media into the feeder before pushing the button in order to scan from the feeder.
- The default file type for the HP LaserJet Scan software is JPEG when scanning to a file, and the default file type is PDF when scanning to to e-mail. A JPEG file supports 256 Gray Shades (8 bit) output type. If you select an output type of black and white (1 bit), the file produced will still be in the JPEG format. To get a true black and white output type, change the setting for the default file type to either TIF or BMP in the **Save Settings** dialog under the **Scan Picture Settings** accessed through the **Settings** menu in the HP LaserJet Scan software for your device.
- Make sure the lid is correctly centered on the scanner to prevent stray light from entering into the scan, producing the best autocrop results. Some images might not autocrop well even when the lid is on properly. In these instances you will need to manually draw the crop area.
- OCR recommendations for input files:
  - 300 dpi, 8-bit grayscale or 24-bit image data.
  - 400 dpi, 8-bit grayscale or 24-bit image data for Asian languages (Traditional and Simplified Chinese, Japanese and Korean).
  - Do not use 1-bit files for OCR.
- Putting a few sheets of paper on top of flatbed scanned originals can help eliminate bleed through of the second side image or foam mat and to help flatten the original.
- Scanned originals that are bent, creased or scored can cause shadows to appear on the image.
- Scan buttons on the device control panel will not function unless you have done a typical install and set up Scan-To in the HP ToolboxFX software.

Upgrading Windows

- HP recommends that you uninstall HP devices before upgrading to a newer supported version of Windows. For example, when upgrading from Windows 98 to Windows XP, uninstall your HP device using Add/Remove Programs and then upgrade to the new operating system. After the operating system upgrade is complete, re-install your HP device using the latest software from one of the following URLs:
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3050
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3052
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3055
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3390
  - www.hp.com/support/lj3392

Other Applications

- Microsoft Wordpad does not display compressed JPEG files contained in an RTF file. To display these files, use a different application such as Microsoft Word.

For an updated listing of known issues for the HP LaserJet printing system software, see the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 device support pages at the following URLs:

- www.hp.com/support/lj3050
- www.hp.com/support/lj3052
- www.hp.com/support/lj3055
- www.hp.com/support/lj3390
- www.hp.com/support/lj3392

Issues fixed

For an updated listing of issues fixed for the HP LaserJet printing system software, see the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 device support pages at the following URLs:

- www.hp.com/support/lj3050
- www.hp.com/support/lj3052
- www.hp.com/support/lj3055
- www.hp.com/support/lj3390
- www.hp.com/support/lj3392

Installation Instructions

When operating in a Windows environment, the CD-ROM setup or installation software detects the version and language of the operating system that you are running.

Installation options

Two methods are available for installing printer drivers and software components for the device.

- Typical installation installs the most commonly used HP printing system components.
- Minimal installation installs drivers for basic device functionality.

Installing software on Windows 2000 and Windows XP

NOTE Administrator privileges are required to install the printing system on a Windows 2000 or Windows XP operating system.

Printing system installation from a CD-ROM

1. Do not plug the USB cable into the computer system.
2. Close all programs.
3. Insert the CD-ROM.

4. If the HP printing system installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete steps 5 through 7.
5. Select **Run** from the Start menu on your taskbar.
6. Browse to the root directory on the CD-ROM drive.
7. Select the HPSETUP.EXE file, click Open, and then click OK. When the Animated Installation guide appears, click “Begin Setup” for help setting up the device.
8. After watching the Installation guide, you will be given the option to click on “Launch CD Browser” to view additional documentation, or to click “Install Software” to start the software installation.
9. Follow the prompts.

Installing software on Windows 98 SE and Windows Me

1. Power on the printer and computer.
2. Verify the printer displays “Ready.”
3. Make sure the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 CD is in the CD_ROM drive. Click **Exit** if the Install HP LaserJet Software screen appears.
4. Attach the USB cable to the printer and computer.
5. When the New Hardware Wizard appears, click **Next**. If the New Hardware Wizard does not find your driver, browse to your CD ROM drive and select your driver.
6. Once the files are copied, click **Finish**. Software will notify you when it is complete.

Uninstaller

After a printing system installation, use the uninstall icon in the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one program group to remove all of the HP printing system components.

Starting the Uninstaller

1. From the **Start** menu, in the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one program group, click the HP LaserJet 3050/3052/3055/3390/3392 all-in-one uninstall icon.
2. The printing system guides you through removing all of the printing system components.
3. If you have performed a Typical install and you do not have any other HP devices installed, you will also need to follow steps 4 and 5. Following these steps might break certain functionality of other HP devices you have previously installed because they share the software.
4. Open your Microsoft Windows Control Panel. Double-click **Add/Remove Programs**.
5. You will see entries for HP Extended Capabilities, and HP Software Update. For each item, click Change/Remove and follow the prompts.

Technical assistance

Some of the following services are provided for the United States only. Services similar to those listed below are available in other countries/regions. See the device user guide or the in-box support flyer, or call your local authorized HP dealer.

Customer support

See your device user guide or the in-box support flyer, or call your local authorized HP dealer.

Web

Browse to one of the following URLs for online technical support:

- www.hp.com/support/lj3050
- www.hp.com/support/lj3052
- www.hp.com/support/lj3055
- www.hp.com/support/lj3390
- www.hp.com/support/lj3392

HP software and support services — additional information

See your device user guide for additional methods of obtaining software and support information, such as printer driver distribution centers, other online services, fax services, and other online support.

Legal statements

Trademark notices

Adobe®, Acrobat®, and Adobe®PostScript®3™ are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows®XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corp.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of the Open Group.

Warranty and copyright

Warranty

See the device user guide for complete warranty and support information.

Copyright

© 2006 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

% of Normal Size setting
  PCL 6 traditional driver 99
  unidrivers 155

A

About tab
  HPToolboxFX 236
  PCL 6 traditional driver 118
  PS Emulation Driver 126
  unidrivers 173
Actual Size setting, unidrivers 154
addendum, STR 2
ADF
  custom paper sizes 114
  HP Director 292
  media supported 4
Adobe Acrobat Reader 21
Advanced network settings 229
Advanced page, EWS 77
Advanced Printing Features setting, unidrivers 141
Advanced tab, unidrivers 138
alerts
  e-mail 181, 196
  pop-up 180
  Receive Alert messages for device events 179
  Setup Status Alerts screen, HP ToolboxFX 194
  system-tray icons 180
Alerts folder, HP ToolboxFX 194
All-in-One Setup Assistant dialog boxes, Macintosh 306
Animated Demonstrations screen, HP ToolboxFX 209
Answering Machine dialog box, Macintosh installation 311
Apple Macintosh. *See* Macintosh
Applications tab, HP Systems Diagnostics 322
ASCII protocol, PS Emulation Unidriver settings 171
Authenticate dialog box, Macintosh installation 303
Auto continue settings 221

B

Back Cover settings
  PCL traditional drivers 107, 111
  unidrivers 149
Back to Front printing, unidrivers 144
Basics tab, PCL 6 traditional driver 116
bidirectional communications 22, 294
binary protocol, PS Emulation Unidriver settings 171
binding settings
  PCL 6 traditional driver 93
  PCL 6 unidriver 163
bitmaps, sending TrueType fonts as
  PCL 6 traditional driver 97
  PS Emulation Unidriver 142
black, printing all text as
  PCL 6 traditional driver 97
  unidrivers 143
Bonjour page, EWS 77
booklet printing
  PCL 6 traditional driver settings 94
booklets
  PCL 6 unidriver settings 164
  unidriver settings 164
both sides, printing on
  media supported 319
  PCL 6 traditional driver settings 92
  unidriver settings 170

C

Cartridge low threshold settings 221
CD Browser screen 248
CDs, ordering
  Macintosh 294
  Windows 7
Check for recommended installation updates screen (USB Windows installation) 252
cleaning mode 221
collation speed 5
commands, paper
  size 319
  source 317
  type 320
comparison, features 3, 21
components, software
  feature comparison 21
  Macintosh 292
  Windows 20
Configure Device utility 292
Configure Font DIMMs dialog box 122
Configure tab, PCL 6 traditional driver 119
Confirm Changing Setting screen (Windows network installation) 277
Confirm Settings screen (Windows network installation) 277
conflicts, device 325
Congratulations dialog box, Macintosh installation 313

Congratulations Software installation complete screen (USB Windows installation) 263
Congratulations Software installation complete screen (Windows network installation) 281
Connect Your Device Now screen (USB Windows installation) 259
Connection time-out (I/O) settings 221
Connection Type screen (USB Windows installation) 258
Connection Type screen (Windows network installation) 274
connection types 80
constraint messages
constraint, unidrivers 135
PCL 6 traditional driver 87
control panel features 4
copies, number of
PCL 6 traditional driver 116
PS Emulation Driver 124
unidriver settings 140
copy features 5
copying
features available 80
multitasking 82
Correct Order for Straight Paper Path, unidrivers 162
cover page, fax 54
cover settings
unidrivers 148, 149
covers settings
PCL traditional drivers 107
CTRL-D settings, PS Emulation Unidriver 171
Current Progress screen (USB Windows installation) 252
Current Progress screen (Windows network installation) 267
custom paper sizes
driver support 320
PCL traditional drivers 112
PS Emulation Driver 125
unidrivers 148
customer support 236

D

debugging HP ToolboxFX 332
defaults, restoring PS Emulation Driver 126
Destination Folder screen (USB Windows installation) 256, 271
Device Configuration page, EWS 59
Device Configuration screen, HP ToolboxFX 184
device conflicts 325
Device Found screen (USB Windows installation) 260
Device Information page, EWS 65
Device Information screen, HP ToolboxFX 211
Device Options tab, PS Emulation Driver 128
Device Polling screen 222
Device Settings tab 167
Device Status page, EWS 58
Device Status screen, HP ToolboxFX 182
Devices tab, HP Systems Diagnostics 321
diagnostics 321
dial prefix settings 44
dialog boxes, Macintosh installation
about 303
Answering Machine 311
Authenticate 303
Congraulations 313
Distinctive Ring 310
Finish 312
HP All-in-One Setup Assistant 306
HP Software License Agreement 304
Outside Line 309
Phone Line 308
progress indicator 304
Restart alert 305
Select Device 306
USB cable 305
User Identification 307
dialog boxes, Windows installation
CD Browser 248
Check for recommended instlalation updates (USB installation) 252
Confirm Changing Setting (network) 277
Confirm Settings (network) 277
Congratulations Software installation complete (network) 281
Congratulations Software installation complete (USB) 263
Connect Your Device Now (USB) 259
Connection Type (network) 274
Connection Type (USB) 258
Current Progress (network) 267
Current Progress (USB installation) 252
Destination Folder (USB) 256, 271
Device Found (USB) 260
HP Extended Capabilities (network) 271
HP LaserJet Documentation 249
HP Registration 266
HP Registration (network) 283
HP Software License Agreement (USB) 255
Identify Printer (network) 274
License Agreement (network) 270
network 266
Network Protocol (network) 278
Online support 250
Printer Found (network) 276
Ready to Install (network) 272
Ready to Install (USB) 257
Restart your computer (Network) 280
Restart your computer (USB) 262
Searching (network) 275
Sign Up Now 265
Sign Up Now (network) 282
Specify Printer (network) 275
Test Page 264
Test Page (network) 282

Time Remaining (Network) 279
Time Remaining (USB) 261
Welcome (network) 267
Welcome (USB) 251
DIMMs
font, PCL 6 traditional driver settings 122
slots, included 3
direct connections 80
Director. *See* HP Director
disitinctive ring settings 45
Distinctive Ring dialog box, Macintosh installation 310
Document Options
PCL 6 traditional driver 91
unidrivers 140, 162
document preview image
PCL 6 traditional driver 96
unidrivers 152
documentation
addendum 2
dialog box, Windows installation 249
localized versions 9
operating systems supported 23, 294
Readme files 335
User Guide Print Settings, unidriver 146
User Guide Quick Set, PCL 6 traditional driver 91
dots per inch (dpi) setting, PCL 6 traditional driver 96
double-sided printing
media supported 319
PCL 6 traditional driver settings 92
PCL 6 unidriver settings 162
unidriver settings 170
dpi (dots per inch) setting, PCL 6 traditional driver 96
drivers
availability by operating system 22, 294
HP postscript level 3 emulation support 124, 137
installing 245
localized versions, Macintosh 294
localized versions, Windows 23
Macintosh 292
media supported 317
media-source commands 317
scan 20, 39
Drum low threshold settings 221
duplexing
media supported 319
PCL 6 traditional driver settings 92
unidriver settings 170
duplexing unit
custom paper sizes 114
models including 4

E

e-mail
alerts 181, 196
Macintosh programs supported 291
troubleshooting 329
troubleshooting File to E-mail utility 328
Windows programs supported 37
Easy Install option, Macintosh 300
Economode
PCL traditional drivers 96
unidrivers 152
Effects tab
PCL 6 traditional driver 97
unidrivers 153
embedded Web server. *See* EWS
energy use 6
error messages
Auto continue settings 221
constraint, PCL 6 traditional driver 87
constraint, unidrivers 135
e–mail alerts 181
pop-up alerts 180
Receive Alerts for device events 179
escape sequences
media-source 317
media-type 320
Euro Currency symbol 172
Event Log page, EWS 64
Event Log screen, HP ToolboxFX 193
EWS
Advanced page 77
Bonjour page 77
browsers supported 57
Device Configurationpage 59
Device Information page 65
Device Status page 58
Event Logpage 64
Fax Phone Book page 75
Fax Receive page 74
Fax tab 73
IP Configuration page 76
Network Configuration page 62, 78
Networking tab 75
Paper Handling page 66
Paper Types page 68
Password page 79
PCL 5epage 72
PostScript page 73
Print Info Pages 63
Print Quality page 67
Print tab 70
Printing page 71
Service page 70
SNMP page 78
Status tab 58
System Setup page 69
System tab 64
EWS Device Configuration utility, Macintosh 295
Extended Capabilities, HP 30, 255, 271

F

fax
cover page 54
Data Properties screen 204
Device Polling screen 222
dial prefix settings 44
distinctive ring settings 45
features 5
features available 80
HP Send Fax software 51
laptop computers 178
Macintosh setup assistant dialog boxes 308
Macintosh software 292

multiple recipients, sending to 53
multitasking 82
operating systems supported 22
PC fax programs 84
Receive Log screen 201
ring settings 45
Send Log screen 201
Setup Wizard screen 43
Fax folder, HP ToolboxFX 198
Fax Phone Book page, EWS 75
Fax Phone Book screen, HP ToolboxFX 199
Fax Receive page, EWS 74
Fax tab, EWS 73
Fax tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 297
Fax Tasks screen, HP ToolboxFX 198
features
comparison 21
connection types 80
HP ToolboxFX 176
model comparison 3
multitasking 82
new 19
file formats, supported 32
File to E-mail utility 328
files and folders added, Windows 286
Finish dialog box, Macintosh installation 312
Finishing tab
PCL 6 traditional driver 90
unidrivers 141, 161
First Page paper settings
PCL traditional drivers 108
unidrivers 151
Fit-to-Page option, PCL 6 traditional driver 99
Flip Pages Up settings
PCL 6 traditional driver 93
PCL 6 unidriver 163
folders
Windows installation 286, 300
fonts
download as outline, PS Emulation Unidriver settings 172
Euro Currency symbol 172
HP postscript level 3 emulation support 124, 137
PCL 6 traditional driver settings 97, 122
Send TrueType as Bitmap, PCL 6 unidriver 143
Send TrueType as bitmap, PS Emulation Unidriver 142
substitution table, unidrivers 169
TrueType settings, unidrivers 140
watermark settings, unidrivers 159
watermarks 102, 157
Windows operating systems supported 22
Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 168
formatter
number 184
Front Cover settings
PCL traditional drivers 107
unidrivers 149
Front to Back printing, unidrivers 144
fulfillment centers
Macintosh 294
fuser modes 218

G

Graphics tab, PS Emulation Driver 126
grayscale settings, PS Emulation Unidriver 172

H

halftone settings, PS Emulation Driver 127
help
Macintosh 293
operating systems supported 23, 294
PCL 6 traditional driver 87
unidrivers 135
Windows 21
Help folder, HP ToolboxFX 204
How do I? folder, HP ToolboxFX 207
HP All-in-One Setup Assistant dialog boxes, Macintosh installation 306
HP Applications tab, HP Systems Diagnostics 323
HP Director
ADF detection 292
localized versions 23
HP Document Viewer, localized versions 23
HP embedded Web server. *See* EWS
HP EWS Device Configuration utility, Macintosh 295
HP Extended Capabilities 30, 255, 271
HP Image Zone, localized versions 23
HP Instant Support 236
HP LaserJet Documentation screen 249
HP LaserJet Scan software 32
HP LaserJet Scanner program 293
HP LaserJet Send Fax program 292
HP PCL 6 Unidriver. *See* PCL 6 traditional driver
HP postscript level 3 emulation support 124, 137
HP product number 3
HP Send Fax program 51
HP Software License Agreement screen (USB Windows installation) 255
HP Software License Agreement screen (Windows network installation) 270
HP Software License Agreemtn dialog box, Macintosh installation 304
HP System Diagnostics 321
HP ToolboxFX
.NET Framework dependencies 330
About 236
Advanced network settings 229
Alerts folder 194

Animated Demonstrations screen 209
Auto continue settings 221
debugging 332
device communication 331
Device Configuration screen 184
Device Information screen 211
Device Polling screen 222
Device Status screen 182
disabling or enabling 333
e-mail alerts 181
Event Log screen 193
Fax Data Properties screen 204
Fax folder 198
Fax Phone Book screen 199
Fax Receive Log screen 201
Fax Send Log screen 201
Fax Setup Wizard screen 43
Fax Tasks screen 198
features 20, 176
Help folder 204
How do I? folder 207
HP Instant Support 236
IP Configuration settings 228
Jam recovery settings 221
localized versions 23
Network Configuration screen 189
Network Configuration settings 232
Network Settings folder 227
new features 19
operating systems supported 23
Order Supplies screen 237
Paper Handling screen 212
Paper Types screen 218
Password settings 234
PCL 5e screen 225
pop-up alert messages 180
PostScript screen 226
Print Info Pages screen 192
Print Quality screen 216
Print Settings folder 224
Printing screen 224
Product Registration screen 237
Product Support screen 237
Readme screen 211
Receive Alert messages for device events 179
Receive faxes to this computer 178
Save/Restore settings screen 223
sections 177
Send Fax software 51
Service screen 221
Set up E-mail Alerts screen 196
Setup Status Alerts screen 194
SNMP Configuration settings 230
starting 176
Status folder 182
System Settings tab 211
System Setup screen 220
Troubleshooting folder 205
troubleshooting known issues 330
User Guide screen 210
HP Traditional PCL 6 Driver. *See* PCL 6 traditional driver
HP Web Jetadmin 23

I

Identify Printer screen (Windows network installation) 274
inches, settings 115
information pages, printing 192
input trays. *See* trays
Installable Options, PS Emulation Unidriver 170
installation
dialog boxes, Macintosh 303
dialog boxes, Windows 248
driver-only 245
File to E-mail utility 328
Macintosh product software 301
network software, Macintosh 301
networks, Windows 244
Windows product software 242
installers
included 22, 294
new features 19
options 240, 300
Instant Support, HP 236
IP Configuration page, EWS 76
IP Configuration settings 228
IPX/SPX protocols 82

J

jams
recovery settings 221
Straight Paper Path, unidrivers 162
Job Timeout, PS Emulation Unidriver 172

K

known issues 2, 330

L

landscape orientation
Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 163
PCL 6 traditional driver 93, 118
PS Emulation Driver 124
unidrivers 166
languages, localized versions
documentation 9
Macintosh CDs 294
Macintosh software components 294
ordering Windows CDs 7
Readiris 26
Windows software components 23
laptop computers, receiving faxes 178
LaserJet Scan software 32
LaserJet Scanner program 293
LaserJet Send Fax program 292
Layout Options, unidrivers 144
Layout, PS Emulation Driver settings 126
license agreement (USB Windows installation) 255
license agreement dialog box, Macintosh installation 304
License Agreement screen (Windows network installation) 270

Linux support 17, 22
localized versions
documentation 9
Macintosh CDs 294
Macintosh software components 294
ordering Windows CDs 7
Readiris 26
Windows software components 23
Logging tab, HP Systems Diagnostics 323
logs, fax
Receive screen 201
Send screen 201
Lotus Notes 37

M

Macintosh
Bonjour page, EWS 77
components, software 292
dialog boxes, installation 303
e-mail programs supported 291
Easy Install option 300
features not available 293
HP EWS Device Configuration utility 295
installers 294
installing product software 301
languages supported 294
networks, installing software 301
operating systems supported 179, 290
system requirements 299
uninstalling software 314
manual uninstall, Windows 286
manuals
addendum 2
localized versions 9
operating systems supported 23, 294
User Guide Print Settings, unidriver 146
User Guide Quick Set, PCL 6 traditional driver 91
margins, PCL 6 driver 319
measurement units 115
media. *See* paper
memory
Device Configuration screen, HP ToolboxFX 184
fax 5
PCL 6 traditional driver settings 123
product, included 3
PS Emulation Driver 128
PS Emulation Unidriver settings 171
system requirements 81
unidriver settings 170
messages
alerts, receiving 179
Auto continue settings 221
constraint, PCL 6 traditional driver 87
constraint, unidrivers 135
e-mail alerts 181
pop-up alerts 180
Microsoft Outlook 37
Microsoft Windows. *See* Windows
millimeters, settings 115
minimum installation
Windows 240, 253, 269
mirror image, printing with PS Emulation Driver 127
models, feature comparison 3
moire effect, resolving in PCL 6 traditional driver 97
More Options, PS Emulation Driver 126
multitasking 82

N

negative image, printing with PS Emulation Driver 127
Negative Output, PS Emulation Unidriver 143
NET Framework dependencies, HP ToolboxFX 330
Network Configuration page, EWS 78
Network Configuration screen, HP ToolboxFX 189
Network Configuration settings 232
Network Configurationpage, EWS 62
Network Protocol screen (Windows network installation) 278
Network Settings folder, HP ToolboxFX 227
Networking tab, EWS 75
Networking tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 297
networks
Advanced settings 229
Configuration settings 232
features available 80, 83
HP ToolboxFX settings 189
installation dialog boxes, Windows 266
IP Configuration settings 228
Macintosh, installing software 301
Password settings 234
peer-to-peer, setting up 242
ports 3
SNMP settings 230
system requirements 81
Windows software installation 244
new features 19
number of copies
PCL 6 traditional driver 116
PS Emulation Driver 124
unidriver settings 140

O

OCR
accuracy 84
file types supported 32
localized versions 26
Macintosh software 293
software programs supported 84
Windows software 20
online help
HP ToolboxFX 204
Macintosh 293
Windows 21
Online support screen 250
operating systems
supported 290
Windows, supported 16
optical character recognition. *See* OCR

Optimizations option, PCL 6 unidriver 141
Optional Paper Sources menu, PCL 6 traditional driver 121
order of pages 95
Order Supplies screen, HP ToolboxFX 237
ordering software
  Macintosh 294
  Windows 7
orientation, page
  Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 163
  PCL 6 traditional driver 118
  PCL 6 traditional driver settings 93
  PS Emulation Driver 124
  unidrivers 166
OS/2 support 17
Other Pages paper settings
  PCL traditional drivers 109
Outlook 37
Output Protocol, PS Emulation Unidriver 171
Output Settings, PCL 6 traditional driver 97
Outside Line dialog box, Macintosh installation 309

P

Page Order settings, unidrivers 144
page orientation
  Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 163
  PCL 6 traditional driver 93, 118
  PS Emulation Driver 124
  unidrivers 166
pages per minute 3
Pages per Sheet settings
  PCL 6 traditional driver 95
  unidrivers 164
paper
  cover settings, unidrivers 148, 149
  covers, PCL traditional drivers 107
  covers, unidrivers 148, 149
  custom sizes, PCL driver support 320
  custom sizes, PCL traditional driver settings 112
  custom sizes, PS Emulation Driver settings 125
  custom sizes, unidrivers 148
  Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 168
  fuser modes 218
  margins 319
  margins, PCL 6 driver 319
  Pages per Sheet settings, unidrivers 164
  Paper Handling screen 212
  Print Document On settings, unidrivers 154
  Print on Both Sides (Manually), PCL 6 unidriver 162
  PS Emulation Driver settings 124
  size commands 319
  Size is settings, PCL traditional drivers 104
  Size is settings, unidrivers 147
  sizes supported 4
  source commands 317
  Source is settings, PCL traditional drivers 106
  Source is settings, unidrivers 148
  sources and destinations 316
  type commands 320
  Type is settings, PCL traditional drivers 106
  Type is settings, unidrivers 148
  types and sizes supported 317
  types supported 319
  unidriver settings 147
paper handling features 4
Paper Handling options, PCL 6 traditional driver 121
Paper Handling page, EWS 66
Paper Handling screen, HP ToolboxFX 212
Paper Options
  PCL traditional drivers 104
  unidrivers 147
Paper tab, PS Emulation Driver 124
Paper Types page, EWS 68
Paper Types screen, HP ToolboxFX 218
Paper/Quality tab, unidrivers 145
parallel port, not supported 325
part numbers
  documentation 9
  Macintosh software CDs 294
  Windows software CDs 7
Password page, EWS 79
Password settings, HP ToolboxFX 234
PC 5e screen, HP ToolboxFX 225
PC fax programs 84
PCL 5 driver media-source commands 317
PCL 5e driver support 20
PCL 6 traditional driver
  % of Normal Size 99
  About button 118
  accessing 86
  Basics tab 116
  Configure tab 119
  constraint messages 87
  custom paper sizes 320
  default installation 20
  Document Options 91
  Effects tab 97
  Finishing tab 90
  Fit-to-Page option 99
  Flip Pages Up 93
  Font Settings 97
  font settings 122
  help 87
  installing 245
  localized versions 23
  margins 319
  media supported 317
  media-source commands 317
  media-type commands 320
  memory settings 123
  operating systems supported 22
  Optional Paper Sources 121
  orientation settings 118
  Output Settings 97

Pages per Sheet 95
Paper Handling Options 121
Paper Options 104
paper size commands 319
Print all Text as Black 97
Print Document On 99
Print on Both Sides (Manually) 92
Print Task Quick Sets 91
Scale to Fit 99
Watermarks settings 100
PCL 6 unidriver
About tab 173
Actual Size setting 154
Advanced Printing Features, enabling 141
Advanced tab 138
booklet printing 164
constraint messages 135
Copy Count 140
Correct Order for Straight Paper Path 162
custom paper sizes 320
default installation 20
Device Settings tab 167
Document Options 140, 162
document preview image 152
Effects tab 153
Finishing tab 161
font substitution table 169
Form to Tray Assignment 168
Graphic settings 140
help 135
Installable Options 170
installing 245
Layout Options 144
localized versions 23
margins 319
media supported 317
media-source commands 317
media-type commands 320
memory settings 170
operating systems supported 22
orientation settings 166
Paper Options 147
paper size commands 319
Paper/Quality tab 145
Print Optimizations option 141
Print Quality group box 152
Print Task Quick Sets 146
Printing Preferences tab 134
Properties tab 134
Resizing Options 154
Send TrueType as Bitmap 143
settings, changing 134
TrueType font settings 140
Use Different Paper/Covers 148, 149
Watermarks settings 156
PCL5e page, EWS 72
PDF files, online help 21
peer-to-peer networking 242
Percent of Normal Size setting
PCL 6 traditional driver 99
unidrivers 155
Phone Line dialog box, Macintosh installation 308
polling settings 222
pop-up alerts 180
portrait orientation
Flip Pages Up, PCL 6 unidriver 163
PCL 6 traditional driver 93, 118
PS Emulation Driver 124
unidrivers 166
ports
connecting 325
device conflicts 325
specifications 3
PostScript Options, PS Emulation Unidriver 141
PostScript page, EWS 73
PostScript Passthrough 170
PostScript screen, HP ToolboxFX 226
PostScript tab, PS Emulation Driver 129
PPDs, included 22
preview image
PCL 6 traditional driver 96
unidrivers 152
Print all Text as Black
PCL 6 traditional driver 97
unidrivers 143
Print Document On settings
PCL 6 traditional driver 99
unidrivers 154
Print Info Pages screen, HP ToolboxFX 192
Print Info Pages, EWS 63
Print on Both Sides (Manually)
PCL 6 traditional driver 92
PCL 6 unidriver 162
Print Optimizations option, PCL 6 unidriver 141
Print Quality group box, unidrivers 152
Print Quality page, EWS 67
Print Quality screen, HP ToolboxFX 216
Print Quality, PCL 6 traditional driver 96
Print Settings folder, HP ToolboxFX 224
Print tab, EWS 70
Print tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 297
Print Task Quick Sets
PCL 6 traditional driver 91
unidrivers 146
Printer Found screen (Windows network installation) 276
printing
features available 80
multitasking 82
settings 224
Printing page, EWS 71
Printing Preferences tabs, unidrivers 134
Printing screen, HP ToolboxFX 224
product comparison 3
product number 3
Product Registration screen, HP ToolboxFX 237
Product Support screen, HP ToolboxFX 237
Progress indicator dialog box, Macintosh installation 304
Properties tabs, unidrivers 134
protocols, network 82
PS Emulation Driver
About button 126
default installation 20
Device Options tab 128
features 124
Graphics tab 126

Halftoning 127
installing 245
Layout settings 126
localized versions 23
media supported 317
memory available 128
mirror images, printing 127
More Options 126
negative images, printing 127
operating systems supported 22
Paper size 125
Paper source 126
Paper tab 124
PostScript tab 129
Resolution 127
Restore Defaults 126
Scaling 128
Special settings 127
Unprintable Area 126
PS Emulation Unidriver
About tab 173
Actual Size setting 154
Advanced Printing Features, enabling 141
Advanced tab 138
booklet printing 164
constraint messages 135
Copy Count 140
Correct Order for Straight Paper Path 162
CTRL-D settings 171
default installation 20
Device Settings tab 167
Document Options 140, 162
document preview image 152
Effects tab 153
Finishing tab 161
font substitution table 169
Form to Tray Assignment 168
Graphic settings 140
gray settings 172
help 135
Installable Options 170
installing 245
Layout Options 144
localized versions 23
media supported 317
memory settings 170, 171
Negative Output 143
operating systems supported 22
orientation settings 166
Output Protocol 171
Paper Options 147
Paper/Quality tab 145
PostScript Options 141
PostScript Passthrough 170
Print Quality group box 152
Print Task Quick Sets 146
Printing Preferences tab 134
Properties tab 134
Resizing Options 154
settings, changing 134
timeout settings 172
TrueType font settings 140, 172
Use Different Paper/Covers 148, 149
Watermarks settings 156
PS fonts 23

Q

quality settings
EWS page 67
HPToolboxFX 216
PCL 6 traditional driver 96
quality, print
unidriver settings 152
quick sets
PCL 6 traditional driver 91
unidrivers 146

R

RAM
product, included 3
system requirements 81
Readiris software
file types supported 32
localized versions 8, 24, 26
reliability of OCR 84
version installed 21
Windows 20
Readiris text-recognition software
Macintosh 293
Readme files
downloading 335
Windows 335
Readme screen, HP ToolboxFX 211
Ready to Install screen (USB Windows installation) 257
Ready to Install screen (Windows network installation) 272
Receive Alert messages for device events 179
Receive faxes to this computer 178
Receive Log screen 201
Registration 266
Registration screen (Windows network installation) 283
registration, product 237
registry keys 2
release notes 23, 294
removing software. *See* uninstallation
reports, printing 192
Resizing Options, unidrivers 154
resolution
HP ToolboxFX settings 216
printing 5
PS Emulation Driver 127
scanning 6
unidriver settings 152
Restart dialog box, Macintosh installation 305
Restart your computer screen (Network Windows installation) 280
Restart your computer screen (USB Windows installation) 262
Restore Defaults, PS Emulation Driver 126
restoring factory settings 221
ring settings, fax 45
ROM, included 3

S

Save/Restore Settings screen 223
saving settings
PCL 6 traditional driver 91
unidrivers 146
Scale Patterns (WYSIWYG), PCL 6 traditional driver 97
Scale to Fit setting
PCL 6 traditional driver 99
unidrivers 154

Scaling settings, PS Emulation Driver 128
Scan Driver
localized versions 24
Macintosh 293
TWAIN 22, 39
using 31
WIA 41
Windows 20
Scan Preferences dialog box 41
scanner resolution 6
scanning
features available 80
HP LaserJet Scan software 32
methods 31
multitasking 82
preferences 41
TWAIN driver features 39
WIA driver features 41
scrubber utility 329
Searching screen (Windows network installation) 275
Select Device dialog box, Macintosh installation 306
Send CTRL-D settings, PS Emulation Unidriver 171
Send Fax program 51, 292
Send Log screen 201
Send TrueType as Bitmap
PCL 6 traditional driver 97
PS Emulation Unidriver 142
serial number 184
Service ID 184
Service page, EWS 70
Service screen, HP ToolboxFX 221
Set up E-mail Alerts screen, HP ToolboxFX 196
settings
Device Configuration screen 184
Print Task Quick Sets, PCL 6 traditional driver 91
Print Task Quick Sets, unidrivers 146
restoring factory 221
Save/Restore screen 223
setup. *See* installation
Setup Status Alerts screen, HP ToolboxFX 194
Setup Wizard, fax 43
shading, watermark settings
unidrivers 159
shared files and folders 286
sharing
features available 81
setting up 242
Sign Up Now screen 265
Sign Up Now screen (Windows network installation) 282
sizes, paper
commands 319
custom, driver support 320
custom, PCL traditional driver settings 112
custom, PS Emulation Driver settings 125
custom, unidrivers 148
Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 168
HP ToolboxFX settings 212
margins 319
PCL traditional driver settings 104
unidriver settings 147
SNMP page, EWS 78
SNMP settings 230
software license agreement (USB Windows installation) 255
software license agreement dialog box, Macintosh installation 304
software license agreement screen (Windows network installation) 270
software, ordering
Macintosh 294
Windows 7
Source is settings
PCL traditional drivers 106
sources, paper. *See* trays
Specify Printer screen (Windows network installation) 275
speed
collation 5
printing 3
standalone fax and copier features 80
standalone scrubber utility 329
status alerts screen, HP ToolboxFX 194
Status folder, HP ToolboxFX 182
status screen, HP ToolboxFX 182
Status tab, EWS 58
Status tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 296
straight paper path check box, unidrivers 162
supplies, ordering 237
support, product 236, 237
system diagnostics 321
system requirements
Macintosh 299
Windows 16
System Settings tab, HP ToolboxFX 211
System Setup page, EWS 69
System Setup screen, HP ToolboxFX 220
System tab, EWS 64
System tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 296
system-tray icon alerts 180

T

T.30 trace test 221
TBCP protocol, PS Emulation Unidriver settings 171
TCP/IP protocols 82
Test Page screen 264
Test Page screen (Windows network installation) 282
text, printing all as black
PCL 6 traditional driver 97
unidrivers 143
Time Remaining screen (Network Windows installation) 279
Time Remaining screen (USB Windows installation) 261
timeout settings, PS Emulation Unidriver 172
ToolboxFX. *See* HP ToolboxFX
trace test 221
trays
capacities 4
custom paper sizes 114
Form to Tray Assignment, unidrivers 168

HP ToolboxFX settings 212
included 316
Installable Options, unidrivers 170
media supported 319
media-source commands 317
media-type commands 320
Optional Paper Sources, PCL 6 traditional driver 121
PS Emulation Driver settings 126
Source is settings, PCL traditional drivers 106
Source is settings, unidrivers 148
troubleshooting
alerts, receiving for device events 179
Animated Demonstrations screen 209
constraint messages, PCL 6 traditional driver 87
constraint messages, unidrivers 135
device conflicts 325
e-mail 329
e-mail alerts 181
File to E-mail utility 328
HP System Diagnostics 321
HP ToolboxFX 330
known issues 2
pop-up alerts 180
scrubber utility 329
TWAIN 39
Troubleshooting folder, HP ToolboxFX 205
TrueType fonts
download as outline, PS Emulation Unidriver settings 172
Send as Bitmaps, PCL 6 traditional driver 97
Send as Bitmaps, PCL 6 unidriver 143
Send as Bitmaps, PS Emulation Unidriver 142
unidriver settings 140
TWAIN
driver 20, 22, 39
Macintosh support 293
troubleshooting 39
two-sided printing
media supported 319
PCL 6 traditional driver settings 92
PCL 6 unidriver settings 162
unidriver settings 170
types, paper
commands 320
fuser modes 218
HP ToolboxFX settings 212
PCL traditional drivers settings 106
supported 317, 319
unidriver settings 148
typical installation
Windows 240, 253, 269

U

unidrivers
About tab 173
Actual Size setting 154
Advanced Printing Features, enabling 141
Advanced tab 138
booklet printing 164
constraint messages 135
Copy Count 140
Correct Order for Straight Paper Path 162
custom paper sizes 320
default installation 20
Device Settings tab 167
Document Options 140, 162
document preview image 152
Effects tab 153
Finishing tab 161
font substitution table 169
Form to Tray Assignment 168
Graphic settings 140
help 135
Installable Options 170
installing 245
Layout Options 144
localized versions 23
media supported 317
media-type commands 320
memory settings 170
operating systems supported 22
orientation settings 166
Paper Options 147
paper size commands 319
Paper/Quality tab 145
Print Quality group box 152
Print Task Quick Sets 146
Printing Preferences tab 134
Properties tab 134
Resizing Options 154
settings, changing 134
TrueType font settings 140
Use Different Paper/Covers 148, 149
Watermarks settings 156
uninstallation
Add-Printer 286
Macintosh software 314
manual, Windows 286
minimum 284
typical 284
Windows product software 284
units of measurement 115
UNIX support 17, 22
Unprintable Area, PS Emulation Driver 126
USB cable dialog box, Macintosh installation 305
USB port
connecting 325
device conflicts 325
devices vs. hubs 325
HP ToolboxFX issues 333
specifications 3
Windows installation dialog boxes 251
Use Different Paper/Covers
PCL traditional drivers 107
unidrivers 148, 149
User Guide Print Task Quick Set
PCL 6 traditional driver 91
unidrivers 146
User Guide screen, HP ToolboxFX 210
user guides
localized versions 9
operating systems supported 23, 294
User Identification dialog box, Macintosh installation 307

W

Wait Timeout, PS Emulation Unidriver 172
watermarks
  unidrivers 156
Watermarks settings
  PCL traditional drivers 100
Web sites
  Adobe 137
  downloading software 23
  Linux software 23
  Microsoft 242
  ordering Macintosh software 294
  ordering Windows software 7
  TWAIN 39
Welcome screen (USB Windows installation) 251
Welcome screen (Windows network installation) 267
WIA driver 20, 22, 41
Windows
  components, software 20, 22
  device conflicts 325
  dialog boxes, installation 248
  driver-only installation 245
  drivers supported 20
  installation options 240
  installers 22
  installing product software 242
  manual uninstall 286
  network software installation 244
  operating systems supported 16
  Readme file 335
  sharing, setting up 242
  system requirements 16
  uninstalling product software 284

© 2006 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com